Driver's Handbook

Volvo 9700 US/CAN

B13R, EPA17

W0142363

VOLVO

Foreword

The following levels of observations, cautions and warnings are used in this Service Documentation:

Danger: Indicates an unsafe practice where serious personal injury or death could occur.

Warning: Indicates an unsafe practice where personal injury or severe damage to the product could occur.

Caution: Indicates an unsafe practice where damage to the product could occur.

Note: Indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order to have the vehicle or component function in the manner intended.

This manual contains information concerning the operation and function of the Volvo 9700 “US/CAN” version. Equipped with 3rd generation of the multiplex electrical system **BEA–3** (*Bus Electrical Architecture, version 3*).

This manual contains general information about instruments and controls, as well as driving instructions. In case a bus is not equipped with all functions described in this manual, it is due to the custom adaptation and different levels of equipment.

Technical data, construction information, descriptions and illustrations in this driver’s handbook, that were current when the book was published, can have been changed. The Volvo company reserve the right to make changes without prior notice.

For service information, please refer to our service manuals and other service literature.
The section “If something happens”, page 146 provides information and instructions to be followed when something unexpected happens.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89379469

©2018 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Foreword

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Prevost should be informed immediately if you believe that the vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death.
Contact NHTSA by calling the Auto Safety Hotline at 1 (888) 327-4236, by writing to NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590, by TTY at 1 (800) 424-9153, or visit their website at: *www.nhtsa.dot.gov*.

Note: Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may be differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

Please keep this manual in the vehicle at all times.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89379469

©2018 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Foreword

Important safety advertisement

WARNING

Breathing diesel engine exhaust exposes you to chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
— Always start and operate the engine in a well-ventilated area.
— If in an enclosed area, vent the exhaust to the outside.
— Do not modify or tamper with the exhaust system.
— Do not idle the engine except as necessary.
For more information go to www.P65warnings.ca.gov/diesel

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89379469

©2018 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Foreword

Privacy Notice for Vehicle Data

When you drive a truck, bus or coach sold or produced by companies belonging to the Volvo Group, the vehicle generates data that these companies may retrieve and process. Such data may include personal data relating to you as a driver.

The data are processed by the Volvo Group to develop and enhance our companies' products and services. The Volvo Group companies may process any personal data for the purposes as a data controller under the EU General Data Protection Regulation. The legal ground for processing is based on the Volvo Group companies' legitimate interests or, in some cases, the need to comply with legislation. We would like you to be fully informed about how the Volvo Group companies may process the data, as well as your rights. We recognize the individual's rights in relation to data processing activities, and take those rights seriously. We shall always be transparent about what data are collected, how they are utilized, with whom they are shared, and whom to contact in case of any concerns.

If you would like to know more about the kind of personal data the Volvo Group companies process, please visit the Volvo Group web site – www.volvogroup.com/privacy.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89379469

©2018 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Introduction **1**
Driver's responsibility 1
Keys 2
Key and cylinder replacement 3
Entering the bus 4
Emergency stop 5
Protection against batteries discharge 5
Batteries cut-off switch 6

Doors and hatches **7**
Doors 7
Opening the bus from inside 8
Closing the bus 9
Hatches and doors opened warning 10
Doors and hatches configurations 10
Doors and hatches configuration 11
Doors and hatches configuration (bus with WCL) 12
Roof Hatches 13

Driver's area **14**
Driver's area 14
Driver's seat 15
Driver’s seat features label 16
Horn 17
Dashboard 18

Instruments and controls **19**
Faults and warnings 19
Accelerator pedal deactivated 20
STOP message 21
Warning message 21
Stop at the next bus stop message 21
Instrumentation 22
Types of instruments 22
Instrument panel lamps and symbols 28
Lights switch 30
Switches 32
Emergency stop switch 32
Kneeling system 33
Level control 34
Increasing load on the drive axle (bogie lift) 35
Traction Control System (TCS) 35
Differential lock 36
Hill start assistance (optional) 36
Retarder enabled (if installed) 37
Passenger compartment lighting 37

Night lighting (optional) 37
Half-light lighting 38
Driver compartment lighting 38
Passenger´s individual lighting 38
Position lights 39
Destination sign lighting (optional) 39
Electrically heated rear view mirrors 40
Driver window heating 40
Driver blower 40
Central locking 41
Sun visor 41
Toilet activation 41
Audio system 42
Opening service door from the outside 42
Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system; (optional) 43
Emergency window in use indicator lamp 44
Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system indicator light 44
Switches into the electrical center 45
Controls 47
Ignition switch 47
Adjusting external rear view mirrors 49
Open door brake 50
Steering wheel adjustment 52
Directional indicator, dipped/full beam changer 53
Windscreen wipers, windscreen headlight washer 54
Transmission 55
I-Shift transmission lever selector (optional) 55
I-Shift transmission pad selector 56
Allison automatic transmission (optional) 57
Allison transmission shifter 58
Allison transmission, mode function 59
Transmission overheating 60
Retarder (if installed) 61
Retarder overheating 62
Brakes 63
Parking brake 63
Blocking valve 65
Service brakes 66
EBS (Electronically-controlled Braking System) 68
Compensating for differences in the wear of the brake pads 69
High brake temperature warning 70
A/C Controller (multiplexing system) 71
Destination sign (optional) 72
Destination sign Innova 73
Destination sign Mobitec 74

Interior equipment **75**
Interior equipment 75
Toilet 76
Rear trash bin 76
Passengers thermometer and clock display 77
Passengers panel 78
Passengers AC (alternate current) 110 V power outlets 79
TGW (Telematics Gate Way) system and Liaison communication system 81
ELR / ALR passenger seat belts mechanism 82
ELR / ALR passenger seat belts mechanism (continue) 83
Passengers sliding seats 84
Control pendant (for Wheel Chair Lift equipment) 85

Audiovisual system **86**
Audiovisual system 86
Audiovisual control panel 87
Video system 87
Audio system 88
Guide or driver microphone (optional) 89

Emergency and safety equipment **90**
Overview 90
Fire extinguisher 91
Automatized Fire Extinguished System (AFES) 92
Park pilot system 94
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 95
Warning triangle 97
First aid kit 97
Tire inflation valve 98
External air supply connection 98
Hydraulic jack 99
Toolbox 100
Engine control panel in engine bay 101
Emergency exits 102
Doors 102
Roof hatches 103
Emergency windows 104

Starting and driving **105**
Checking before driving 105
Bus interior and exterior cleaning and maintenance 106
Check the warning lights 107
Daily inspection 108
Engine oil level 108
Hydraulic level fluid for the engine coolant fan 109
Power steering hydraulic oil level 109

Engine coolant system fluid level 109
Windshield washer fluid 110
Fuel replenishment 111
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank 113
Engine block heater 115
Starting the engine 116
Starting 116
Indicator lights on after the engine has been started. 118
Engine idle speed adjustment 119
Cruise control activation 121
Retarder (if installed) 123
Power steering 128
Exhaust Aftertreatment System (EATS) components 129
Exhaust Aftertreatment System (EATS), warnings 130
Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) regeneration required icon 131
High engine exhaust system temperature 132
Emission green house gas component warranty 133
I-Start system 134
I-Start system (continue) 135
I-Start system failure detection 136
ARMS (Automatic Reset Main Switch) 138
I-Start system power relays 139
Batteries charger 140
Bulk charge time estimation 141

Some advice for driving 142
Safe driving 142
Economy driving 143
Driving in cold weather 144
QR code labels 145

If something happens 146
Assistance and rescue on highway 146
Safety 147
If the engine is not working 148
Punctures 150
Punctured air bellows 150
Towing 151
Towing (continue) 152
Bus towing considerations 153
Alternative towing procedure 154
Additional fire detection system (multiplexed) 156
Releasing the parking brake 157
Release the parking brake with air from the bus tires 157
Parking brake mechanical releasing 158
Parking brake on disc brakes mechanical releasing 159

Change the batteries....160
Starting assistance....162
Jump start batteries procedure....163
Jump start batteries procedure warnings....164
Ground stud for jump start batteries....165
Batteries cut-off switch....166
I-Start system failure detection....168
Bulb replacement....169
Headlamps....169
Xenon lights....170
Rear lights....170
License plate lighting....171
Electrical fault general lookup....172
Bus electrical center....173
Chassis electric circuit relays....174
Chassis electric circuit fuses....177
Body electric circuit relays....184
Body electric circuit fuses....185
Fuse boxes inside to the batteries compartments....189
Fuses and relays electrical box inside to the right hand side batteries compartment....190
Mini fuse box holder inside to the left hand side batteries compartment....193
Wheels replacement....194
Spare wheel....195
Recommendations to avoid unnecessary tire wear....196
Recommended tire pressures....197
Check of tire wear....198

Technical data....203
General dimensions....203
9700 US/CAN (6x2 only)....203
Electrical system specifications....204
Bulbs for lighting lamps....205
Engine specifications....206
Automatic and automatized gearbox specifications....207
Transmission ratios....207
Rear axle specifications....208
Wheels and tires specifications....209
Front wheels alignment specifications....210
Diesel Emission Fluid (DEF) tank specification....211
Vehicle identification....212
Bus identification plate....213
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)....214
Engine identification labels....215
Vehicle emission control information label....216
I-Shift transmission identification plate (if installed)....217
Allison transmission (identification plate)....218

Rear axle identification plate 219
Retarder identification plate (if installed) 220
Service intervals 221

Index 223

Safety information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

Driver's responsibility

- As the driver, you are responsible for the safety and comfort of the passengers during the journey. Therefore, do not drive the bus before you have read this driver's manual. You must be familiar with all the indicators and warning lights and know what to do if something unexpected happens.
- As the driver of the vehicle, you should be aware of the vehicle weight and loading capacity. See instructions on warning stickers, the vehicle registration book and on the identification plate.
- As the driver of the vehicle, it is your responsibility to foresee any hazards that could threaten your passengers.
- It is also your responsibility to ensure that all the safety equipment of the bus is in place. Therefore check regularly the working order of safety belts, emergency door and window opening, door sensitive edges, fire extinguishers and first aid equipment.
- The brakes on the bus are operated by compressed air. Never drive if the air pressure is too low or if you discover other problems with the brakes.
- Pay attention to any steering faults. The vehicle can be steered even if the power steering is not working, although the steering will be heavy.
- Never crawl under the bus if it is supported by a “hydraulic jack”. Use approved vehicle supports or a solid pallet in case of punctures or wheel changes.
- Lifting devices and supports should stand securely on a horizontal surface. The wheels that are not to be lifted should be blocked to ensure that the vehicle will not start to move.
- Re-tighten the wheel nuts after approximately **125 mi (200 km)** if the wheels have been removed.
- Tighten the wheel nuts every **6 months** regardless of whether the wheels have been removed or not.
- Follow the recommended service and maintenance program to maintain the bus's condition and safety.
- Pay attention to exhaust and fuel smells. Any leaks should be taken care of immediately at the garage.
- The bus tires and rims should be approved for the intended load and speed in accordance with current legal requirements.

2 Introduction

Keys

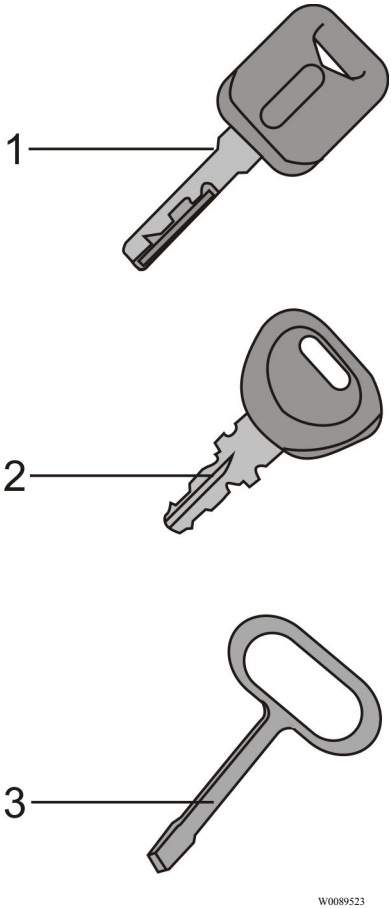
The following keys are delivered with the bus:

1 Ignition key.

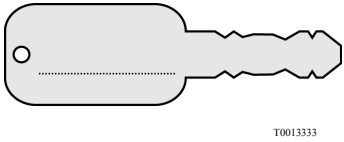
2 Exterior and interior hatches and doors.

3 Right hand side rear service hatch and radiator service access hatch.

Note: There may be alternative versions of the keys, depending on the types of locks that are fitted.



Note: Note the number of the ignition key to facilitate ordering of spare keys.



Key and cylinder replacement

In the following table its provide the part number of cylinders and keys for replacement.

Key and Cylinder Replacement	
Location	**Part Number**
Exterior and interior hatches and doors.	70348099 (cylinder) 70364098 (key). [1]
Ignition key.	8159908 (1 ignition lock + switch, 2 door locks, 2 keys).
Right hand side rear service hatch and radiator service access hatch.	70348255 (cylinder) 70319047 (key).

1 Both parts (cylinder and key) must be ordered.

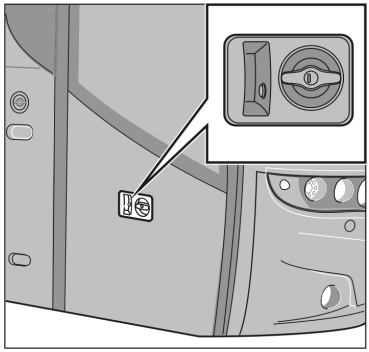
Entering the bus

To open the front service door proceed as follows:

- Turn the key in the lock to the horizontal position.
- Turn the knob to the vertical position.
- Push the pneumatic door opening button.

The button for the pneumatic opening of the first door is placed in the door handle.

Note: In case of total or partial emptying of the door pneumatic system, open the door by pushing the right side of the door.

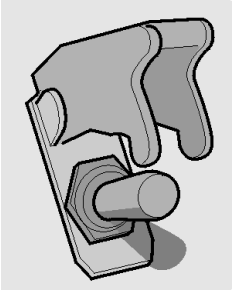


T8012405

Emergency stop

An emergency switch is located on the left side of the dashboard. Depending on the market specification, the emergency switch may disconnect the bus electrical power supply, cut **OFF** the fuel supply and activate the hazard warning lights.

Note: Only use the emergency cut out in an emergency situation.



T0009170

Protection against batteries discharge

In order to prevent battery discharge while the bus is standing, the Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with an Automatic Reset Main Switch (ARMS; see the following section in this manual: “ARMS (Automatic Reset Main Switch)”, page 138) function that disconnects the supply to major electrical consumers such as: electric heaters, some external lighting, etc.
If the ignition switch is in position **I + a click**, power to these consumers is switched **OFF** around **120 seconds** (for Starter batteries it is **120 seconds** after voltage is below **23.5 V** and for Consumer batteries it is **130 seconds** after voltage is below **23 V**).

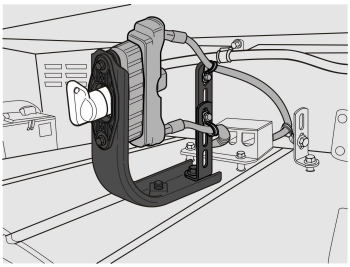
T0014333

Note: Turn **OFF** the ignition switch to position **0**, each time the bus is out of service.

For more information about ARMS function refer to this section in this manual “I-Start system”, page 134 and “ARMS (Automatic Reset Main Switch)”, page 138.
Also see the separate operating instructions: “I-Start”.

Batteries cut-off switch

Also called “General switch ”. This switch is used to completely cut **OFF** the bus electrical power supply to avoid discharge the batteries. Use this switch if the bus its out of service for **24 hours** or more.
For more information related to this switch, see the following section in this manual: “Batteries cut-off switch”, page 166.



W0108406

Batteries cut-off switch knob.

Doors

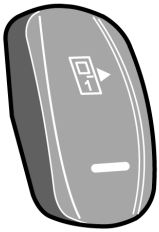
The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with one single-leaf door opening outwards. The door is normally operated by pneumatic cylinders.
The door may be equipped with a system protecting passengers from being trapped in the doorway during opening or closing, this system has sensors measuring the air pressure in the door system.

T0012008

Note: In the case of excessive drop of the door pneumatic system air pressure, the “Door failure” warning lamp lights in the lower right corner of the bus instrument cluster.

Opening the bus from inside

There is a button for door opening on the right hand side of the driver's dashboard. Pushing the button causes the door to open. The button indicator lamp is lit when the door is open.



T3018176

CAUTION

Before closing the door ensure that there are no passengers standing in the doorway.

Closing the bus

To close the bus proceed as follows:

1 Select neutral position on the gear selector.

2 Engage the parking brake.

3 Turn on the switch that activates the door opening push-button in the door handle.

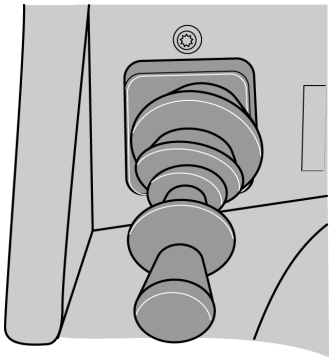
4 Open the door.

5 Turn **OFF** the power supply with the ignition key in position **0**, to refer see the following section in this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47.

6 Leave the bus and close the door using the push-button in the door handle.

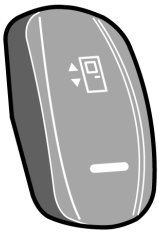
7 Lock the door with the key.

Note: After locking the door with the key, the push-button in the door handle becomes inactive.
After turning off the power supply with the ignition switch, the light above the entrance door remains on for about **90 seconds**.
If the button activating the button in the handle for opening the door **is not switched on**, in order to enter the bus again, the emergency valve must be used.



T5014881

Parking brake lever control.



T1008555

Button for outside opening of the service door.

10 Doors and hatches

Hatches and doors opened warning

If any of the bus hatches are open or not properly closed, a “hatch open” symbol will appear on the driver´s information display.

T3018116

Note: The engine cannot be started unless the engine hatch is closed.

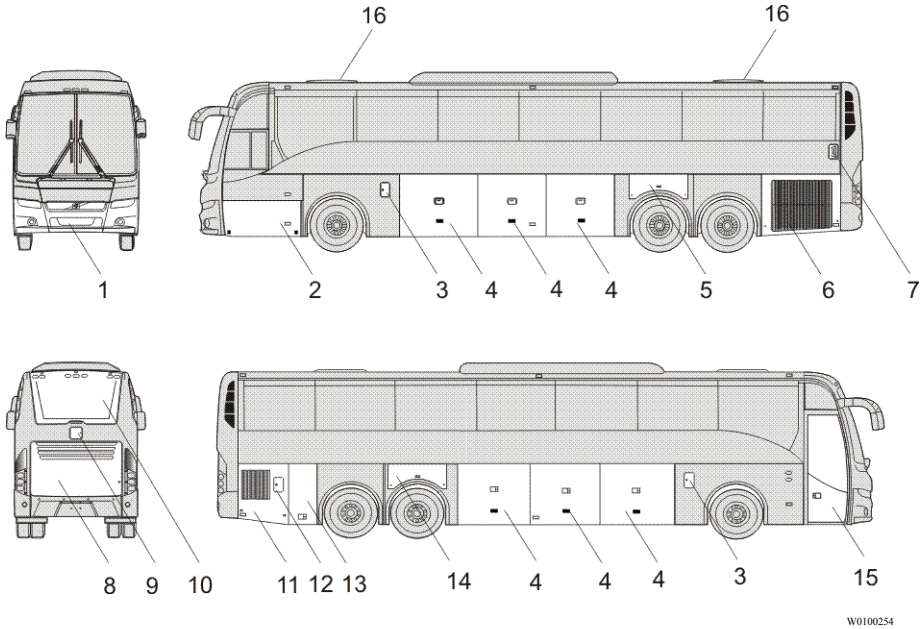
Note: With the engine hatch open, the engine can be started by means of a button in the control box, see the following section in this manual: “Engine control panel in engine bay”, page 101

Doors and hatches configurations

The configuration of the service doors, hatches and luggage compartment hatches depends on the bus version.
Possible configurations according to the bus version are shown in the next page. The description placed refers to items located behind the door or hatch.

Doors and hatches configuration

9700 US/CAN UWCL (without Wheel Chair Lift)



1 Compartment hatch for external air valve, front towing point and spare wheel access.

2 Compartment hatch for tool box and washer fluid reservoir access.

3 Fuel filler (*left and right side*) hatches.

4 Luggage compartment hatches (*left and right side*).

5 Compartment hatch for “I-Start” battery box (*consumer side*) and fuse box access.

6 Radiator service hatch access.

7 DEF* injector service hatch access.

8 Engine compartment hatch and rear towing point access.

9 Coolant filler hatch access.

10 Aftertreatment catalyst compartment panel cover for service access.

11 Auxiliary heater service hatch access.

12 DEF* filler hatch.

13 Septic tank compartment hatch access.

14 Compartment hatch for “I-Start” battery box (*starter side*), battery cut-off switch (*“general switch”*) and fuse box access.

15 Service door (*passengers access*).

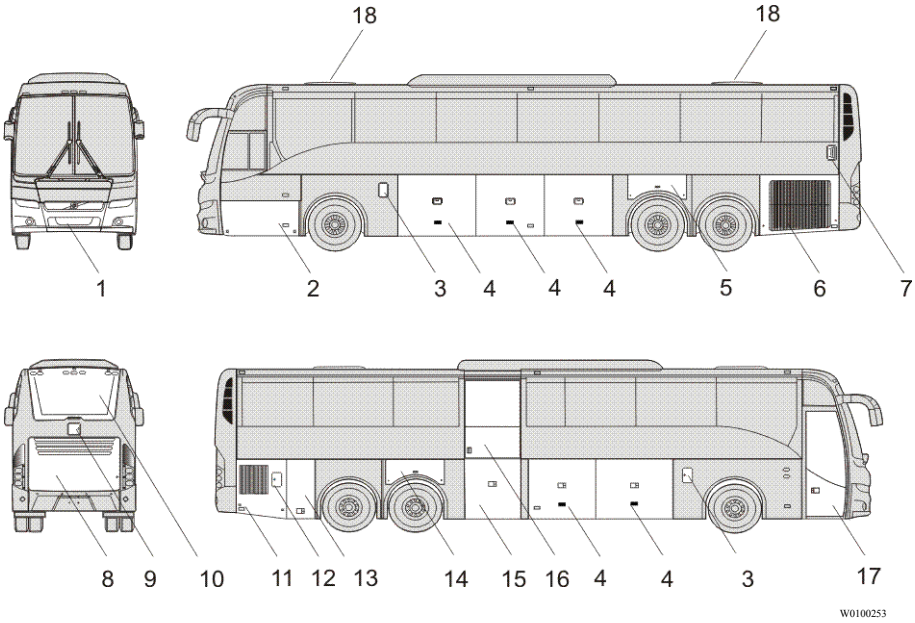
16 Roof hatches (*ventilation/emergency exits*).

* Diesel Emission Fluid, (urea or also AdBlue®).

12 Doors and hatches

Doors and hatches configuration (bus with WCL)

9700 US/CAN WCL (with Wheel Chair Lift)



1 Compartment hatch for external air valve, front towing point and spare wheel access.

2 Compartment hatch for tool box and washer fluid reservoir access.

3 Fuel filler (*left and right side*) hatches.

4 Luggage compartment hatches (*left and right side*).

5 Compartment hatch for “I-Start” battery box (*consumer side*) and fuse box access.

6 Radiator service hatch access.

7 DEF* injector service hatch access.

8 Engine compartment hatch and rear towing point access.

9 Coolant filler hatch access.

10 Aftertreatment catalyst compartment panel cover for service access.

11 Auxiliary heater service hatch access.

12 DEF* filler hatch.

13 Septic tank compartment hatch access.

14 Compartment hatch for “I-Start” battery box (*starter side*), battery cut-off (*“general switch”*) switch and fuse box access.

15 Compartment door for WCL* elevator system and WCL* control device access.

16 Wheel chair door access.

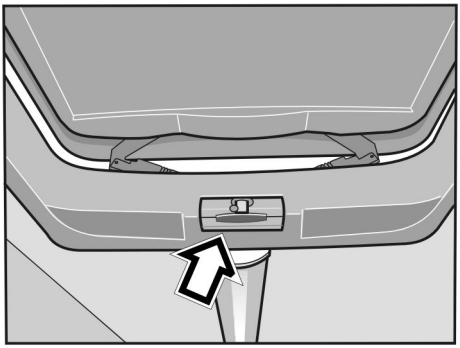
17 Service door (*passengers access*).

18 Roof hatches (*ventilation/emergency exits*).

* Diesel Emission Fluid, (urea or also AdBlue®).
* (WCL) Wheel Chair Lift).

Roof Hatches

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with up to two roof hatches manually operated.
This hatches are manually opened by the a handles on each side of the hatch to push it upward to open and allow the ventilation. In addition, the roof hatches can be used as an emergency exits.
To know how operate the opening emergency exit mechanism, see the following section in this manual: “Roof hatches”, page 103 and for more roof hatches information, see separate operating instructions: “Manual roof hatch operation”.



T8010110

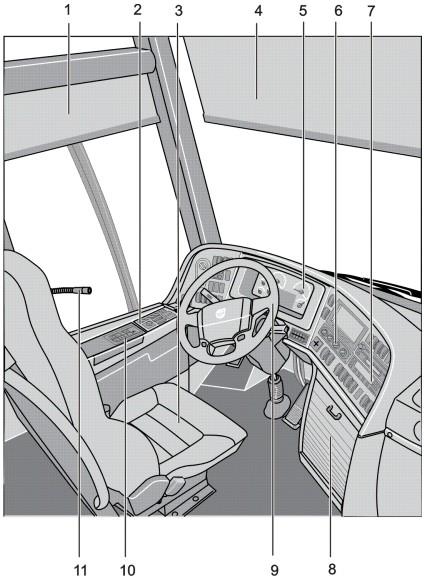
Note: When the A/C is activated in the bus its hatches should be closed, since the air coming in from outside may interfere with the operation of the equipment controlling the temperature inside the bus.

CAUTION

Make sure that the hatches are closed when it's raining and when you leave the bus for a longer period of time.

14 Driver's area

Driver's area



1 Side sun visor.

2 Side panel.

3 Driver's seat.

4 Front sun visor.

5 Dashboard, instrument cluster.

6 Controller, A/C.

7 Controllers, audiovisual system.

8 Locker, audio equipment.

9 Steering wheel.

10 Gear selector pad.

11 Driver´s microphone.

Driver's seat

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with “National Seating” driver's seat type. In some 9700 US/CAN buses a microphone its installed in the driver seat head rest. See the following section on this manual: “Guide or driver microphone (optional)”, page 89, for more information.
For more driver’s seat information see separate operating instructions: “Driver's seat”.

W0089527

⚠ DANGER

Adjusting seat position or fastening a seat belt should only be performed when the vehicle is stationary. Attempting this while the vehicle is moving may be lead to an accident, causing serious personal injury or death.

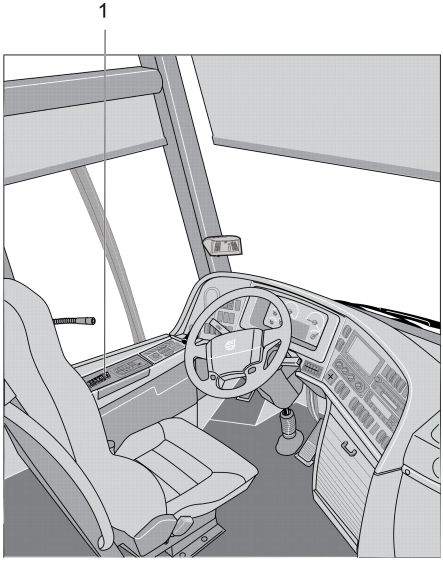
Note: The safety belt should not be twisted or blocked when properly fastened.

Note: Before adjusting, check whether there are any objects in front of the seat or behind it, that could hinder adjustment.

Driver’s seat features label

On the side panel in the driver’s area an informative label (**A**) is placed to provide ergonomic features information to the driver; the label is placed as shown on the image (**B**). For more information how to use the driver’s seat, see separate operating instructions: “Driver’s seat”.

(**A**) Driver’s seat features label.

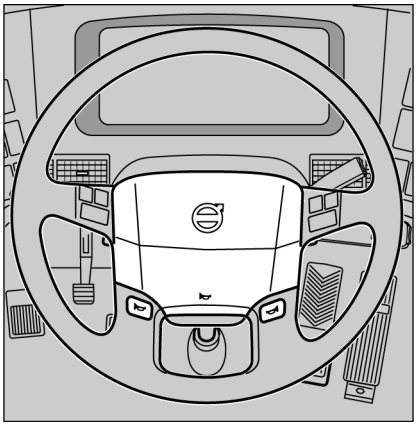


(**B**) Driver’s seat features label location on driver’s area (**1**).

Horn

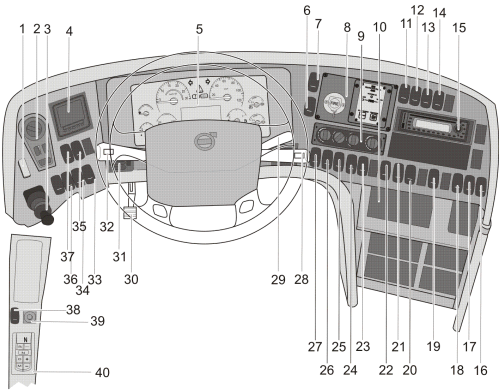
The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with one electrical horn (diaphragm) and one operated by compressed air. Pushing the central part of the steering wheel activates the electrical horn, while pushing one of the two small buttons beneath activates the air horn.

Note: Remember that the use of horns is subject to regulations.



T6010187

Dashboard



1 Emergency stop switch.
2 Light switch.
3 Parking brake.
4 Tire monitoring system.
5 Instrument cluster.
6 Delay Automatized Fire Extinguished System (AFES).
7 Emergency windows open warning.
8 Automatized Fire Extinguished System (AFES).
9 A/C controller.
10 Spare.
11 Light for driver's position.
12 Front sun visor.
13 Wheel chair lift system enable and door ajar.
14 Wheel chair lift main switch.
15 Audio and video system.
16 Toilet activation.
17 Driver's fan.
18 Spare.
19 Central lock.
20 Driver´s microphone enabled.
21 Position lights.
22 Service first door.
23 Door lock.
24 Night light under seats.
25 Interior lights.
26 Reading light.
27 Night light.
28 Display control stalk, wipers and washers control stalk.
29 Retarder.
30 Steering wheel adjustment pedal.
31 Air inlet.
32 Control stalk at the steering wheel, direction indicators and cruise control.
33 Traction control system.
34 Hill start auxiliary.
35 Bogie.
36 Bus level.
37 Kneeling.
38 Mirror heater.
39 Mirror adjustment.
40 I-Shift selector pad or Allison transmission shifter (depends bus configuration).

Faults and warnings

There are three different types of signals that give the driver all the necessary information on the vehicle:

- **STOP** message.
- **WARNING** message.
- **Stop at the next bus stop** message.

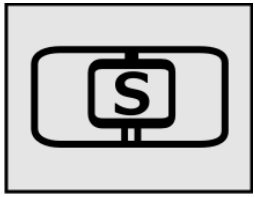
Above the display there are three lamps for (*Stop at the next bus stop*, **WARNING** and **STOP** messages), that alert the driver's attention when necessary.
Messages with appropriate symbols are shown automatically on the display.
Several messages can be active simultaneously. A new message will only replace the current message on the display if it is of higher priority. This means that the display always shows the message with the highest priority.
For more detailed information about display functions, see separate operating instructions: “Display”.

T3014364

Stop message.

T3014365

Warning message.



W3079585

Stop at the next bus stop message.

Accelerator pedal deactivated

The 9700 US/CAN bus is fitted with prioritized brake function.
This function deactivates a request for acceleration if **both** the accelerator pedal and the foot brake pedal or parking brake have been activated simultaneously.
If above its happens, the accelerator pedal remains deactivated until it is reset deactivating this function (prioritized brake function), for deactivate must be fully release the service foot brake pedal or in tis case release the parking brake (see also the following section in this manual: “Parking brake”, page 63).
For additional information on this function, see separate operating instructions: “EBS system”.

Note: The symbol shown in the driver display when the prioritized brake function is active, also occurs; when the bus speed exceeds the permitted limit when the bus air suspension is in the highest or lowest position (see the following section in this manual: “Level control”, page 34).
For more information, see also the separate operating instructions: “display”.

T0013511

Symbol shown in the driver display when the prioritized brake function is active.

STOP message

WARNING

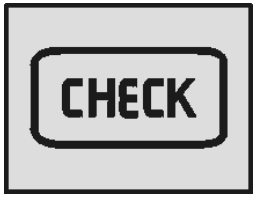
If this lamp lights while driving, stop the bus immediately and turn off the engine. Continuing to drive may be severely endanger the vehicle, the driver or passengers. If appears the **STOP** message while the engine is running, also its heard an audible warning buzzer.

T3014364

Note: If the **STOP** message appears while the engine is running, it is accompanied by activation of the audible warning buzzer. °

Warning message

If this lamp lights, the vehicle must be taken to a workshop for repair as soon as possible. There is no immediate danger of the vehicle breaking down, and under normal circumstances it should be possible to complete the journey. This lamp is also used to draw the driver's attention to problems other than vehicle failures, e.g. as a warning in the case of an open luggage compartment hatch. °

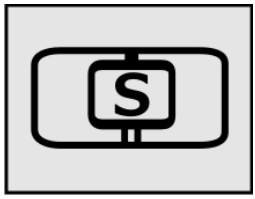


T3014365

Stop at the next bus stop message

Simultaneously with this lamp lighting up, a new message is shown on the display. The fact that this lamp lights up does not mean that there is something wrong with the vehicle. This lamp may for example illuminate to draw the driver’s attention to low fuel level.

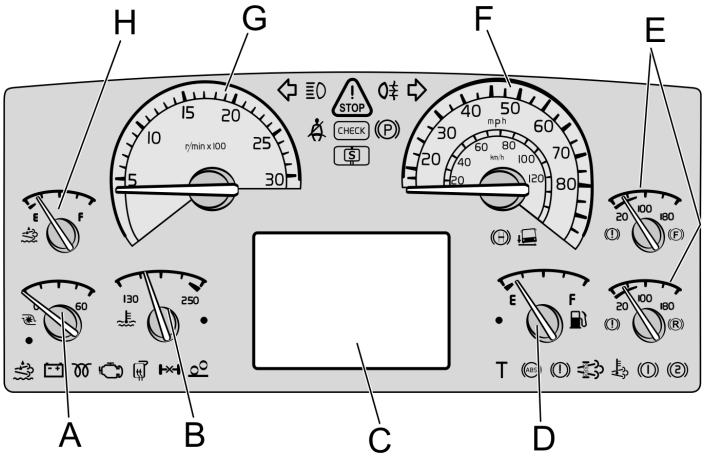
Acknowledge the message with **ESC** key. If the information message is still activate, it will be shown again next time the starter key is turned to the starting position. °



W3079585

° For more detailed information about display functions, see separate operating instructions: “Display”.

Instrumentation



Types of instruments

A Turbo pressure gauge.

B Coolant temperature gauge.

C For the display, see separate operating instructions: “Display”.

D Fuel gauge.

E Air pressure gauge for circuit brakes.

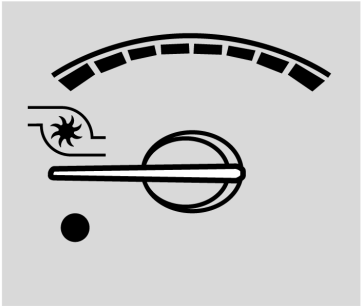
F Speedometer.

G Tachometer.

H Diesel exhaust fluid gauge.

Turbo pressure gauge (A)

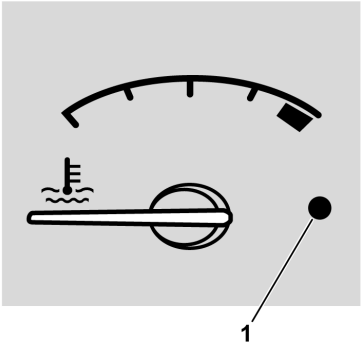
The turbo pressure gauge indicates the pressure in the intake manifold. A high turbo pressure increases fuel consumption. This gauge helps you drive in the most economical manner. When driving on level roads at constant speed, the pointer should remain still within the green zone.



T0082692

Engine coolant temperature gauge (B)

This gauge indicates the temperature in the engine's coolant system. Under normal driving conditions, the pointer should stay just below the red zone (normal operating temperature is between **80°C (176°F) and 100°C (212°F)**.
The engine is fitted with overheating protection, that reduces the engine power output to **50%** if the temperature reaches the red zone. The bus can still be driven even after activation of the overheating protection.



T0082691

1 Warning lamp, red.

CAUTION

The bus must not be driven if the temperature rises even higher as this can result in damage to the engine.

An indicator signals when the cooling system temperature is too high.

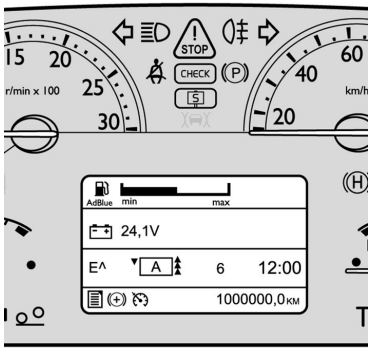
– Warning lamp light (**1**).

– **STOP** lamp light.

– The acoustic signal sound (if the engine is running).

Driver display (C)

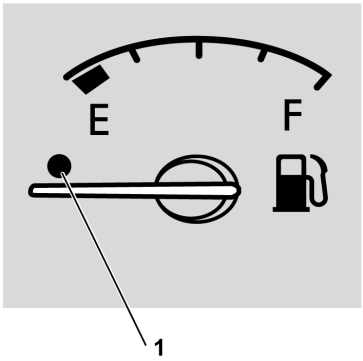
The driver display consists of the main menu and several submenus with their relevant functions.
For additional information, see separate operating instructions: “Display”.



T0098814

Fuel gauge (D)

The fuel gauge shows the amount of fuel in the tank. The red zone and the warning lamp (**1**) give a warning of low fuel level.
The display gives considerable information on the fuel situation, i.e. fuel consumption, **A** to **B** information and remaining fuel.
For more information, see separate operating instructions: “Display”.



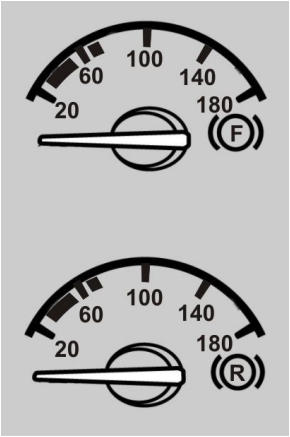
T0082696

Pneumatic system pressure gauge (E)

⚠ DANGER

Stop the bus immediately if any of the warning lamps illuminate! A warning lamp will illuminate if there is an excessive pressure drop in the braking system. Investigate the cause of the fall in pressure. Failure to do so may result in failure of the vehicles brakes that may cause an accident, leading to serious personal injury or death.

If the engine remains switched off for a long time, the compressed air pressure may fall to a level which will prevent the bus being started immediately. The warning lamp remains lit until the pressure in the pneumatic system rises to a sufficiently high level. If the compressed air in the braking system has been completely exhausted, it may take quite a long time before the pressure starts to rise. During driving, the gauge pointer should remain within the green zone, but it can temporarily drop below that zone during braking.



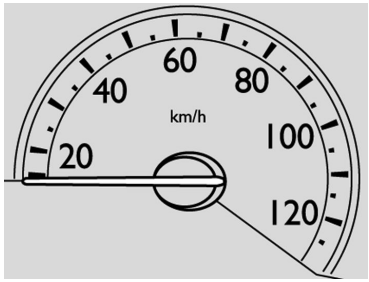
T0015292

F — Air pressure for front brake circuit.

R — Air pressure for rear brake circuit.

Speedometer (F)

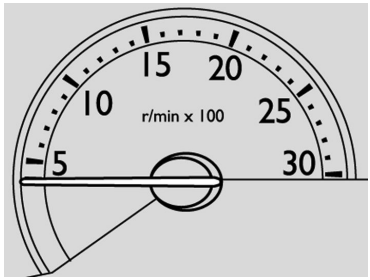
The speedometer indicates the speed of the bus in mph. For some markets, speedometers are also available that indicate speed both in mph and km/h.



T0082695

Tachometer (G)

The tachometer scale is divided into three zones. During normal driving you should stay within the green zone, which gives the best fuel economy.



T0082694

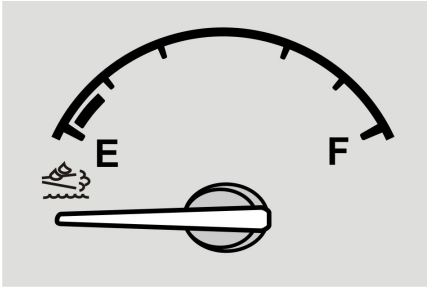
CAUTION

Avoid operating the vehicle with the tachometer in the red zone. Such high engine speeds can result in damage to the engine and the transmission.

Diesel exhaust fluid gauge (H)

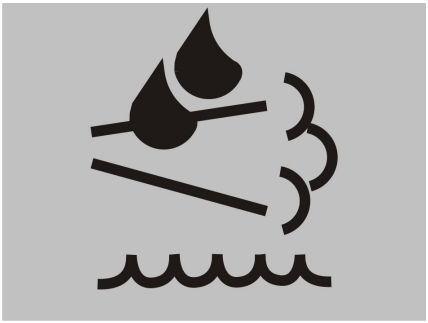
The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) gauge shows the amount of **DEF** in the tank. The red zone and warning lamp (**1**) give a warning of low **DEF** level.
The following will be indicate if the **DEF** level drops too low:

- If level is equal or less than about **12%** tank volume the dash lamp will light constantly, it warns drivers to fill the tank.
- If the warning was ignored and the gauge reads empty, the dash lamp starts flashing and the engine will experience a **25%** torque reduction.
- If driver continues to ignore warnings and the bus becomes stationary, the bus speed will be limited to **5 mph**.



T0061352

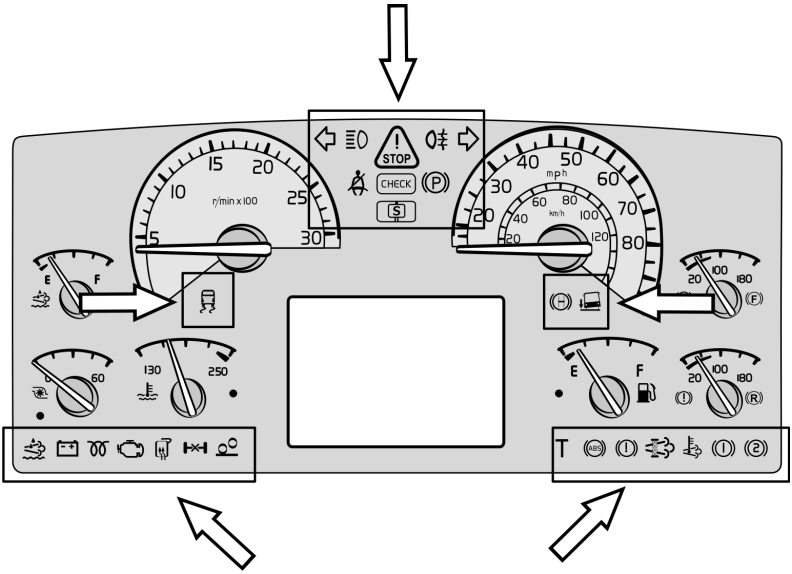
DEF fluid gauge in the instrument cluster.



T8061207

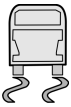
Low **DEF** fluid symbol indicator in the instrument panel lamps.

Instrument panel lamps and symbols



Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
	Left indicator ON.		Main beam.
	If there is a problem with the bus you must stop.		Fog Light Rear.
	Right indicator ON.		Safety belt reminder.
	Check.		Parking brake applied.
	Stop at the next bus stop.		Kneeling activated (for easier access).

Instrument panel lamps and symbols (continue)

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
	Door brake activated.		ESP system malfunction detected.
	DEF low level.		Battery not charging.
	Pre-heating ON.		Engine, Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL).
	Screen / mirrors heating activated.		Differential lock activated.
	The switch for increasing load on the drive axle (bogie lift) of the bogie is ON.		ABS system not functioning.
	Tachograph event.		DPF regeneration required.
	Brake air pressure low.		Brake air pressure circuit 1 low.
	High exhaust system temperature (HEST).		Brake air pressure circuit 2 low.

Lights switch

a Lights OFF or automatic activation of Dipped Beam

b Parking Lights

c Dipped Beam

d Auxiliary Spotlights

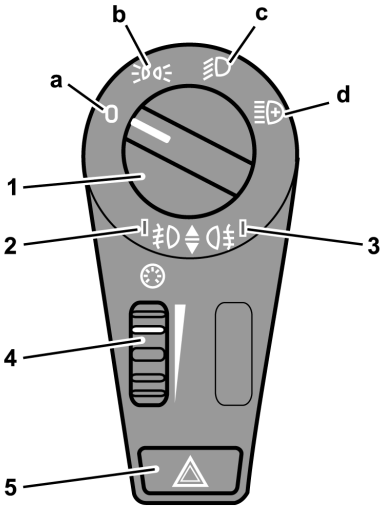
1 Lighting Switch
Pressing the switch turns the front fog lights on and off. Pulling it turns the rear fog lights **ON** and **OFF**.

2 Indication (Repeater) Lamp, Front Fog Light.

3 Indicator Light, Fog Light, Rear.

4 Instrument Lighting Rheostat.

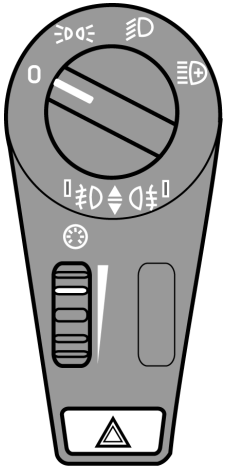
5 Hazard Warning Lights.



T0012036

Hazard warning lights

Pressing this button in will turn on all the bus hazard warning lights (both sets of direction indicators). The hazard warning lights will work even if both the ignition and power supply are turned **OFF** (with the main power switch through by the ignition key in position **I**).

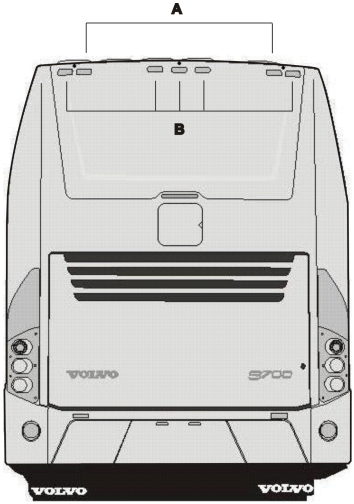


T0014325

⚠ DANGER

Use the hazard warning lights if the bus is stopped in a manner that may put other road users at risk. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

Two rear upper lights **(A; at each side of the bus)** works as direction indicators and hazard warning lights
When exterior lights switch is at **ON** position, five upper rear lamps **(B)** turns on.



W0089559

Switches

The number of switches depends on the bus specification.

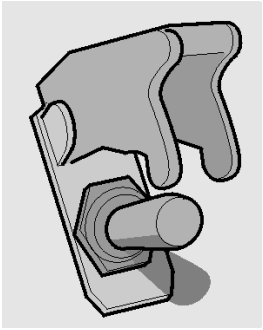
Emergency stop switch

Note: Only use the emergency stop switch only in an emergency situation as: A fire, collision or accident; **to switch off the bus electrical feed in normal conditions place the ignition key in *0* position** (see the following section in this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47).

When the emergency stop is activated the following occurs (can vary from country to country):

- Air is exhausted from the door system.
- Engine is stopped.
- Power supply to the main electrical consumers is cut **OFF**.
- Fuel supply to the engine is cut **OFF** and so is outflow of fuel from the tanks.
- Hazard lights are switched **ON**.
- Lights above the doors are switched **ON**.

Activate the emergency cut out by lifting the cover (in red color) upwards and pressing up the switch. When the red color cover is closed the power switch automatically is pressed down to the disconnected position.



T0009170

CAUTION

If use the emergency stop switch to turn **OFF** the bus electrical power, may be have a batteries or accumulators fully electrical charge consuming risk, due when turn this switch some bus components are put into operation for the emergency mode and remaining active until emergency stop switch its turned **OFF**. To avoid this, place the ignition key in position **0** (to refer see the following section in this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47 or use **only under a normal conditions the cut-off switch** (to refer see the following section in this manual: “Batteries cut-off switch”, page 166 to disconnect the bus electrical power.

Kneeling system

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN is equipped with a kneeling system to facilitate the entering in the bus, which is controlled by a switch located in the dashboard. This switch allows the right-hand side of the bus to be lowered (*kneeling*) to a level that facilitates passenger entry and exit.
There are two possible operating modes for the kneeling switch:

1 The bus lowers while the kneeling switch is depressed. After reaching the lowest level, i.e. entry/exit level, kneeling stops and the switch can be released. Releasing the switch prior to reaching the lowest level causes the bus to return to the normal ride height.

2 Pressing the switch once lowers the bus to its lowest level for entry/exit.

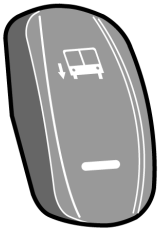
When kneeling function is active, an icon in the instrument cluster lit and a blinking lamp is activated at the door as well an acoustic signal.

Various ways to resume normal riding height:

- Pressing the upper part of the switch.
- Closing the door.
- Starting the bus and accelerating beyond **3 mph (5 km/h)** road speed (only buses without door brake function).
- Restarting the engine.

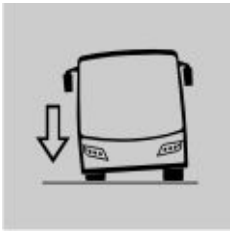
Conditions for kneeling:

- Engine idle running (vehicle stopped).
- Bus without courtesy step.



T0012054

Switch in the dashboard.



W0081879

Icon lit in the dashboard.

WARNING

Ensure that the bus can kneel without the risk of trapping passengers' feet between the door sill and the curb. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury.

Level control

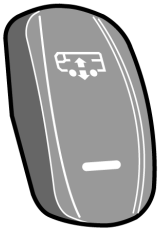
The ground clearance of the bus (suspension height) can be adjusted with this switch.

- To lower the bus press the lower part of the switch, e.g. while passing under a low bridge.
- To raise the bus press the upper part of the switch, e.g. while driving onto a ferry.

Note: Levelling control should only be used temporarily. During normal driving the switch **must** be in the middle position.

When the bus reaches the selected level a symbol is shown on the display panel. The suspension system attempts to keep the bus at a constant ride height independent of the load. Any faults in the system are indicated by a symbol on the display panel.

Note: If the air suspension of the bus is in the highest or lowest position and the bus speed exceeds **12 mph (20 km/h)**, a message alert is sent to the display driver, therefore, the acceleration pedal is deactivated (Showing the corresponding symbol on the driver display, see the following section on this manual: “Accelerator pedal deactivated”, page 20).



T0012058

Switch in the dashboard.

W0108964

Air suspension system is working.

T0012224

Low pressure in the air suspension system.

W0108966

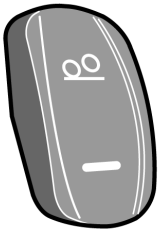
Fault in the air suspension system.

Increasing load on the drive axle (bogie lift)

The drive axle load is increased by pressing this switch. Increase in drive axle load is often an advantage when moving on slippery surfaces.
Pressing this switch increases the load on the driving axle by removing the suspension load on the trailing (non-driving) axle.

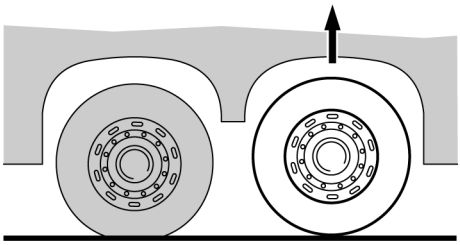
The unweighting continues until one of the following takes place:

- Speed of the bus rises above **20 mph (30 km/h)**.
- The switch is pressed again.



T0012046

Switch on the dashboard.

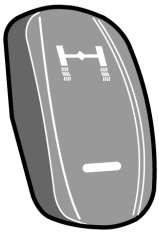


T6009559

Tag axle lift.

Traction Control System (TCS)

The TCS system automatically reduces the driving torque of the engine if the drive wheels start to spin.
At speeds below **25 mph (40 km/h)** the TCS system also acts as an automatic differential brake, braking the driving wheel that begins to spin.
For more information, see separate operating instructions: “EBS system”.



T0012059

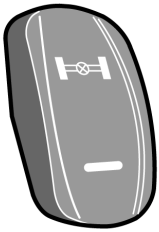
CAUTION

Turn off the TCS before towing. Failure to do so may result in damage to the system components.

Differential lock

Differential lock allows drive axle shafts to be connected together. The wheels then rotate at the same speed, which makes driving on slippery surfaces easier.
The differential lock is only to be used on slippery surfaces. Engage as soon as the bus is on the slippery surface. It can be coupled in during driving, at any speed, but will not actually engage until the bus is travelling at less than **10 mph (15 km/h)**.

Note: Do not forget to disengage the differential lock when you have left the slippery surface! For more information, see separate driver instructions “EBS system”.



T0012041

3 stage switch for the manual/automatic coupling of the differential lock.

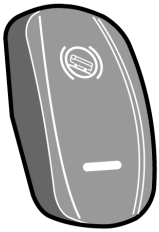
CAUTION

The differential lock is only to be used on slippery surfaces. Other uses may result in damage to the drive axle.

Hill start assistance (optional)

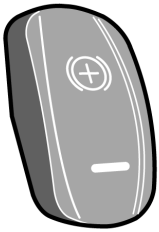
The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus may be equipped with the hill start assistance function. This function helps the driver to pull away on inclines by holding the bus still until the required torque at the wheels is applied.
This function's mode of operation depends on whether the bus is equipped with a manual or automatic transmission.
For more information, see separate operating instructions: “EBS system”.

Note: This function not apply in buses equipped with **Allison** transmission.



T0012045

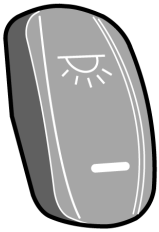
Retarder enabled (if installed)



T1008547

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus may be equipped with a retarder, which (if installed) is an auxiliary brake component and its operation is enabled by a switch located in the dashboard.
This switch enables the retarder control using the brake pedal or by manipulating a lever located at the right side on the steering column.
For more information about retarder, see the following section on this manual: “Retarder (if installed)”, page 123.

Passenger compartment lighting

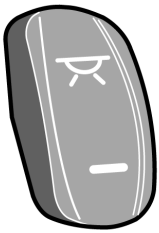


T1008556

This switch turns on the passenger compartment lighting as follows:

- Press button once— after **3 seconds**, all lamps will illuminate at **50%** intensity.
- Press twice— after **3 seconds**, all the passenger compartment lights will illuminate at **100%** intensity.
- Press three or more times — switching between interval of **3 seconds** the light intensity decreases from **100% to 50%** and vice versa.
- Press and hold button for **3 seconds** — to turn off passenger compartment lighting.

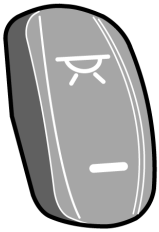
Night lighting (optional)



T1008549

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus may be equipped with a night light for passengers compartment activated by a switch located in the dashboard. This switch has two positions, **ON and OFF**. Activation of the night lighting turns on the lamps illuminating the gangway, which are located under the seats.
When the night lighting is **ON**, the passenger compartment lighting level is dimmed to **30%** regardless of the positions of the other switches.

Half-light lighting

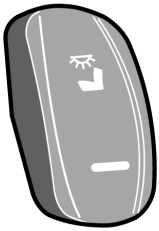


T1008549

This switch turn on the half—light lighting in the passengers compartment and also turn on the blue lights around at the reading lights. This switch works as follows:

- Press once — to turn **ON** only the blue lights in the passenger compartment.
- Press twice — to turn **ON** the blue lights in the driver's compartment.
- Press three times — to turn **ON** all the blue lights.
- Press and hold for **3 seconds** — to turn **OFF** all the blue lights.

Driver compartment lighting

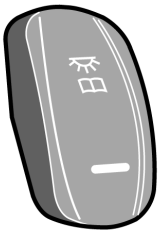


T1008557

This switch has three positions as follows:

- Position I — or bottom position, all lighting is **OFF**.
- Position II — or middle position, the lighting is **OFF** if the door is closed, but the lighting is on if the door is open.
- Position III — or top position, the lighting turns on without any restriction.

Passenger´s individual lighting

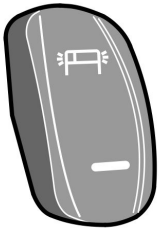


T1008548

Enabling/disabling of the passenger´s individual lighting. The lamps are located in the panels above the passenger seats. See the following section on this manual: “Passengers panel”, page 78.
This switch has three positions as follows:

- Position I — or bottom position all lamps are turned **ON**.
- Position II — or middle position all lamps are turned **OFF**.
- Position III — or top position every passenger can individually turn on the lighting with the push-button on the panel.

Position lights

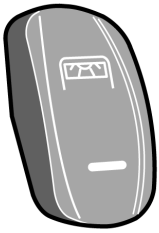


W0111159

The position lights switch turn **ON** or **OFF** the bus position lights and operate as follows:

- If the position lights are **OFF**, press and hold the switch to turn on the position lights.
- If the positions lights are **ON**, press and hold the switch to turn **OFF** the position lights.
- Press and depress and so on for position lights blinking.

Destination sign lighting (optional)



T1008545

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus may be equipped with a destination sign activated by a switch.
This switch has three positions as follows:

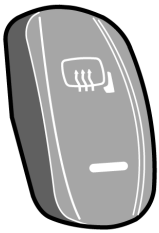
- Position I — or bottom position, destination sign lighting is **OFF**.
- Position II — or middle position, destination sign lighting turns **ON** when parking lights are on.
- Position III — or top position, lighting turns **ON** when the ignition switch is in position **II**.

For more information for the destination sign, see the following section on this manual: “Destination sign (optional)”, page 72.

Electrically heated rear view mirrors

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with a electrically heated rear view mirrors, controlled by a switch located in the side panel.
This switch operates as follows:

- A short press of the button (less than **1 second**) turns heating for **8 minutes**.
- Press for more than one second turns **ON** the permanent heating until the button is pressed again.



T1008551

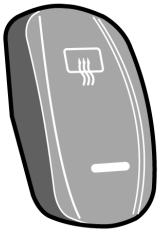
Heating can be used to remove water droplets and ice from the mirror glass. **Make sure the mirrors are free of mist or ice when driving**.

Note: On some buses this switch, besides heating the rear-view mirrors, also switches on heating of the driver's window and front door window.

Driver window heating

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with a driver window heating controlled by a switch located in the dashboard.
This switch operates as follows:

- Pressing the button switches **ON** the heating for **8 minutes**.
- Pressing the button again switches **OFF** the heating.

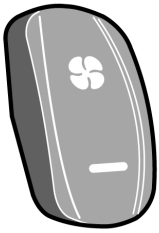


T1008580

Driver blower

This switch turns **ON** or turn **OFF** two small fans located on the top of the driver and guide seats.
This switch operate as follows:

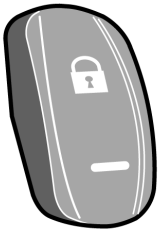
- Push the switch to turn **ON** both fans.
- Push it again this switch to turn it **OFF** the driver blower.



T1008550

Central locking

This switch locks or unlocks all luggage compartment hatches.
Additionally this switch turns **ON** the luggage compartment lights (*Luggage compartment lighting turns off after* **10 minutes** *of luggage hatches stills opened*).



T1008543

Sun visor

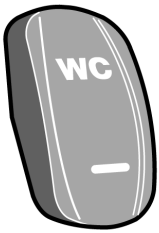
This switch facilitates lowering and raising the front windscreen sun visor as follows:

- Lowering — Press at the bottom to low the sun visor, depress to stop the movement.
- Raising — Press at the top to raise the sun visor, depress to stop the movement.

T3018180

Toilet activation

The driver can enabled or disabled the toilet function through by a switch located in the dashboard, which; turn **ON** or turn **OFF** the power supply to the all toilet functions and disengaged the door lock.
For more information see the following section in this manual: “Toilet”, page 76 and the separate operating instructions: “Toilet”.



T3018183

CAUTION

Check that this switch or switches is always in the turn **OFF** position before shutting down the engine, **Do not turn ON this switch, if the engine is not running**.

Audio system

In the dashboard is placed a switch to enable or disable the audio system of the bus.
This switch has two positions and works as follows:

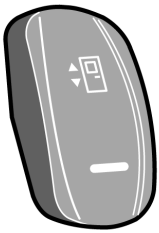
- Position I — or bottom position, enabled radio, CD or mp3 audio for passengers (microphones disabled).
- Position II — or top position, enabled microphones (for driver or guide).

W0082466

Opening service door from the outside

This switch placed in the dashboard, allows the opening or not of the service door from the exterior using the external “push-button” located in the service door handle.
The switch count with an indicator lamp to this function is enabled or disabled. The switch works as follows:

- Enabled (indicator lamp **ON**) — Doesn’t allow the service door opening from the exterior through by the handle “push-button”.
- Disabled (indicator lamp **OFF**) — Allow the service door opening from the exterior without any restriction.

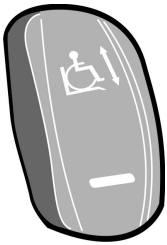


T1008555

CAUTION

Always press this switch to leave the bus.

Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system; (optional)



W3081609

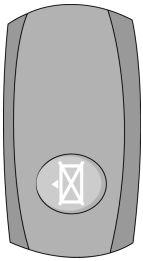
The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus may be equipped with a Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system to be operated by its remote pendant. The system can be enable or disable with a switch located in the dashboard.
This switch operate as follows:

- Position I — or switch downwards, the Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system its deactivated.
- Position II — or switch upwards, the Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system its activated.

Note: For more information related to Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system operation, see separate operating instructions provided by the equipment manufacturer “RICON”.

Emergency window in use indicator lamp

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with some side windows provided with a opening mechanism used to a emergency exit only.
This lamp lights up to indicate that one or more of the emergency windows has been opened.
For more information about for this type of the emergency windows, see the following section in this manual: “Emergency windows”, page 104.



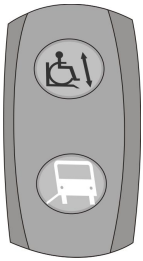
T0015524

Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system indicator light

This indicator light provide to the driver the status operation related of the Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system.
This indicator light works as follows:

- Upper light indicates the Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system is enabled.
- Bottom light indicates Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) door is ajar.

Note: For more information related to Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system operation, see separate operating instructions provided by the equipment manufacturer “RICON”.



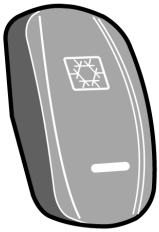
W0110531

Switches into the electrical center

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with additional “push button type” switches into the electrical center.
This additional switches are:

Air conditioning test

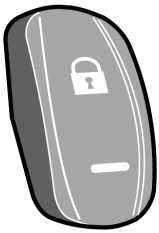
Using this switch the driver can check if the air condition is working.



T3018175

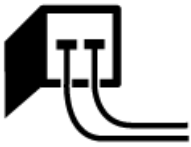
MCM (Master Control Module) service switch

There is a switch in the electrical center compartment (with a lock symbol) that needs to be activated when the MCM is being programmed. It is only intended to be used when an update on MCM software is needed. This switch was added because during programming, MCM doesn’t have control over its output signals. In this case, the body relay (**K400**) keeps opening and closing, not allowing the MCM programming process. If this switch is activated, the start is disable and an indicator is displayed in the cluster (to refer related with this symbol, see separate operating instructions: “Driver information display”).
To refer about **K400** power relay, see the following section in this manual: “I-Start system”, page 134.



T1008543

MCM (Master Control Module) service switch.



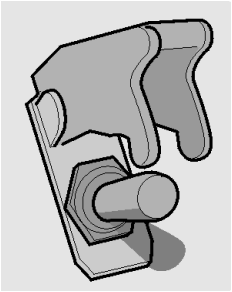
T0014716

MCM (Master Control Module) service switch activated symbol displayed in the driver´s information display.

Door brake switch

A two position “toggle switch” with a protective cover (in red color) is installed into the electrical center to enable or disable the door brake function.
The switch working as follows:

- With the switch in the up position, the door brake is enabled.
- With the switch in the down position, the door brake is disabled.



T0009170

For more information of the door brake function, see the following section in this manual: “Open door brake”, page 50.

Controls

Ignition switch

The ignition switch is located on the right side of the steering column just under the steering wheel.
Standard equipment is a normal ignition switch. A steering wheel lock is available as an option. When the key is removed it actuates a detent pin that prevents the steering shaft from turning.

Note: The vehicle is delivered with 2 identical keys. If more keys are needed, order them through your Volvo authorized dealer. **The keys are laser cut and require a special machine for copying, available through your Volvo dealer. Record the key code and keep in a secure place. A new key can be made, using a key code, if the key are lost.**, for more reference, see the following section on this manual: “Keys”, page 2.

T0014333

Ignition key switch:

- Main switch function replaced by the ignition key in position **I + a click**.
- ARMS (*Automatic Reset Main Switch*) function is working at ignition key position **I + a click**.

Ignition switch (continue)

The ignition switch has four positions:

0 **Stop position.** The electric power supply is **OFF**.

I + a cli-ck **Electrical accessories / radio position.** +30 power source, in this position electrical devices can be used (radio and accessories).
In **"I + a click"** position enable the ARMS (*Automatic Reset Main Switch*) function for save batteries to avoid charge drained and close the **main switch** integrated on the ignition key switch.

II **Drive position.** +30 power source, +DR power source (instrument cluster turns **ON**).
Between positions **II and III** there is a return spring position for preheating (for more information about pre-heating, see the following section in this manual: "I-Start system", page 134).
Note: At this position, starter and consumer batteries are put in parallel.

III **Start position.** Start / cranking and spring-return to position **II**.

The main switch (*usually located in the dashboard*) was removed and a cover was placed instead, with this switch was enable +30 power source, now +30 power source enabled by the ignition key in position **I + a click** (Accessories/ Radio position), in this position to be able to use the bus accessories while engine is **OFF**, the ignition key shall be kept on this position.

Note: +30 power source (*for body loads*) can be disconnected by the MCM (*Master Control Module*) that opens **K400** power relay when a low voltage is detected, for starter batteries it is done by **ARMS** relay. To refer this function see the following section in this manual: "I-Start system", page 134.

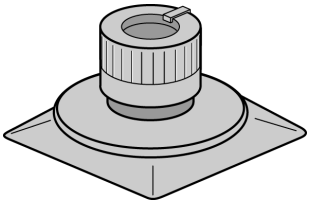
Ignition key positions.

⚠ DANGER

The ignition switch has a restart inhibitor locking out the start position after one try, which means that the key must be turned back to **0** position before a new attempt at starting can be made.
Removing the key from the starting switch activates the steering lock.
The key can only be removed from the starting switch when it is in the stop position (**0** or **OFF** position).
Do not remove the key from the starting switch when the bus is being towed!
Always remove the key from the starting switch when leaving the bus.

Adjusting external rear view mirrors

Both rear view mirrors are adjusted using the same switch. The switch can be turned to one of the two positions (adjustment of the right or left mirror). The arrow shows which of the mirrors has been selected. The selected mirror is adjusted by moving the switch in the appropriate direction.



T0014718

Note: Rear view mirrors should be adjusted before starting to drive.

Open door brake

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN is equipped with the open door brake function.
This function works as follow:

- If the bus is stopped and the service door are open. The bus will not be able to move (because the throttle signal will be deactivated and also the gear selector in the transmission will locked, this previously only applies for buses that are equipped with **I-Shift** transmission, or any transmission multiplexed to the bus electrical system). Also too, the parking brakes will remain applied. So that should be close to the service door to be able move the bus.
- If the bus is in motion, the service doors may not be open until the bus is totally stopped.

The open door brake function goes active only when it has the following conditions:

- Must be activated the open door brake general activation button which located within to the bus electric central (see the following section in this manual: “Door brake switch”, page 46).
- The bus must be go at speeds below to **3 mph (5 km/h)**, even though the open door brake general activation button is activated and the bus speed greater than that indicated speed, the indicator light on the dashboard will not lit, indicating that the open door brake function is not active.
- The bus must be go at maximum speed of **3 mph (5 km/h)**, for the open door brake function may enter in active and ready to enter in a function once the bus is totally stopped (this is indicated when the indicator light lit in the dashboard).

Note: The open door brake does **not** engage at speeds over **3 mph (5 km/h)**.

CAUTION

The open door brake does **not** engage if the brake system registers poor traction when the bus is stopping on a slippery surface. This prevents the bus skidding when stopping on a slippery surface.

Open door brake deactivation

For open door brake deactivation do the following:

1 The accelerator must not be active (fully release the accelerator).

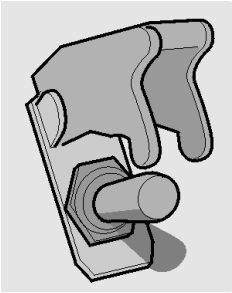
2 The specified door(s) must be completely closed.

3 The accelerator must be activated again (depress the accelerator again).

In the event that, due to the bus stopping on a slippery surface, the brake system has not activated the door brake, you must brake again (in a place where no slippery surface is detected) to enable this brake to be reactivated.

Door brake general deactivation

The electrical center is equipped also with a *toggle switch* used to general disengage the door brake function (“By-pass switch”). This switch only disabled the door brake function, independently of the other functions of the bus (see also the following section in this manual: “Door brake switch”, page 46).



T0009170

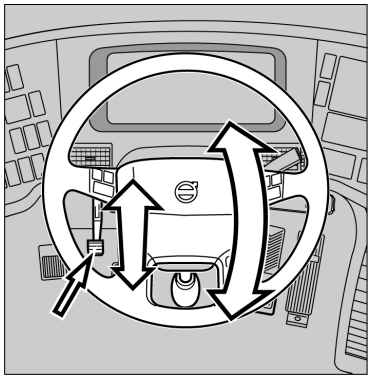
⚠ WARNING

The switch for disengaging the door brake function must only be used in emergency, if the bus cannot be moved in the usual way. The door brake function normally must be **always** turn **ON**. The bus can not be able to move until the service door be closed.

Steering wheel adjustment

Both the steering wheel height and its tilt allow of continuous adjustment.
Adjust the steering wheel as follows:

- Depress the pedal to which the arrow points.
- Setting the steering wheel.
- After releasing the pedal the steering wheel is locked in its new position.



T6010216

⚠ DANGER

Steering wheel adjustments should only be performed while the bus is stationary. Adjustments with the vehicle is moving may lead to an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

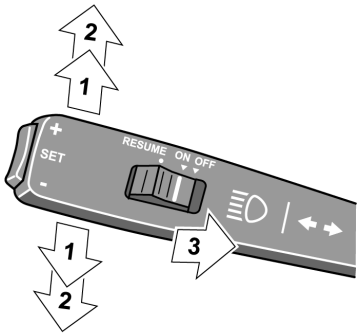
Directional indicator, dipped/full beam changer

1 **Location of point of resistance**.
When making maneuvers requiring only slight movements of the steering wheel (changing lanes, overtaking), move the stalk up or down and hold it there. After releasing the stalk, it will immediately return to its neutral position.

2 **Move the stalk beyond the resistance point.** .
The directional indicators will continue to flash until the stalk is manually moved back to the neutral position, or the steering wheel is returned to the straight ahead position after the turn.

3 **Main beam** “flash”.
Pull the stalk towards the steering wheel (until you feel slight resistance).
The main beam will stay lit until the stalk is released.
Main/dipped beam switching (lights on).
Pull the stalk towards the steering wheel beyond the “flashing point” and release it.
Each time you do this, the headlamps will toggle between main and dipped beam.

In addition, engine idling speed can be controlled with this stalk. See: “Idle speed adjustment”, page 119.

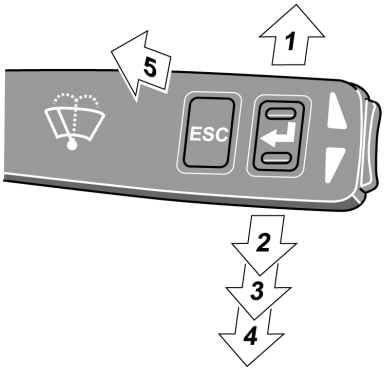


T0012077

Control lever for beam lights change and directional lights.

Windscreen wipers, windscreen headlight washer

Note: This stalk also provides control of the display, for additional information about display control, see separate operating instructions: “Display”.



T0012079

1 **Interval wiping**
Used when driving in mist or drizzle conditions.
The wipers make one sweep every **10 seconds**. To reduce the time between sweeps, move the stalk to the normal position, and then, after the desired time interval, back to the interval wiping position. This permits the wiping interval to be set to any value between **1 and 10 seconds**.

2 **Flick wipe position**.
If you want the wiper to make only one or two strokes (e.g. drizzle), move the lever to the flick wipe position and keep it there with your finger. The wipers will stop in parking position after releasing the lever.

3 **Windscreen wipers**, normal speed.

4 **Windscreen wipers**, high speed.

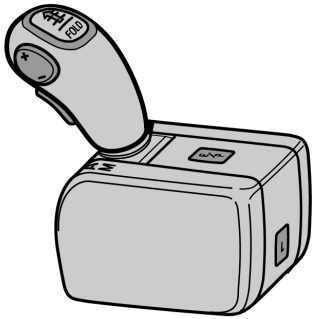
5 **Windscreen washers** + **headlight washers**.
Moving the stalk to this position will also activate the windscreen wipers, which will make an additional **2-3 sweeps** after the stalk has been released.

The headlight washers and windscreen washers have a common fluid reservoir.

Transmission

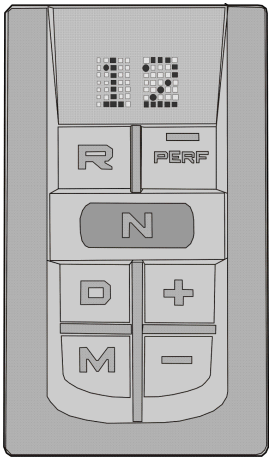
I-Shift transmission lever selector (optional)

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus may be fitted with an **I-Shift** transmission lever selector for gear shifts management in this automatized transmission, generally located at the right bottom side from the driver seat.
In this transmission, both clutch operation and gear shifts are performed fully automatized.
If necessary, the gears can be changed manually by placing the lever in the **M** position and pressing the “+” and “-” buttons located at the side in the lever selector.
The level selector has at its grip upper the “FOLD” button. When pressing and hold this button you can tilting the lever downwards to the position where the lever is on a level with the seat, this is; for provide more space in the driving position.
For more information, see separate operating instructions: “I-Shift”.



T4021276

I-Shift transmission pad selector



W0089562

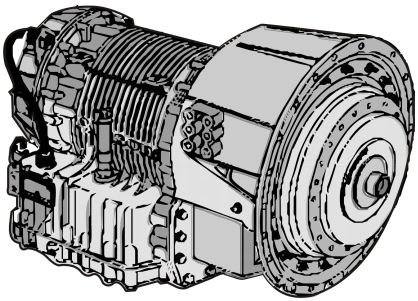
The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is fitted with an **I-Shift** transmission pad selector located in the side panel for gear shifts management in this automatized transmission.
In this transmission, both clutch operation and gear shifts are performed fully automatized. If necessary, the gears can be changed manually through by the “+” and “-” buttons. The push-button shift selector has six buttons: R, N, D, M and “+” and “-”. Described below:

- R — Reverse: Vehicle must be stopped when selecting this gear.
- N — Neutral: No gear engaged.
- D — Drive: Automatic drive mode. The transmission will select most suitable gear for running conditions such as load, speed, accelerator pedal position, hill climbing, etc.
- M — Manual mode: The driver can be changing up and down gears totally manual, according of his driving style through by use the “+” and “-” buttons, on the pad selector.

For more information, see separate operating instructions: “I-Shift pad gear selector”.

Allison automatic transmission (optional)

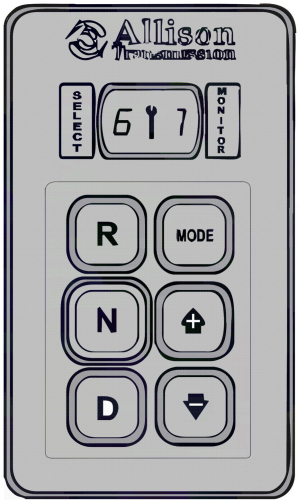
The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus can optionally be equipped with an automatic transmission: *Allison 4000 Series model 6B500*, which is an automatic transmission with 6 forward speeds and reverse.



W0095730

Allison transmission shifter

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus may be fitted with an Allison transmission shifter, if the Allison automatic transmission is installed in the bus.
The Allison transmission shifter has a six “push-buttons” as: R, N, D, Mode and “+” and “-”. Which described below:



W0095731

- R — Reverse: Vehicle must be stationary when selecting **R**.
- N — Neutral: No speed coupled.
- D — Drive: Press this button to select Drive function, the highest forward range available will appear in the digital display window under **SELECT**. The transmission will start out in the lowest available forward range, displayed under **MONITOR**, and advance automatically to the highest range.
- Mode — The **MODE** button can allow the driver to enable a secondary shift mode that has been programmed into the **TCM** (Transmission Control Module) unit. Pressing the **MODE** button activates the **PERFORMANCE** shift schedule and illuminates the mode indicator (*LED*).
- + or — buttons: Press respectively the (“Upshift”) or (“Downshift”) arrow button when in **DRIVE** to request the next higher or lower range. One press changes speeds by one range. If the button is held down, the selection will scroll up or down until the button is released or until the highest or lowest possible range is selected. Protection mechanisms inhibit selecting ranges that are not appropriate for the current speed or which may damage driveline components.

Allison transmission, mode function

The **MODE** button have the following function. Both **ECONOMY** (default mode at starting of the engine) and **PERFORMANCE** (secondary shift mode) modes are equivalent from the first to the fourth gear as the transmission upshifts at around **2000 rpm**.

The **ECONOMY** mode allows for upshifts in fifth and sixth gear at around **1700 rpm**. This is a more efficient operation of the transmission and thereby helps improve fuel economy.

The **PERFORMANCE** mode keeps upshifts at **2000 rpm** in fifth and sixth gears. This makes for better performance than the economy mode but with higher fuel consumption. It is recommended this mode be selected while driving up or down grades. The mode indicator (*LED*) is illuminating when **PERFORMANCE** mode is selected. When a button is depressed on the transmission control pad, the corresponding letter or number is displayed indicating the transmission is ready to operate in the selected range. If the transmission control module (**TCM**) detects a serious problem in the transmission, the “CHECK” telltale light will illuminate on the dashboard.
For more information see separate operating instructions: “Allison Bus Series Operator’s Manual ” provide by the transmission manufacturer.

Transmission overheating

If the transmission overheats, the “CHECK” lamp will light and the display will show a red symbol.
If the temperature rises further, the red “STOP” lamp will light. Slow down and stop the bus as soon as it is safe to do so.
Contact an Volvo authorized service center to request the assistance road rescue service (see the following section on this manual “Assistance and rescue on highway”, page 146.

T3014365

CHECK icon lit in the dashboard.

T3014364

STOP icon lit in the dashboard.

T0008817

Symbol shown in the driver display.

Retarder (if installed)

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN gearbox may be equipped with a “compact hydraulic” retarder type. If equipped, the retarder helps to decrease the bus speed and the load on the service brakes. Its automatically engaged by the initial movement of the brake pedal (even before that the wheel brakes are applied) or by a control lever at the right side of the steering column.
The retarder operation can be general enable or disable, through by a switch placed in the dashboard (see the following section in this manual: “Retarder enabled (if installed)”, page 37).
This switch has two positions as follows:

- Position I — Switch downwards, the retarder is disabled.
- Position II — Switch upwards, the retarder is enabled.

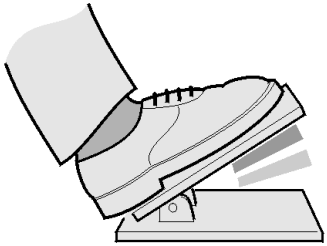
When the retarder its active, a symbol is shown in the display.

⚠ DANGER

Avoid using the retarder on slippery roads because of the risk of locking the wheels and skidding (the retarder brakes only the driving wheels). Failure to do so may be lead to an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

Note: The retarder brake the main shaft to connecting the drive axle with the transmission and in this way, obtain a delay effect on the drive wheels. If the bus is; equipped with anti-lock brake system (ABS), the retarder is automatically disengaged on any signs of the wheels locking.

Note: Under normal driving conditions, the retarder should not be disabled.

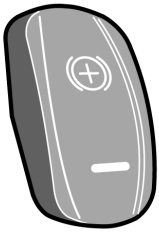


T0009004

Retarder activation area in the brake pedal (optional).

T3018117

Symbol shown in the driver display.



T1008547

Retarder enabled or disabled switch located in the dashboard.

Retarder overheating

Note: Only apply, if the coach equipped with the hydraulic retarder.

If the retarder remains engaged for a long time (e.g. during a long downhill stretch) it may be overheat, causing an increase in retarder oil temperature.
The first indication of retarder overheating is the “CHECK” lamp lighting and the temperature symbol showing up on the display. If this happens, select a lower gear and make greater use of the main brakes.
If the temperature continues to rise, the red “STOP” lamp will light and there will be an increase in the temperature accompanying the symbol on the display. Stop the bus as soon as possible and select neutral, i.e. **N**. To increase the circulation of the coolant run the engine at higher idle until the temperature returns to the normal level.

CAUTION

Do not switch off the engine before the temperature is back to normal. Failure to do so may be result in component damage.

T3014365

CHECK icon lit in the dashboard.

T3008844

Symbol shown in the driver display.

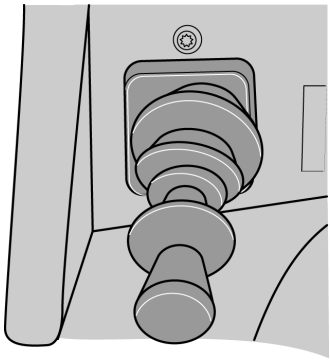
T3014364

STOP icon lit in the dashboard.

Brakes

Parking brake

The parking brake acts on the drive wheels.
When the hand control is in the forward position with the compressed air system charged and the blocking valve depressed, the parking brake is released.
When the parking brake hand control is moved backwards, the parking brake is gradually applied. It is fully applied when the hand control is in its backmost, locked position.
To release the parking brake hand control from the locked position, lift the ring upwards and move the lever forwards.



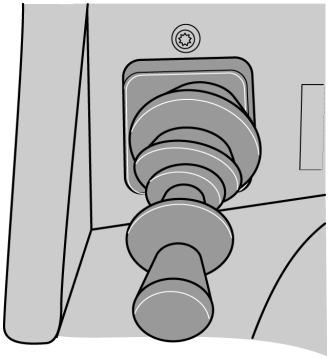
T5014881

⚠ DANGER

Pay attention to the following advises:
— Never leave the bus without engaging the parking brake.
— Never start driving while the brake system warning lamp is still lit.
— If the warning lamp lights while driving, stop the bus immediately.
Failure to do so may be result in serious personal injury or death.

Emergency brake

To use the parking brake as an emergency brake, move the lever gradually backwards to the parking position. Keep the catch pulled in all the time, or the control will fasten in the locked position.

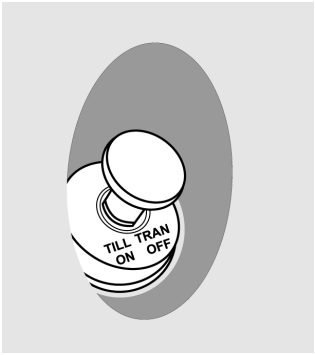


T5014881

⚠ DANGER

The parking brake is only to be used for parking or as an emergency brake in case of malfunction of the service brake system. Due to the parking brake only brakes the drive wheels, there is a high risk of bus skidding, resulting in a more braking distance than to avoid wheels locking by using the service brakes.
Did not take care in the proper use of emergency brake, may be induce to an accident resulting in serious injury or death.

Blocking valve



T0015484

The function of this valve is activate the parking brake blocking by the pneumatic control valve supply blocking, inhibiting the parking brake valve function. Its happened, if the pneumatic circuit pressures to low in the bus, causing; that the blocking valve is automatically activated (the valve is thrown). To release the parking brake do the following:

1 Start the engine and charge the pneumatic system of the bus (until the air brake system warning lamp in the instrument panel is turn **OFF**).

2 Press the blocking valve.

3 Put the parking brake control lever in the brake release position (see the following section on this manual: “Parking brake”, page 63).

Note: Once the blocking valve activated, the parking brake can not release although the parking brake control lever is in its forward position (brake released). To release the parking brake, it should restore the pneumatic circuits pressure of the bus and press the blocking valve.

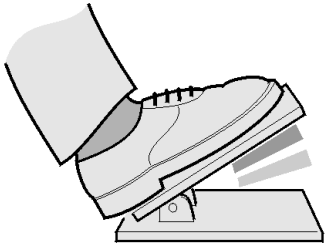
Service brakes

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with an EBS brake system (Electronically-controlled Braking System). This system monitors and controls the brake operation (also, refer to this section on this manual: “EBS (Electronically-controlled Braking System)”, page 68).

If the service brakes are used without care when driving down steep and long inclines, they will heat up very quickly to extreme temperatures. The low speed that is generally the rule in such cases means that the brakes are not cooled as efficiently as when driving on level roads. When driving downhill, in the first instance use the retarder brake, and only supplement this with the main brakes as necessary.

For additional information about the retarder, see the following section on this manual: “Retarder (if installed)”, page 123.

If you have to use the service brakes while driving downhill, **DO NOT** pump the service brake, as this will only use up compressed air, what cause trigger the blocking valve activating the parking brake unexpectedly, raising the risk of a rollover (for information about the valve block, see the next section in this manual: “Blocking valve”, page 65).



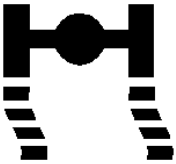
T0009004

Dark zone — only retarder.

Light zone — retarder and foot brake.

T0009682

Symbol shown in the driver display.



T3008834

Icon lit in the dashboard.

Service brakes use

When driving downhill, brake sufficiently hard and then release the brake pedal completely, or just to the pedal position where only the retarder is engaged. Heat builds up very quickly in the brakes, causing increased wear of the brake linings and reduced brake efficiency.

⚠ DANGER

Do not start driving if the pneumatic low pressure lamp is turn on in the dashboard. Fully charge the pneumatic system and wait the warning lamp turn off in the dashboard before starting the trip.
If the pneumatic low pressure lamp comes on while driving. Stop the bus immediately and parking in a safe place because the risk that the parking or emergency brake applies unexpectedly raising the risk of a rollover.

EBS (Electronically-controlled Braking System)

The main purpose of the Electronically Braking System (EBS) is to increase the effectiveness and efficiency of the service brake (by shortening braking distances) and so increase the safety while driving. The Electronically Braking System (EBS) controlled the Antilock Brake System (ABS) and Antislip System Reduction (ASR). The Electronically Braking System (EBS) its fitted on buses equipped with disc brakes, being the Antilock Brake System (ABS) a part of the Electronically Braking System (EBS) control and works completely automatically. The Antilock Brake System (ABS) prevents the wheels from locking up during braking. In case of Antilock Brake System (ABS) failure, the appropriate symbol appears on display in the dashboard.

T0009682

Symbol shown in the driver display.

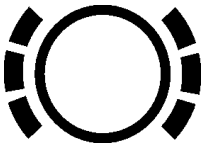
T3008834

Icon lit in the dashboard.

Note: Antilock Brake System (ABS) efficiency is limited. Remember, that on slippery surfaces Antilock Brake System (ABS) will not shorten the braking distance significantly. It can nevertheless help in avoiding obstacles during braking.

For more information of the Electronically Braking System (EBS), see separate operating instructions: “EBS”.

Compensating for differences in the wear of the brake pads



T5013668

If the brake pads on one of the axles wear down faster than those on the other, braking force is redistributed so that a greater portion of the braking force is applied to the wheels on the axle with less wear.
When the thickness of the brake pads is reduced to **20%** of the thickness of new pads, a warning symbol is shown on the display.

Note: This function activates when braking lightly. During in a hard braking the braking force is distributed so as to achieve the most efficient braking.

⚠ DANGER

When brake pad warning symbol is displayed, immediately proceed to the nearest service station to replace the brake pads with new ones. Driving any further with worn out brake pads may be lead to losing control of the vehicle and cause an accident resulting in serious personal injury or death.

High brake temperature warning

If the temperature of the brakes increases too much, the lamp on the dashboard “CHECK” turn on and the same time the relevant symbol is shown on the display.

Note: If the temperature is allowed to rise further, maintaining the same braking force will require increased pressure on the brake pedal.

T5013670

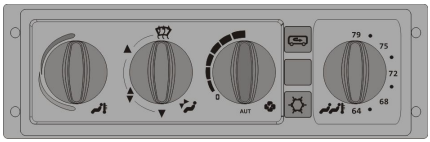
Symbol shown in the driver display.

T3014365

Icon lit in the dashboard.

A/C Controller (multiplexing system)

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with an A/C controller “AQuattro” for controlled the multiplexed A/C system. With this control the driver maintains a constant temperature inside the bus.
For more information of the “AQuattro” A/C multiplexing system control, see separate operating instructions: “AQuattro, A/C controller”.



T8061140

Destination sign (optional)

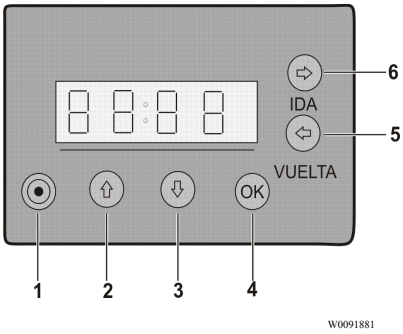
The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus may be fitted with a two optional high definition destination signs, “Mobitec” or “Innova” brands.
For use, follow then instructions in the next pages:

Destination sign Innova

"Innova" destination sign control pad has the following buttons, its function is described for each one:

- Destination text: Press the (1) button and then use the buttons (2) or (3) until the route message adjust function appears in the display with the following name "RUTA"; Then press the (4) button to enter this function. In this function, use the buttons (2) or (3) to select the wanted destination text and press the (4) button for insert your selection. Press the (1) button to return the main menu.
- Extra text: Press the (1) button and use the buttons (2) or (3) until the extra text function appears in the display with the following name "EXTRA". Then press (4) button to enter the function. The "P-01" message in the display will appear, press (4) button to confirm the selection then "P-ON" message will appear in the display, use the buttons (5) and (6) to insert the wanted extra text that you want. Press (4) button and the message "01:ON" will appear. Use the buttons (5) and (6) to adjust the exposure time for the extra text. Press button (4) for apply the adjustments and return to the main menu.
- Departure time: Press the (1) button and use the buttons (2) or (3) until the departure hour function appears in the display by the following name "HrSd". Then press the (4) button to select the function and use (2) and (3) buttons to adjust the time hour, press (4) button to entered the time hour, now again use the (2) and (3) buttons to adjust the time minutes, press (4) button to entered the time minutes and return to the main menu.

For more information see the separate user manual provided by **"Innova"**.



"Innova" destination sign digital control.

Destination sign Mobitec

"Mobitec" destination sign control pad has the following buttons; its function is described for each one:

- Destination text selection: Press the "check mark" button, the digit value to be changed will flash. Use the "up" and "down" buttons for increase or decrease the digit value to be changed. Use the "left" and "right" buttons in order to change the button to be modified.
- Extra text selection: Press the "check mark" button for enter to the destination text selector mode. Press the "right" button for change the extra text. Use the "up" and "down" buttons to increase or decrease the value of the digit to be changed. Use the "right" or "left" buttons to change the digit to be modified.
- Departure time selection: Press the "check mark" button for enter to the destination text selector mode. Press the "right" button for change the departure time text. Use the "up" and "down" buttons to increase or decrease the value of the digit to be changed. Use the "right" or "left" buttons to change the digit to be modified.

After each configuration (departure time, destination and extra text informations), press the "check mark" button to confirm or the "cross" button to cancel.
For more information see the separate user manual provided by **"Mobitec"**.

W0097186

"Mobitec" destination sign digital control.

W0097187

Destination display selector.

W0097188

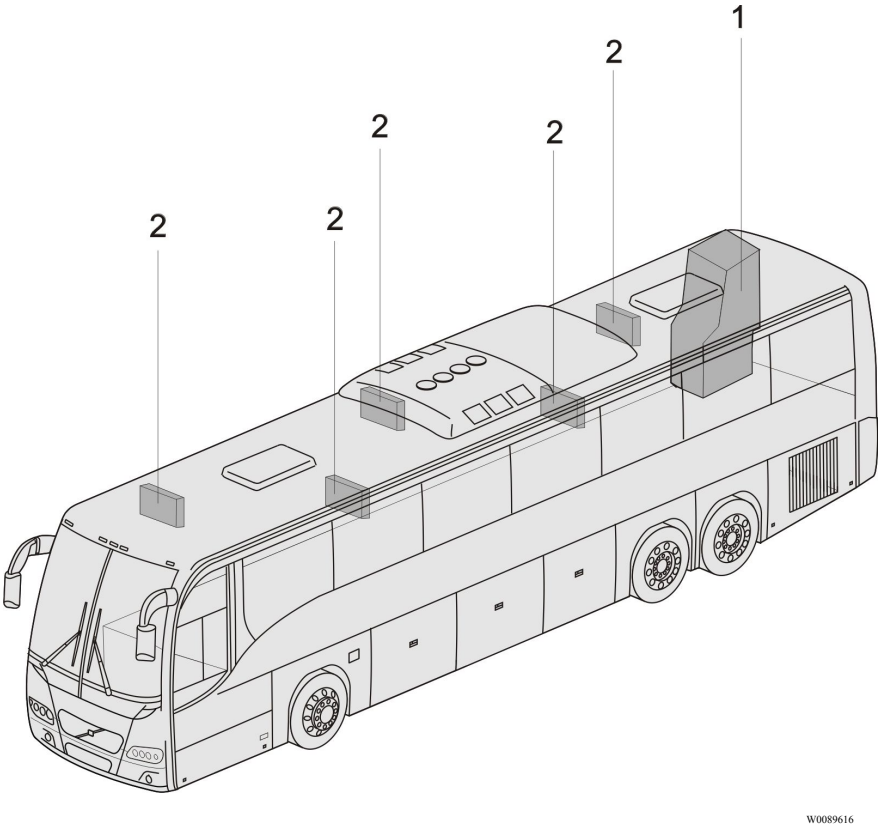
Extra text display selector.

W0097189

Departure time display selector.

Interior equipment

To enhance travel comfort, the Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is fitted with additional interior equipment such as:

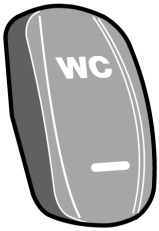


1 Toilet.

2 Monitors.

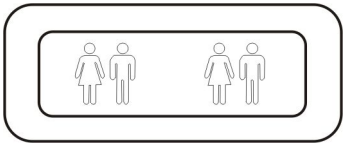
Toilet

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with a toilet, located on the right-hand side at the rear of the vehicle. Pressing a switch on the dashboard enables the toilet to be used, by releasing its central lock and switching on the toilet power supply.
While the toilet is occupied (after locking the door) a sign lights up in the passenger compartment.
In the toilet compartment there is an emergency push-button with backlight. After it has been pressed, the toilet indicator lamp flashes on the dashboard.
For additional information and instructions regarding the servicing and maintenance of the toilet, see separate operating instructions: “Toilet ”.



T3018183

Enabled switch located in the dashboard.

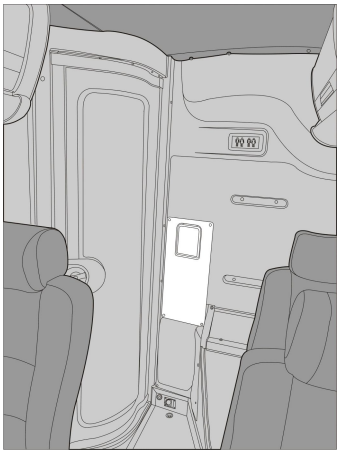


T0015272

Indicator lamp in the toilet cabinet.

Rear trash bin

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with an trash bin integrated to the interior rear panel, located at the bottom of passengers compartment, beside the toilet.
For more information regarding access and maintenance of the rear trash bin, see separate operating instructions: “Toilet”.



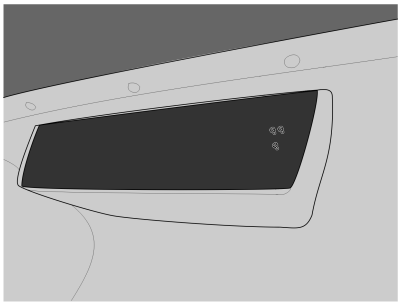
W0095904

Passengers thermometer and clock display

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with a thermometer and clock display located on the front of the passengers compartment (at the cabin roof).
The display shown the following information:

- Time.
- Date.
- Toilet occupied.
- Toilet unoccupied.

For more information, see separate operating instructions: “Passenger compartment clock display”.



W3081817

Passengers panel

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is feature with a passenger panels above in each pair of passenger seats.
On each panel there are the following elements:

1 Left seat reading light **ON/ OFF** switch.

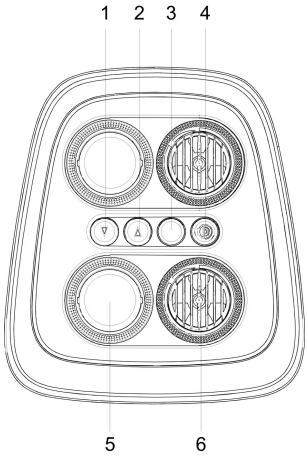
2 Right seat reading light **ON/ OFF** switch.

3 Loudspeaker **ON/OFF** switch.

4 Not in use.

5 Reading lights (one for each passenger seat).

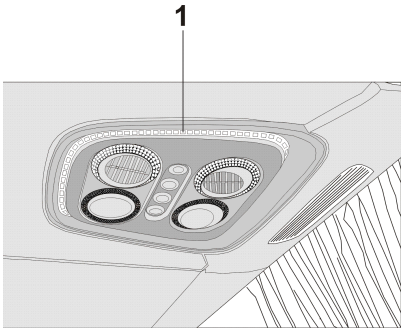
6 Ventilation and A/C outlet grills (one for each passenger seat).



W3081339

LED lighting stripe

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with a LED lighting stripe (**1**) mounted on each passengers panel. The lighting stripe illuminate at **100%** when the ignition key is turned **ON** in its position **I** and when the parking brake is released and start the driving, the lighting stripes dim automatically at **50%**.



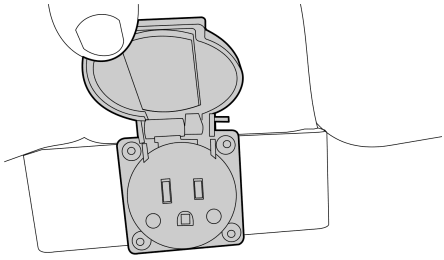
W0089617

Passengers AC (alternate current) 110 V power outlets

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with passengers AC (alternate current) **110 V** power outlets. For each pair of passengers seats there is a electrical contact located at the center of the front lower frame from each pair of passenger seats to connect electrical devices as:

- Cell phone charger.
- Lap Tops.
- mp3 players.

For more information about use and care of the bus power outlets, see separate operating instructions: “110 V CA passengers power outlets ”.



W0096345

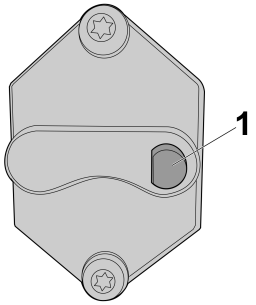
Power outlet in the bottom of each pair of passenger seats.

WARNING

Under no circumstances should introduce any objects into the electrical outlets slots. Failure to following this warning result in to a high risk of serious personal injury and possible irreversible damage of the bus electrical system.

Passenger AC 110 V power outlets circuit breaker

In case of an electrical overload, the power outlets circuit is equipped with a thermally protected circuit breaker, which disables the electrical power outlet system. The driver can reset the system by pressing the blue button (**1**) integrated into the protection device located in the lower center console of the dashboard.
For more information about use of the thermal circuit breaker to the bus power outlets circuit, see separate operating instructions: “110 V AC passengers power outlets”.



Circuit breaker button on thermal protector device.

CAUTION

Should not be allowed to the passengers connect high power consumption electrical devices such as: Hair dryers, curling iron or similar electrical devices, if this equipment is connected to the power outlets, cause a irreversible damage to the bus electrical system.

TGW (Telematics Gate Way) system and Liaison communication system

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with a TGW system using the new 3G protocol communication.
For USA and Canada markets the coach using the Liaison communication software, which use the TGW-3G system architecture components.

The TGW–3G is a electronic control module used for data logging and communication between the vehicle and fleet manager computer.
The main functions for TGW are as follows:

- Functions as a gateway for remote services. GSM (Global System for Mobile Communications) / GPRS (General Packet Radio Services) / 3G and WLAN.
- Gather and transmit vehicle and driver data that has been logged in other vehicle units.
- Geographic positioning of the vehicle (GPS).
- Functions as a computer interface for third party file transfers.
- Functions as a gateway for AIC to the vehicle network.

TGW also has a SIM (Subscriber Identity Module) reader and a USB interface. TGW is connected to:

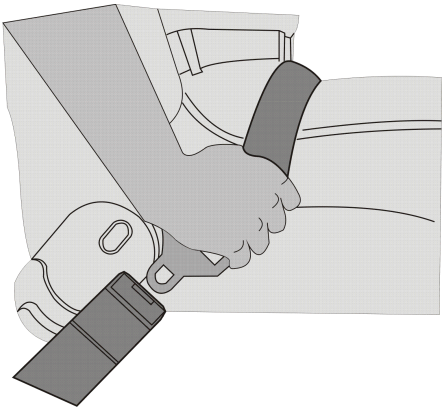
- The vehicle's electrical and electronic systems.
- AIC

Note: For more information to the Liaison communication system, see separate operating instructions: “Liaison 2.0 Communication system”.

ELR / ALR passenger seat belts mechanism

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with a passenger seat belts with switchable retractor lock modes **ELR (Emergency Locking Retractor) / ALR (Automatic Locking Retractor)**.
These modes are described briefly.

Note: For more information about **ELR / ALR** passenger seat belts, see separate operating instructions: “Safety seat belts”.



Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)

In this mode allows the belt to move freely, locks only when the vehicle or occupant slows quickly/abruptly or stops suddenly.

⚠ WARNING

Will not secure a child safety seat.

Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR)

Locks and maintains a fixed seat belt (lap belt) length during use. The belt cannot be extended further.

Note: For use with a child safety seat.

ELR / ALR passenger seat belts mechanism (continue)

ELR / ALR seat belts use recommendations

- Passengers are strongly advised to wear seat belts at all times.
- Children can use a passenger seat belt as long as they are large enough to properly wear the seat belt.
- The shoulder belt must be correctly positioned over the child's shoulder and it must not touch the neck or lie below the shoulder.
- To fasten, pull seat belt out of the retractor and insert the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

Note: No special adjustment is required since the retractor device is self-adjusting.

WARNING

CHILD RESTRAINT SYSTEMS
Occupants under 40" height must use Child Seat / Booster
The seat belts are equipped with switchable **ELR / ALR** retractor lock mode. Activate the **ALR** retractor lock mode to hold a child restraint system by pulling the shoulder belt all the way out. Allow it to retract to desired length. Check that the belt straps are fully tightened and the retractor / webbing is locked.
Failure to use the **ALR** lock mode will result in the child safety seat not being properly secured.
When using a **booster seat**, do not pull the shoulder belt all the way out. Doing so would engage the **ALR** lock mode which is not recommended with booster seat.
Install the child *seat / booster* according to the manufacturer's instructions.

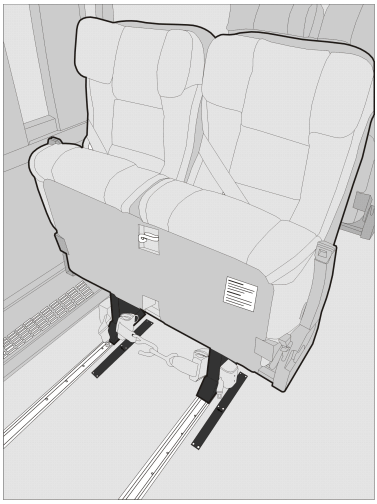
Note: Unbuckling the belt and allowing it to retract fully deactivates the **ALR** retractor.

WARNING

If seat belt operation becomes defective, report to maintenance personnel immediately for repair.

Passengers sliding seats

Note: Apply only for a Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) 9700 US/CAN bus version.



W0089974

CAUTION

The edges of the pedestal need to be aligned with the arrows on the lateral plate, to properly secure the seat retainers pressing pedestal pedals. Do not try to press down the pedestal pedals if the pedestal is not aligned with the arrows, because the seat retainers does not applies properly.

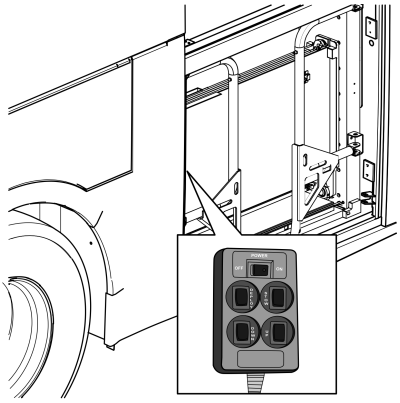
Only 9700 US/CAN buses equipped with WCL (Wheel Chair Lift) have four pairs of folding and sliding passenger's seats and two pairs of folding passenger's seats, which use when required accommodate a person in a wheelchair.
For more information to operate the folding and sliding passenger's seats, see separate operating instructions: "Wheel Chair Lift equipment".

Control pendant (for Wheel Chair Lift equipment)

The wheel chair lift is operated with a hand-held, hard-wired remote-control pendant. This control pendant its located on the left side from the Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) compartment.
The control pendant for Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) have the following control buttons:

- Power switch — Turn ON the Wheel Chair Lift equipment.
- Deploy — Extends the platform from the storage compartment.
- Stow — Retracts the platform back into the storage compartment.
- Down — Lowers the platform towards the ground.
- Up — Raises the platform towards the vehicle floor.

For more information about the Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) equipment operation, see separate operating instructions: “Wheel Chair Lift equipment”.

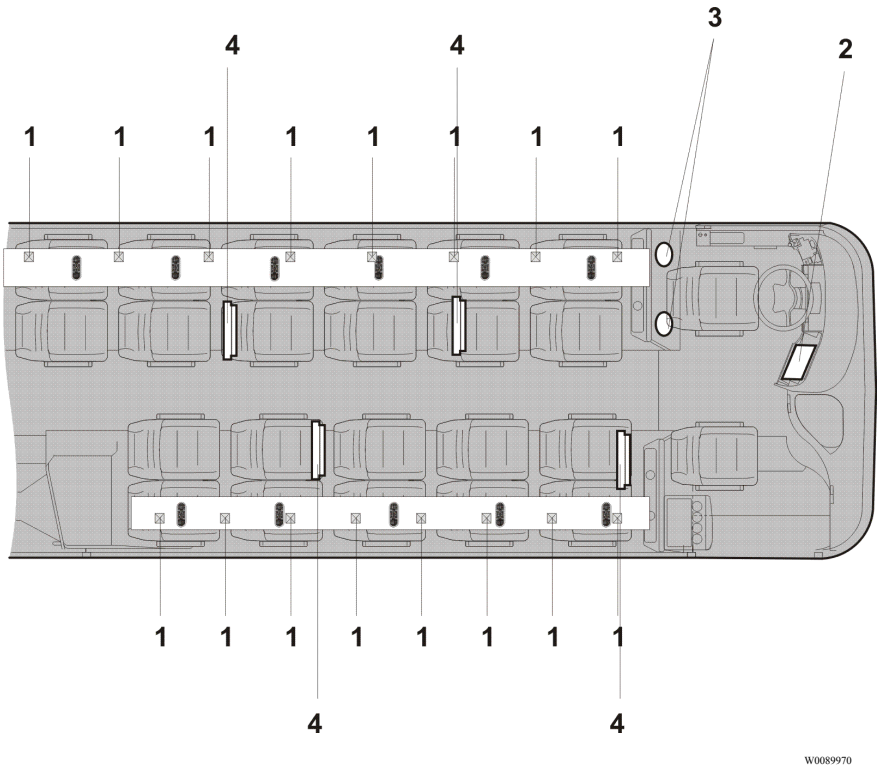


Locate of control pendant into the Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) bus compartment.

Control pendant.

Audiovisual system

To enhance the comfort of the passengers during journeys, the Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with an audiovisual system, whose main components are:



1 Loudspeakers in the luggage racks.

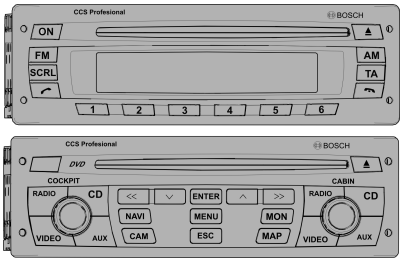
2 CD, DVD player.

3 Drivers loudspeakers.

4 LCD monitors (mounted in the luggage rack, up to 5 maximum).

Audiovisual control panel

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus could be equipped with main unit, giving the driver complete control of the system.
For more information, see separate operating instructions provided by the manufacturer depends which audiovisual system is installed in the bus: “Bosch” or “Blaupunkt”.



W8081374

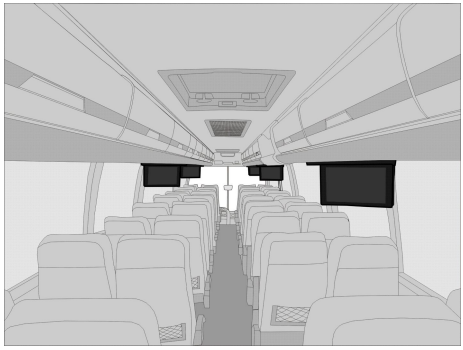
“Bosch” control panel.

T8057538

“Blaupunkt” control panel.

Video system

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN is equipped as standard with a video system for the passengers either four or five LCD monitors in the bus. this LCD video monitors are installed in the luggage rack.
The video system monitors are activated by selecting the **VIDEO** signal source on the audiovisual controller.
For more information, see separate operating instructions provided by the manufacturer depends which audiovisual system is installed in the bus: “Bosch” or “Blaupunkt”.



W0089755

LCD video monitors mounted in the luggage rack (up to 5 maximum).

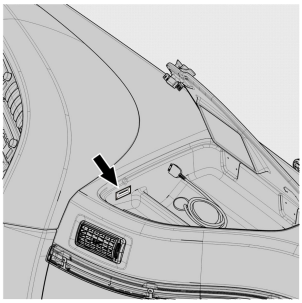
Audio system

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped as standard with an audio system for the passengers.
The main elements of the audio system are:

- Radio.
- CD player.
- USB port for mp3 player input.
- Loudspeakers.
- Gadgets cable connection.

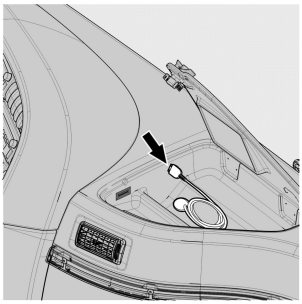
Note: The USB port and the gadgets cable connection are located into the glove compartment in the middle of the dashboard, as shown on the images (**A**) and (**B**).

The audio system its activated by a switch located in the dashboard (see the following section in this manual: “Audio system”, page 42) and controlled by selecting the “AUDIO” signal source on the own audio system control panel installed on the bus.
For more information, see separate operating instructions provided by the manufacturer depends which audio system is installed in the bus: “Bosch” or “Blaukpunkt”.



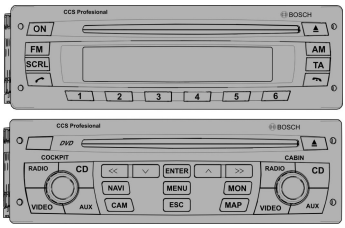
W0101223

(**A**) USB port to connect a pendrive with mp3 or a plug to charging other electronic devices.



W0101195

(**B**) Cable connection for gadgets devices.

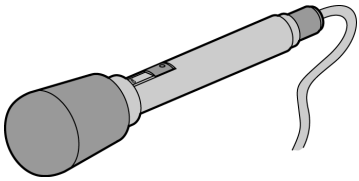


W8081374

“Bosch” control panel.

Guide or driver microphone (optional)

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus may be equipped with one or two microphones (for the driver or guide or both) and so give information messages to the passengers along the trip.
For enabled the microphone(s) selecting the “MICROPHONE” signal source on the own audio system control panel installed on the bus.
By doing this, other signal sources in the passenger loudspeakers are silenced and only the microphone(s) signal is heard.
For more information, see separate operating instructions provided by the manufacturer depends which audio system is installed in the bus: “Bosch” or “Blaukpunkt”.



T3019220

Microphone device located in the lower center console of the dashboard.

W0089527

Microphone device placed in the driver seat head rest.

90 Emergency and safety equipment

Overview

As the driver you must always be familiar with the location of the emergency equipment in the bus, and how to use it.
It is essential that all emergency equipment is checked on a regular basis to make sure that it is in working condition and in place. The location of the safety equipment and its scope can vary, depending on the regulations in the country in question. Therefore make sure that you know where the equipment is and check that nothing is missing.

Fire extinguisher

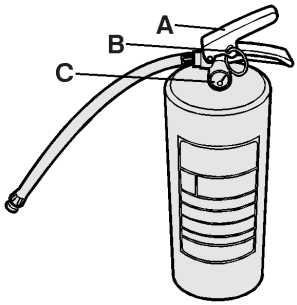
The fire extinguisher is located in the front of the bus (most often mounted under dashboard on the right-hand side).
The fire extinguisher can be used to put out fires in volatile fluids, wood, fabric, paper and electrical equipment. Check regularly that the pressure gauge indicator is in the green zone.
How to use the fire extinguisher:

1 Remove the fire extinguisher from its holder.

2 Hold the extinguisher by its handle with one hand, and pull the safety pin with the other.

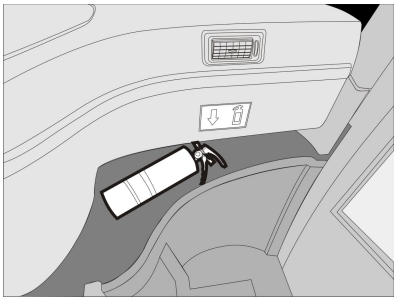
3 Point the rubber hose at the heart of the fire and press the trigger.

To refer a first aid kit, see the following section in this manual: “First aid kit”, page 97.



T0008196

A	Trigger.
B	Safety pin.
C	Pressure gauge.



W0111065

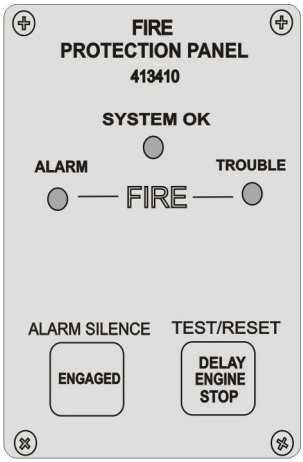
Fire extinguisher location in the bus.

Automatized Fire Extinguished System (AFES)

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with an Automatized Fire Extinguished System (AFES). This system provides continuos monitoring of the hazard areas of the engine bay. It responds to fires fueled by diesel, oil, lubricants and another flammable liquids.
If a fire is detected, the system will alert the driver with both audible and visual alarms while immediately shutting down the air conditioning system. A time delay allows the driver the capability to bring the vehicle to a safe stop prior of the activation of the fire extinguisher and engine shutdown.

Note: If additional time is required the timer can be reset by pressing the “delay engine stop button” placed in the **fire protection panel** located in the dashboard.

For more information related to the Automatic Automatized Fire Extinguished System (AFES) operation, see separate operating instructions: “Automatized Fire Extinguished System (AFES)”.
Also, for more information about additional multiplexed fire detection system in the engine bay, see the following section in this manual: “Additional fire detection system (multiplexed)”, page 156.



Fire protection panel.

Automatized Fire Extinguished System (AFES) manual discharge

In the event of fire do the following:

1 Twist and pull tamper seal to remove.

2 Lift the cover.

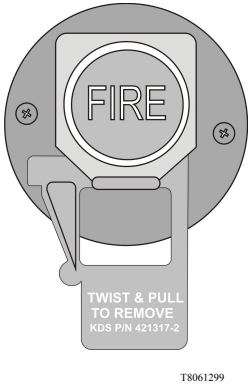
3 Push the red button.

If the driver activates the manual discharge switch the following will occur:

1 The “FIRE” alarm lamp will illuminate and the alarm buzzer will sound.

2 The extinguisher will discharge.

3 The engine will shutdown.



Manual discharge (red color) button.

CAUTION

Service the Automatized Fire Extinguished System (AFES) before restarting equipment.

Park pilot system

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with the park pilot system. This system is a bus parking assistant with four ultrasonic sensors and helps the driver to reduce the potential collision risk with the obstacles or other vehicles when parking maneuvers are performed.
The park pilot system consist of the following elements:

- Electronic control unit (ECU).
- Driver display (mounted in a base located in the left “A” pillar).
- Four ultrasonic sensors (mounted on the rear bumper).

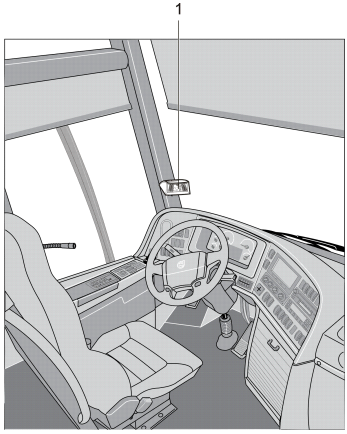
The system detects the distance between the rear bumper an a obstacle through its four ultrasonic sensors (mounted in the rear bumper). These sensors generate a signal, which is showed on the driver’s display and inform the driver the distance with respect to an obstacle, also and a visual LED bars indicator on the display providing graphical information of the distance between the rear bumper an obstacle and a warning alarm will be heard when the distance to the obstacle is less than 2 meters.
For more information, see separate operating instructions manual provided by the manufacturer “Actia”.

WARNING

The park pilot system does not replace the use of the rear view mirrors and drive the vehicle so cautious.

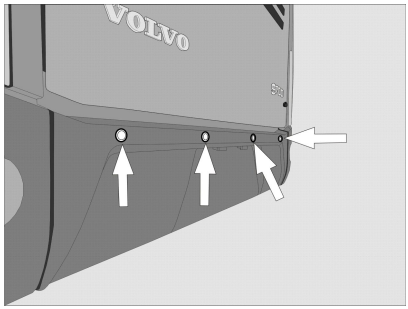
W0095901

Park pilot driver’s display.



W0090067

Park pilot driver’s display location (**1**).



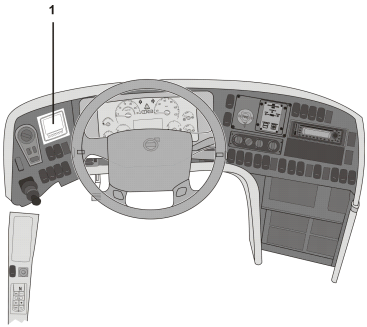
W0090016

Park pilot system ultrasonic sensors located on the rear bumper.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is a sensing device (**1**) designed to identify and display tire operating data and activate an alert or warning when pressure or temperature irregularities are detected.
The system will monitor all vehicle tires plus the spare tire when a spare is supplied.
For more information of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) operation, see separate operating instructions: “Tire Pressure Monitoring System”.

Note: Is it driver responsibility to react promptly and with discretion to alerts and warnings. Abnormal tire inflation pressures should be corrected at the earliest opportunity.



(**1**) Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) display location in the dashboard.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) display

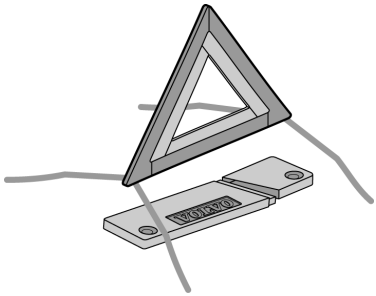
The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) display knows where the sensor are located. It receives the raw temperature and pressure readings from the TPMS receiver, it reads several signals from the vehicle and does the calculation required to generate the various screens.
When no readings have been received for a tire location or when the received data correspond to a parameter range defined as unavailable and appears as two dash lines "_ _".
Also characteristics to the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) display are:

- The TPMS display is initially configured to define how many axles and running tires are present on the vehicle.
- The TPMS display is also configured with several other parameters, including threshold levels for the alarms.
- The TPMS display power supply turns **OFF** when the ignition key is switched **OFF**.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) display.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle is located either in the toolbox located inside of the luggage compartment, or in a holder to the right of the driver.
The warning triangle is used whenever a fault forces the bus to stop in a hazardous location. Switch on the hazard warning lights and place the warning triangle at a distance stipulated by the traffic regulations of the country in question.



T8011683

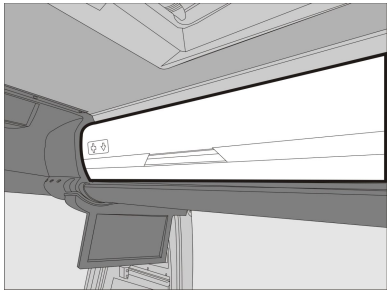
First aid kit

The first aid kit contains basic first aid materials.
The first-aid kit is located into a compartment placed inside to the right luggage rack first compartment from the passengers area (for the fire extinguisher, see the following section in this manual: “Fire extinguisher”, page 91).

Note: The first-aid kit compartment is identified with the corresponding labels.

T1008716

First-aid kit.



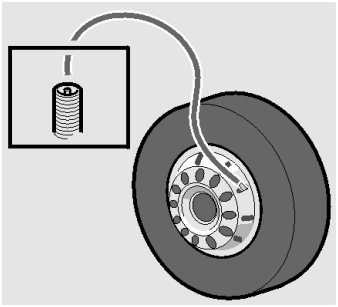
W0111066

First-aid kit location in the bus.

Tire inflation valve

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with output pneumatic valve located next to the driver's seat or inside the first service hatch.
The Valve release the parking brake when is necessary as engine breakdown for instance , e.g. engine breakdown.
The bus toolbox contains a hose that connects between the tire and the tire inflation valve.
Tire inflation valve be used to:

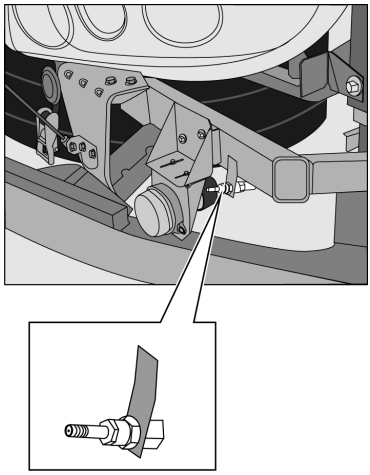
- Inflate a tire using the bus pneumatic system.
- Release the parking brake using the air from a tire.



T0009182

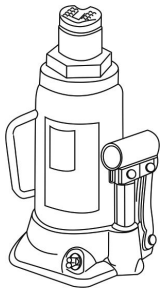
External air supply connection

In the Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus, behind the front hatch there is a valve to which an external air supply can be connected. This could be used when parking the bus overnight, to prevent emptying of the air system.



T0015390

Hydraulic jack



T0015345

The bus is fitted with special jacking points to comply with safety regulations. For detailed information concerning the use of the hydraulic jack and wheel replacement, see separate operating instructions: “Replacement of wheels ”.

Note: The hydraulic jack supplied with the bus used to lift the bus over intended lifting points (see the following section in this manual: “Wheels replacement”, page 194) to change a wheel at a time.

⚠ DANGER

Always ensure that the bus is standing on a level surface and chock the wheels so it cannot move . Failure to do so may be result in serious personal injury or death.

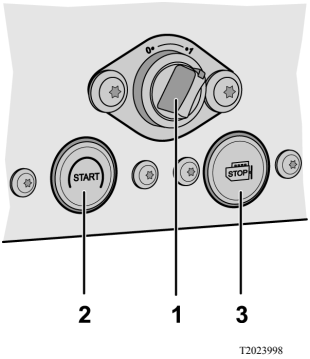
Toolbox

The toolbox and tools can be purchased from your local dealer. A complete toolbox contains:

Toolbox	
Item	**Part Number**
Hydraulic jack (2 units).	3124497
Adaptor for the hydraulic jack.	3178753
Wheel wrench.	9521826
Towing kit.	205465449
Hammer.	962207
Pumping hose.	942868
Warning triangle.	3176488
Key for the hatches.	70319047
Female key.	70344906
Male key.	70344905
Pliers.	962042
Adjustable wrench.	755
Screwdriver with bits.	978201
Spare wheel wrench.	1062412
Winch handle.	1590997
Extension for pumping valve.	1621456
Socket wrench 19 & 24 mm.	8189085
Hydraulic jack extension.	1586079
Hydraulic jack extension.	1577686
Wheel wrench extension.	20592217
Tool bag.	1577384
Wheel chocks (2).	8158698

Engine control panel in engine bay

The engine control panel is located behind the engine hatch in the back of the bus. It is used in conjunction with servicing.



CAUTION

To avoid accidental engine turning on while you are in the engine bay, the switch (**1**) must be in position **0**.

The control panel has three controls:

1 **Start switch.**
When the switch (**1**) is turned to position **1**, the engine can be started from the start button on the control panel, or the key ignition on the dashboard. When the switch (**1**) is turned to position **0**, the engine cannot be started from the engine bay, nor from the dashboard.

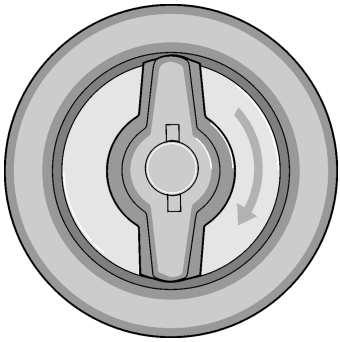
2 **Start button.**
When switch (**1**) is turned to position **1**, when pressing this button (**2**) starts the engine. The transmission must be in neutral position to start the engine from engine control panel. (**N**), and the ignition key must be in “DRIVE” position.

3 **Emergency stop button.**
Press the red button to stop the engine (**3**).

Emergency exits

Doors

There is a valve for emergency door opening above to the service door, turning the knob cuts off the compressed air supply to the door and can be opened manually.
After turning the valve knob and hence cutting off the compressed air supply, a warning lamp lights up and a buzzer sounds. To return the compressed air system to normal state, turn the knob back to initial position and press the appropriate open door button on the dashboard (see the following sections in this manual: “Opening the bus from inside”, page 8).



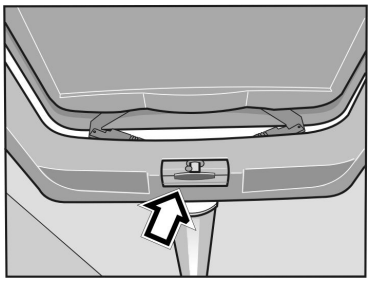
T8009617

Roof hatches

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with 2 roof hatches used for ventilation and as emergency exits. To open the roof hatches in case of emergency, pull the hatch red handles and push the hatch upwards.

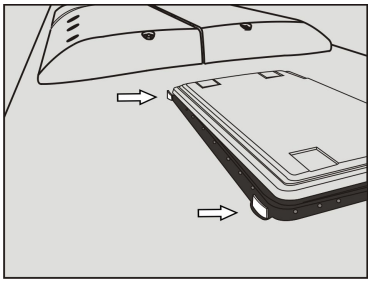
- From inside, pull the hatch red handles and push the hatch upwards.
- From outside, pull the hatch red handles and pull the hatch.

For more information, see separate operating instructions: “Manual roof hatch operation”.



T8010110

Opening roof hatch from inside.



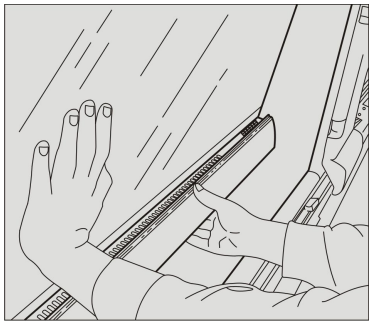
T8061298

Opening roof hatch from outside.

Emergency windows

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with this mechanical type of the emergency windows distributed along the passengers compartment. These windows can be opened from inside the vehicle as emergency exits. A decal on window sills indicates the location of the emergency windows.
To open an emergency window, lift the window release bar (sill) and push the window from the bottom to open. To close, lift the release bar and pull the window into position. Push down the release bar to lock the window shut.
For exit from the bus do the following:

1 Pull the red bar located at the bottom of each emergency window.
2 Push and hold the window with both hands.
3 Exit carefully.

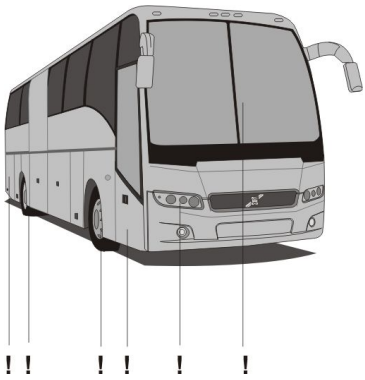


T8061781

Emergency windows with the opening mechanism at the bottom of the window glass.

Checking before driving

Before starting the bus and driving off, check the pressure sensitive edges on the doors. If the door leaf during opening encounters an obstacle, the door should stop. If the door leaf encounters an obstacle during closing, the door should open again. It should not be possible to open the doors by hand while the engine is running.



T0015270

WARNING

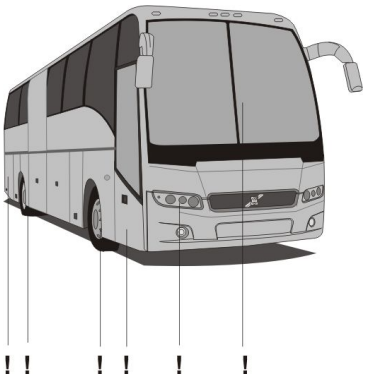
Make sure that the sensitive edges on the door work prior to vehicle use. Failure to do so may lead to personal injury of passengers.

Always make sure of the following:

- All the hatches are closed.
- All the lighting is working properly.
- The windshield wipers and washers working properly.
- The safety equipment its in corresponding place.
- The direction lights indicators and the horn are working properly.
- The tires air pressure is correct and any object this stuck between the dual rear wheels.
- The destination sign information and the line number are correct.
- The service doors emergency opening system are working properly.

Bus interior and exterior cleaning and maintenance

It is recommended to perform daily bus cleaning will keep the attractive look of the vehicle to ensure that the service life and durability for optimal operation conditions. For more information about care and precautions when is performed the cleaning of bus interior, see separate operating instructions: “Interior cleaning and maintenance”.
When washing the outside of the bus, only use agents that are intended for this purpose, see the separate operating instructions: “Exterior cleaning and maintenance”.



T0015270

Note: The areas subjected to intensive use by passengers require more attention.

Check the warning lights

When the ignition key is in the **I** position, the control system verify that all warning lights are working properly.
All warning indicator lights in the dashboard turn on by approximately **5 seconds**. The ABS system warning indicator turn on some more time than the other indicator lights.

CAUTION

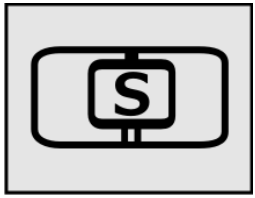
If the ABS system warning lights on, the malfunction indicator light (MIL) or the “CHECK” light continue turn on after **5 seconds** of turn the ignition key to the **I** position, indicates that one or many electronic problems in the bus systems. If this happens, you must go immediately to an authorized Volvo service center, to correct the existing problems.

T3014364

Stop message.

T3014365

Warning message.



W3079585

Stop at the next bus stop message.

Daily inspection

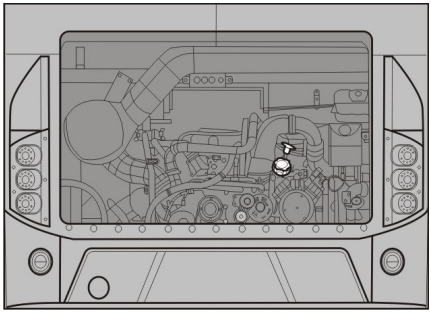
The fluid levels on the bus as engine oil, power steering fluid and the coolant, should be reviewed daily. This checking must be made with the **warm** and engine **OFF**. All the fluid reservoirs are located at the rear of the bus.

Note: Its recommended make these checks after a trip, when the engine is at normal operation temperature.

Engine oil level

To check the engine oil level, do the following:

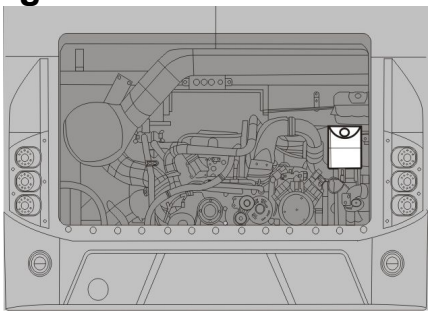
- Park the bus over leveled ground and open the engine hatch compartment (use the appropriate key, see the following section on this manual: “Keys”, page 2).
- If the engine is cold, leave in idle speed at least by **1-3 minutes**.
- Shut off the engine. Wait at least **5 minutes** before carry out the inspection.
- Get out the oil dipstick.
- Check the engine oil level in the oil dipstick marks. The engine oil level must be between of the “**MAX**” and “**MIN**” marks and clean up the oil dipstick with a clean cloth.
- Add oil if necessary.
- Close the oil pipe with their cap.
- Close the engine compartment hatch.



T8056919

Hydraulic level fluid for the engine coolant fan

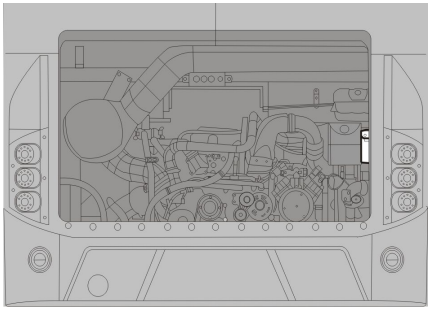
Park the bus over leveled ground, open the engine compartment hatch (use the appropriate key, see the following section on this manual: “Keys”, page 2) and check that the hydraulic oil level its between of the “**MAX**” and “**MIN**” marks on the fluid reservoir for the engine coolant system fan.
Add hydraulic oil if necessary and close the corresponding fluid reservoir and the engine compartment hatch.



T8056920

Power steering hydraulic oil level

Park the bus over leveled ground and open the engine compartment hatch (use the appropriate key, see the following section on this manual: “Keys”, page 2) and check that the power steering hydraulic oil level its between of the “**MAX**” and “**MIN**” marks on the corresponding fluid reservoir.
Add hydraulic oil fluid if necessary and close the fluid reservoir and the engine compartment hatch.

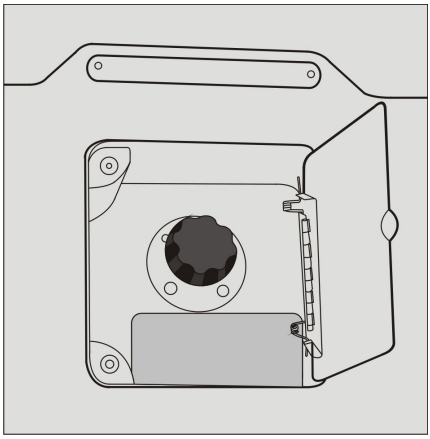


W0108035

Engine coolant system fluid level

Park the bus over leveled ground and open the coolant reservoir compartment hatch (as refer, see the following sections on this manual: “Doors and hatches configuration”, page 11 or “Doors and hatches configuration (bus with WCL)”, page 12) and check the engine coolant system fluid level its between of the “**MAX**” and “**MIN**” marks on the corresponding fluid reservoir.
Add coolant if necessary and close the fluid reservoir and the engine compartment hatch.

Note: The reservoir is located over the rear engine door.



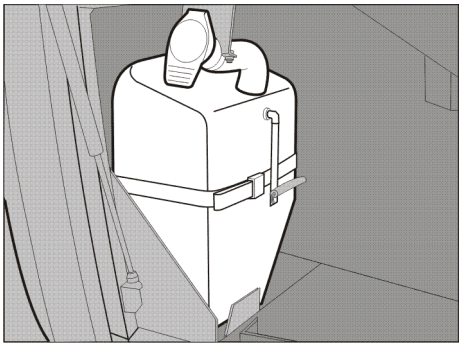
T8061297

Windshield washer fluid

Check the level of the washer fluid in the reservoir. Top up if necessary.
For add the washer fluid, do the following:

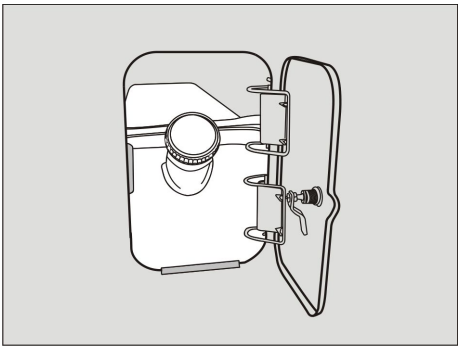
- Open the front left lower side hatch (to refer, see the following sections on this manual: “Doors and hatches configuration”, page 11 or “Doors and hatches configuration (bus with WCL)”, page 12).
- Lid the fluid reservoir cap.
- Place a funnel in the fluid reservoir filler neck and pour the washer fluid.
- Add a washer fluid up to its between of the “**MAX**” and “**MIN**” marks on the corresponding fluid reservoir.
- Close the washer fluid reservoir.
- Close the front left lower side hatch.

Note: In winter use a washer fluid for lower temperatures to avoid the fluid freezing inside reservoir.



W0100282

Fuel replenishment



T2061889

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus has two tanks with **105 gallons (400 liter)** capacity each one.
For bus fuel replenishment, do the following:

- Open the fuel filler cap hatch (use the appropriate key, see the following section on this manual: “Keys”, page 2).
- Open the filler cap of the fuel tank. To open press firmly with the entire palm hand whole to release the latch of your lock and release the filler cap.
- Insert the end of the fuel dispenser hose within the fuel tank filler neck.
- Fill the fuel tank with diesel fuel. The fuel tank must be filling up to **95%** as maximum to leave space at the top of the fuel tank for the originated fuel vapors and prevent spillage during the trip.
- After filling the fuel tank, remove the fuel dispenser hose and put it in the fuel dispenser pump.
- Close the fuel tank filler cap. To close the filler cap, press firmly with the entire palm hand the filler cap over the fuel tank filler neck to place the latch in the lock to then release the filler cap.
- Close the fuel filler cap hatch.

Fuel replenishment warnings

CAUTION

The use of Diesel fuel other than ULSD, will adversely affect performance, efficiency and durability of the DPF system and the engine, to the point where the engine may not run at all. Manufacturer's warranties can also be rendered void due to usage of improper fuel. None approved fuel additives (including engine oil) are NOT permitted. Blends of No. **1D and No. 2D grades of ULSD** are recommended and allowable for cold weather operations.

CAUTION

Use only fuel that meets the recommended Volvo specifications. Contact to Volvo technical advisor to meet the appropriate fuel specifications for the engine installed in the bus.

CAUTION

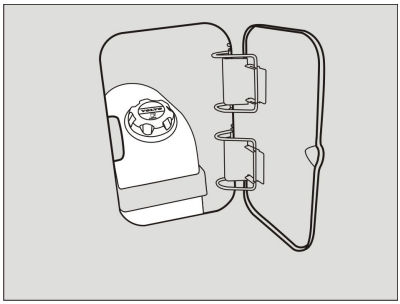
When filling the fuel tank, don't spilling a fuel on the painted surfaces to avoid damaging the paint finish.

WARNING

For your safety and the passengers, only replenishment fuel only in designated locations.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank

On the right side and on the rear is the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank. To DEF tank fill cap access, open a lid hatch on the rear right side hatch compartment using the appropriate key (see the following section on this manual: “Keys”, page 2).
The DEF tank can hold **60 liters** capacity. As a guide , use **5 — 7%** DEF in relation to the fuel for after treatment systems “EPA 17”.



T2061890

Note: Avoid spilling DEF on to painted surfaces. In case of spilling, rinse the painted surfaces immediately.

WARNING

Use only pure certified DEF from an approved dispenser or sealed container.

CAUTION

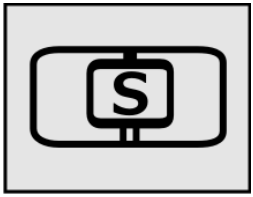
Do not put diesel fuel in the DEF tank. Diesel fuel, if sprayed into the hot exhaust along with the DEF, could ignite explosively causing a fire resulting in personal injury or damage to the exhaust system.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) level related messages

The Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) level is shown in the driver display in the dashboard, on the “Gauges” menu, then in the sub-menu “DEF tank, level”.
If the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) level fall down of a defined level (**20% reservoir capacity**), in the driver display shown a warning message in the dashboard, if this warning message appears fill the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank as soon as possible.
If a fault condition occurs in the aftertreatment system, will display the corresponding malfunction icon in the driver display in the dashboard and the indicator light will flashes in the cluster, indicating that a problem relates to the emissions control system.
For more information related with the exhaust aftertreatment system to the emissions control used in “EPA 17” engines, see separate operating instructions: “Exhaust aftertreatment system”.

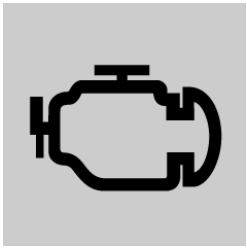
T3014365

Indicator light “CHECK” on in the cluster, when occurs the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) lower fluid tank level.



W3079585

Indicator light “Stop at the next bus stop” on in the cluster, when occurs the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) lower fluid tank level.



T3019966

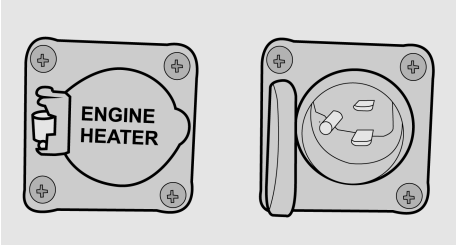
Malfunction icon indicator shown in the driver display if the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) fluid tank level is below of **20%**.

Engine block heater

An electric engine block heater can be installed for keeping the coolant hot when the vehicle is parked
This equipment has the following features:

- The heater is mounted through the side of the engine block with the heater coils in the coolant jacket.
- The heater does not interfere with normal operation and can be permanently installed.
- The heater runs on **120 V** and has an easily accessible plug, located on the right side of the engine compartment.

  Note: The plug will hook up to a normal extension cable.



T0015492

Starting the engine

Starting

When engine starts, the parking brake must be engaged and the gear selector must be in neutral **N**, turn the ignition switch up to **III** position “starting position” and once the engine starts, release the key switch.
For more information about the ignition switch positions, see the following section on this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47.

Start a cold engine

When starting the engine at temperatures around **50 °F (10 °C)** and below, the air entering the engine should be heated. To prevent wear and possible damage to the engine when it is cold, gradually bring it up to operating temperature before high engine speed operations or full load. After starting and before moving the vehicle run the engine at **800 to 1000 rpm** for **3 to 5 minutes**. Operate at partial engine load until the coolant temperature reaches **167 °F (75 °C)**.
For an engine cold start, **proceed as follows:**

- Turn **ON** the ignition key switch between **II** and **III** positions, this starts the preheating.
- The indicator light of the preheating relay turn on in the dashboard during the preheating which can take up to **50** seconds, it depends of coolant temperature.
- Once the pre-heater indicator has turn **OFF** and the needle of the temperature gauge has moved out lower limit, the engine can be started.

T0014333

CAUTION

Do not let a cold engine run faster than **1000** rpm in very low temperatures (**< -68 °F (-20 °C)**). Failure to do so may be cause internal engine damage.

Starting a warm engine

Engine starts when key switch turned on start position (**III**).
For more information about the ignition switch positions, see the following section on this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47.

Shutdown the engine

To shut down the engine, turn the ignition switch key to the **0** position.
For more information about the ignition switch positions, see the following section on this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47.
In an emergency situation the engine can be shut down by using the emergency stop switch.
For more information related to the emergency stop switch see the following section on this manual: “Emergency stop switch”, page 32.

CAUTION

Before turning **OFF** engine. If the engine has run at high temperature for a significant time before it is shut down, let the engine run at idle for **3 minutes** to cool the engine **OFF** to avoid heat soak.

Indicator lights on after the engine has been started.

Indicator lights on when the engine starts:

- The coolant level warning lamp lights up for second when the engine starts.
- The parking brake warning lamp lights up when the parking brake is engaged.
- After releasing the parking brake, the lamp should remain lit until the pressure increases to roughly **78 psi (540 kPa)**.
- The foot brake warning lamp and the "STOP" lamp should remain lit until the pressure in the compressed air tanks reach a sufficiently high level.

⚠ DANGER

Do not drive the vehicle until the warning lamps have gone out, as the brake system needs the correct air pressure to work properly. Failure to do so may be lead to an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

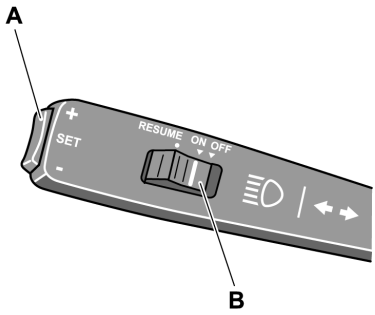
Engine idle speed adjustment

The normal engine idling speed is **575–625 rpm**. Keeping the idling speed constant is the task of the engine electronic control system, which makes manual adjustment unnecessary. When the bus is stationary, the idling speed can be temporarily raised to **1200 rpm** adjusting as follows.

Idle speed adjustment

Before you start to adjust the engine idling speed, the engine must be warmed up to operating temperature, adjust the idle speed as follows:

- The switch (**B**) in the control lever at the steering column left side, should be in **ON** position.
- Press the “SET” button (**A**, located at the end on the same lever) to the “+” position. Each time this button is pressed to this position is obtained by an increase of **10 rpm** on the idle speed.
- If the idle speed torn high, can be reduce by press the “SET” button (**A**) to the position “**-**”. Each time this button is pressed to this position is obtained by an decrease of **10 rpm** on the idle speed.



T0012078

Note: The change in idling speed is only temporary. After pressing a pedal, engaging a gear or releasing the parking brake, the idling speed will return to its manufacturer settings (**575–625 rpm**).

Engine idle speed adjustment (continue)

If new programming of idling rpm is required, proceed as follows:

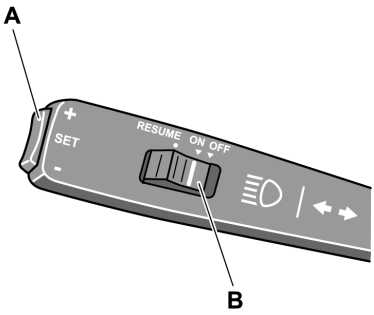
- Maintain your foot on the brake pedal.
- Adjust the new idle speed according to the previous procedure.
- Move the switch **B** in the control lever at the steering column left side to the **RESUME** position when the idle speed its the desired and release the switch.
- Shut down the engine for programing this idle speed.

The next time to start the engine and you want that the engine runs to the last idle speed programming do the following:

- Start the engine.
- Let stabilize the default idle speed.
- Move the switch **B** in the same control lever to the **RESUME** position and release the switch.

The engine runs to the last programmed idle speed (this function non counts with a historical programing), to quit the programmed idle speed for the engine runs to the default idle speed, do the following:

- Press the throttle pedal.
- Press the brake pedal.
- Move the switch **B** in the control lever to the **OFF** position.



T0012078

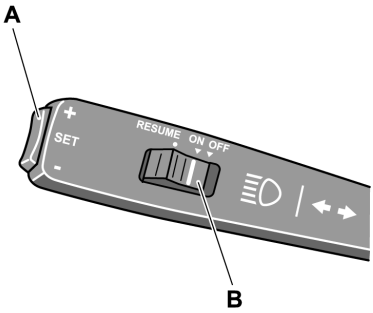
Note: If the engine do not “runs smoothly” at the default programmed by the manufacturer, please visit an authorized Volvo service center.

Cruise control activation

To activated the cruise control do the following:

- Move the switch **B** in the control lever at the steering column left side to the **ON** position.
- When the bus reached the desired speed, press the “SET” button **A** located in the same lever to the “+” or “-” position for idle speed established.
- Press the “SET” button **A** in the same lever to the “+” position for increase established idle speed.
- Press the “SET” button **A** in the same lever to the “-” position for decrease established idle speed.

Note: If the speed is desired to increase temporarily, for example; to pass other vehicle, accelerate the bus and when you finish the maneuver, release the throttle and move the switch **B** in the control lever at the steering column left side to the **RESUME** position and release the button. The bus return to the established speed.



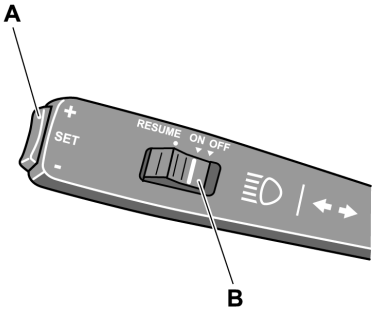
T0012078

Cruise control deactivation

Cruise control is deactivated if do the following:

- The brake pedal is pressed.
- The clutch pedal is pressed.
- The retarder control lever its move to the other position.
- The switch **B** in the control lever at the steering column left side to the **OFF** position.

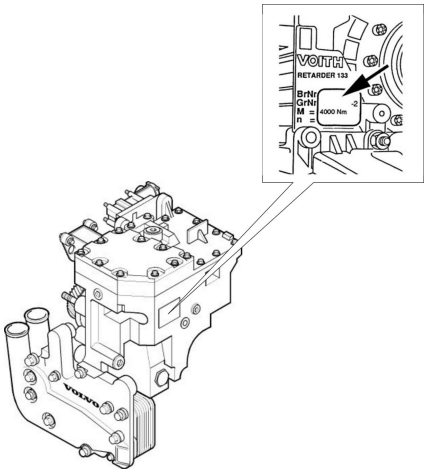
Note: After cruise control has been switched off, the most recent set speed can be restored by moving the switch **B** to **RESUME**. This however does not apply if cruise control has been deactivated by moving switch (**B**) to its **OFF** position.



T0012078

Retarder (if installed)

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus may be equipped with an auxiliary brake equipment called “retarder”. The function of the retarder is to supplement the service brake acting directly on the main drive shaft that connects the shaft from transmission output with the carrier decreasing its speed, and thus serve an additional assistance brake.
The retarder works without a problem together with the **VEB** (engine brake patented by Volvo), **EPG** (exhaust gasses shutter) and the service brake for obtain a longer delay effect to braking more efficient, preventing it from overheating the service brake.
To completely retarder enable or disable, its count with a switch in the dashboard. But, to retarder activated or deactivated while driving use the control lever located at the steering column right side slightly above to the wipers control lever.

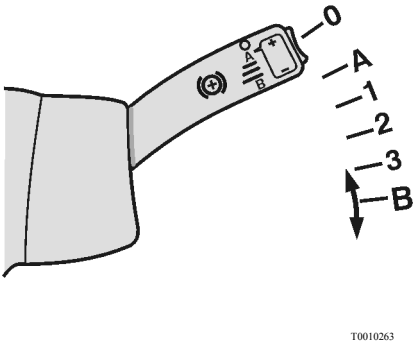


W0089959

Retarder use (if installed)

This control lever count with many positions which are:

- Position **0**: The retarder is deactivated.
- Position **A**: The retarder is coupled in the automatic mode, this is that the retarder is matched every time the driver press the brake pedal by the time the **RECU** (retarder electronic control unit) select the appropriate intensity braking level depending the operational parameters obtained in real time. This function allows the optimal use of the retarder.
- Position **1**: Softly retarder brake intensity.
- Position **2**: Medium retarder brake intensity.
- Position **3**: Highest retarder brake intensity.
- Position **B**: In this position the control lever have a spring backward, when select it activated a braking program which combine automatically the retarder brake together with the engine and the exhaust brakes (if this auxiliary brake systems are installed in the engine) with brake intensities automatically adjusting by the **EBS** system according to vehicle speed, weight, tilt, engine speed and other more operational parameters. This braking function should be use when you want decrease quickly the bus speed without apply service brakes.

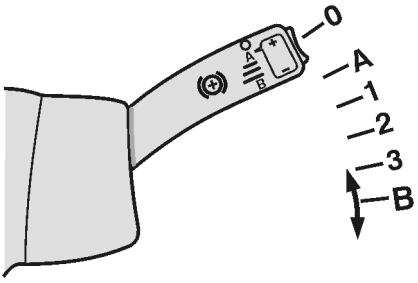


Note: The **B** position for the retarder control lever only appears in buses equipped with **I-Shift** transmission.
For more information, see separate operating instructions: “EBS”.

Retarder use (continue)

When you place the retarder control lever in either **1 to 3** positions, the bus is braked by the retarder with the corresponding brake intensity as soon as release the throttle pedal. The retarder power brake is gradually increase by sequentially moving down the retarder control lever and the retarder power brake is gradually decrease by sequentially moving up the same control lever.
In some coaches the retarder may be activated or deactivated by brake pedal.
For more information, see the following section on this manual: “Service brakes”, page 66.
Its important to mention while driving if maintain the retarder continuously operated and in this moment apply a panic or emergency brake, the **ABS** system enter and turn on the indicator light in the dashboard. When occurs this, the retarder function its automatically deactivated. This is completely normal to avoid damages on any brake system component.
The retarder operation and control functions are integral managed by the **EBS** system.
For more information, see separate operating instructions: “EBS”.

Note: The bus minimum speed for retarder can activated is of **19 mph (30 km/h)**. Below this speed the retarder its automatically deactivated.



DANGER

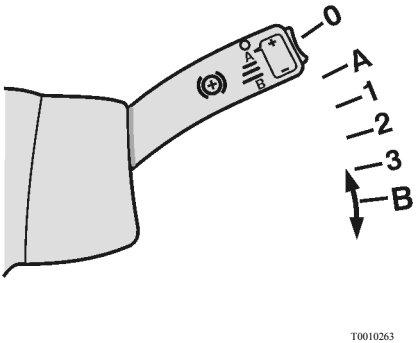
Avoid using the retarder on slippery roads because of the risk of locking the wheels and skidding because the reason that the retarder brakes only the driving wheels, in these conditions drive with sufficient safety margins. Failure to do so may be lead to an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

Speed limiting

When the bus is driven downhill with the retarder stalk in position **A**, the retarder acts as a speed limiter.
For use the retarder in this operating mode, do the following:

- When the bus has reached the desired speed, lightly press the adjusting “SET” button **A** Located at the retarder control lever end (in the steering wheel column right side) to the “+” or “-” positions. The retarder keep the bus speed on the last adjustment when press the “SET” button **A**.
- The established speed may be can increase or decrease, pressing the “SET” button **A** in the same control lever to the “+” or “-” positions. Each time press the button increase or decrease the speed in relation of **0.6 mph (1 km/h)**.
- If maintain pressing the “SET” button **A** in the same control lever, the speed is adjust in relation of **0.6 mph (1 km/h)** per second that maintain pressed the button.

Note: The buses that have a switch for retarder activation in place of the control lever, the retarder not count with this function.



T0010263

Use the “SET” button **A** in the retarder control lever to control the speed limiter.

Combined cruise control and speed limiting

T3008844

If the bus is equipped with the cruise control (see the section on this manual “Cruise control activation”, page 121), This system can operate together with the retarder. For this its possible, the retarder control lever should be in the “A” position. With the activated cruise control system the retarder will engaged if the bus speed exceed the established cruise control speed by **3 mph (5 km/h)**. This speed adjust value may be modified at any moment by press the “SET” button **A** located at the end in the control lever at the steering wheel left side to the “+” or “**-**” position. This over speed value can be modified to any value in the range **2 to 9 mph (3 to 15 km/h)**.

Note: The retarder is automatically deactivated if there is a risk for wheel locking, this is completely normal.

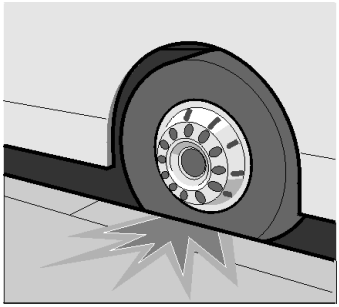
For more information, see the following in this manual: “Retarder (if installed)”, page 123.

CAUTION

If the symbol for high retarder temperature is displayed, a lower gear range must be selected to cool it down.
For more information, see separate operating instructions: “Display”.

Power steering

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with a servo assisted, increasing the driving comfort specially when performing maneuvers in yard or parking.
If the wheel is blocked on one side, i. e. against a curb, drive carefully forward and turn the steering wheel to allow the bus to move away from the kerb. Never try to force the wheels to turn.
Do not attempt to turn the bus by means of the use of excessive force on the steering wheel. Use excessive force on the steering wheel increases the pressure in the cooling system, causing a risk of overheating that can damage the hydraulic steering pump.
If the power steering is malfunctioning it may be feel as if the steering gear was blocked or a steering gear excessively hard, if this happens, do not start the trip and immediately contact an authorized Volvo service center to request the assistance road rescue service to move the bus and fix the problem (see the following section on this manual “Assistance and rescue on highway”, page 146.



T0008960

⚠ DANGER

Never drive with the steering system in malfunction condition or damaged. Failure to do so may be lead to an accident, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

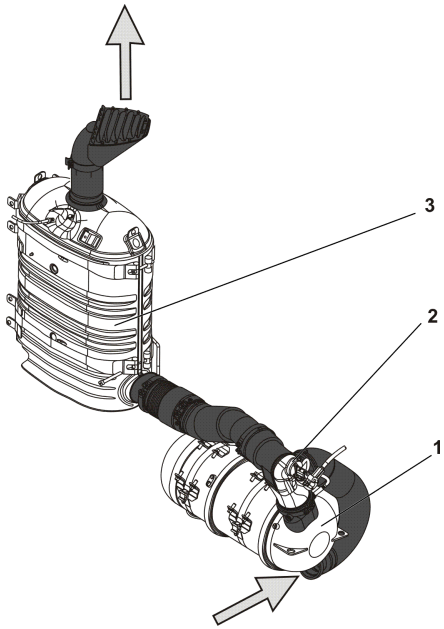
Exhaust Aftertreatment System (EATS) components

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus has an exhaust gasses aftertreatment system which complies with the environment emissions regulation **EPA 17**.
The Exhaust Aftertreatment System (EATS) complies with the emissions regulation **EPA 17** have the following main components:

1 Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF).

2 Diesel Emission Fluid (DEF) dosing valve.

3 Catalytic converter.



In normal operation, the catalyst surface can reach high temperatures around by **662° F (350° C)** so you have to take extreme precautions to avoid a burn, if for any reason its required an inspection in nearest catalyst or DPF areas specially when the engine is in operation or just getting to a certain destination.
Inspection of the **Exhaust Aftertreatment System (EATS)** components to detect a possible failure and fixed by authorized technicians as soon as possible. Its also important to check in the catalyst or in the DPF surfaces does not have substance traces that may be potentially flammable and may be cause fire due to the high system temperatures during normal operation.
New stringent standards for exhaust emissions control begin with the US 2017 engine model year. The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system has been developed to act in combination with ultra low sulfur diesel (ULSD) fuel to reduce particulate emissions to meet the requirement. The Exhaust Aftertreatment System (EATS) includes all the engine and exhaust emissions control components that are required to meet the stringent **EPA 17** standard.

Exhaust Aftertreatment System (EATS), warnings

CAUTION

The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF), Diesel Emission Fluid (DEF) Dosing Valve, Catalytic reducer and associated components are part of a U.S. EPA and California Air Resources Board (CARB) certified engine emissions system. These components **must no be moved, altered or modified from OEM installation in any way** any alterations may cause component damage and is prohibited by the law. Tampering with these systems render the emissions warranty void and may result in possible tampering charges by the EPA or CARB.

WARNING

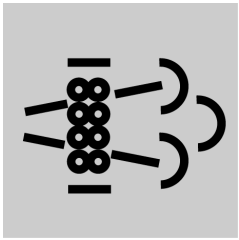
When you arrive from a trip or the engine is in operation and the exhaust system is warm, do not stay nearest to the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) area, if it is necessary to perform an inspection on nearby components or the Exhaust Aftertreatment System (EATS). Must wait for the engine exhaust system to cool to avoid the risk burn.

DANGER

The DPF and the Catalytic reducer cover should not be removed while the vehicle is in use. Also, only remove the cover, once the vehicle is out of use and the Catalytic Reduction and the DPF is sufficiently cooled. Failure to follow these instructions can result in fire, which can cause component damage, personal injury or death.

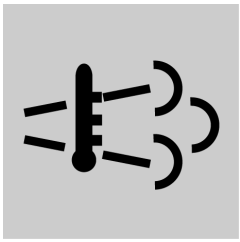
Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) regeneration required icon

If the icon “DPF Regeneration Required” lights on, means that the diesel particulate filter is becoming full and regeneration is needed; the icon flashes when the filter is full, maintain uninterrupted highway speed for an automatic regeneration or move the vehicle to a safe location and initiated a parked regeneration.



T0015482

High engine exhaust system temperature



T0015483

The icon “High engine exhaust system temperature” lights on when a parked regeneration is initiated. It also indicates high exhaust gas temperature during an speed regeneration. When the high exhaust system temperature icon is light on, do not park or operate the vehicle near people, or any flammable materials, vapors, or structures. For more information about Exhaust Aftertreatment System (EATS), see separate operating instructions: “Exhaust Aftertreatment System”.

Note: It is important to enable regeneration as soon as possible to avoid engine problems. Long—term engine operation with regeneration disabled will result in a loss of engine performance including horsepower, torque and speed decrease.

Emission green house gas component warranty

Critical emissions related maintenance

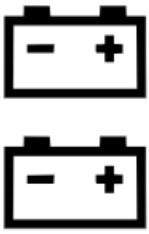
- **Source of parts and repair**: A repair shop or person of the owner's choosing must maintain, replace, or repair emission control devices and systems per manufacturer's recommendations.
- **Replace of the tires that are GHG certified**: The original equipment tires installed on this vehicle at the factory were certified to the U.S. EPA Greenhouse Gas (GHG) and National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) fuel efficiency regulations. Replacement of these tires should be with a tire of equal or lower rolling resistance levels (TRRL or Crr). Please consult tire supplier(s) for appropriate replacement tires.
- **Maintaining a GHG certified tire**: In order to maintain the certified tilling resistance of the tires which optimize fuel economy, the maintenance procedures provide by the tire manufacturer must be followed. *Please visit Prevost Web Site for further information about Warranty.*

I-Start system

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with the I-Start system, which is a dual battery system where divide the starter batteries from the consumer batteries.
The I-Start system is designed to improve and secure cranking also to provide a longer service life for the batteries even if deep-cycled by the consumers.
The I-Start system avoid discharge the batteries when the bus is not used for a time, this is supported by the main switch function when the ignition key is in (**I**) position.
With I-Start system the body loads can be active for a longer period without the risk of affecting the crank ability because the starter batteries are protected from draining.
For more information related to I-Start system, see separate operating instructions: “I-Start”.
The electric circuit loads for the bus are split in two circuits which are the following:

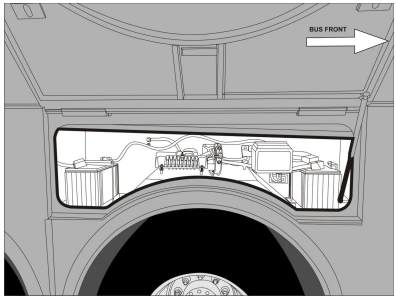
- Chassis electronics connected to the starter batteries (*right hand side batteries compartment*).
- Body electronics connected to consumer batteries (*left hand side batteries compartment*).

Note: Inside of the right side batteries compartment is installed the cut-off batteries switch (*“General switch”*), for more about this switch, see the following section in this manual: “Batteries cut-off switch”, page 166.



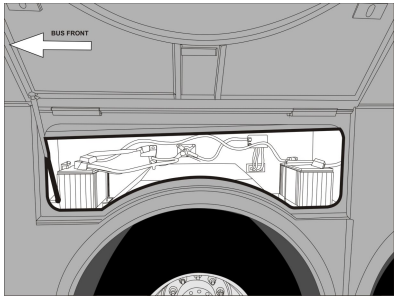
C0080351

I-Start system symbol.



W0110919

Starter batteries compartment (*right hand side batteries compartment*).



W0110920

Consumer batteries compartment (*left hand side batteries compartment*).

I-Start system (continue)

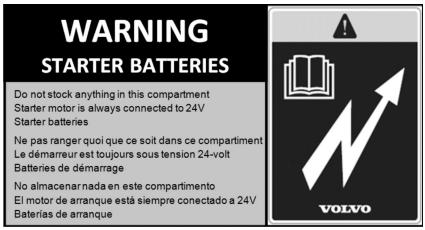
Inside on each batteries compartments placed a fuse box, this fuse boxes are identified with a decal placed on each fuse box showing which batteries are placed in the compartment:

- Chassis fuse box in the starter batteries compartment.
- Body fuse box, in the consumer batteries compartment.

For more information related relays and fuses positions inside in these electrical boxes, see the following sections in this manual:

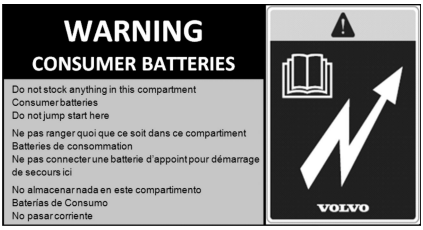
- “Relays in the electrical distribution box corresponding to the I-Start system”, page 190.
- “Fuses in the electrical distribution box corresponding to the I-Start system”, page 191.
- “Mini fuse box holder inside to the left hand side batteries compartment”, page 193.

A decal with the system description in three languages is placed on the right hand side batteries compartment hatch backside.



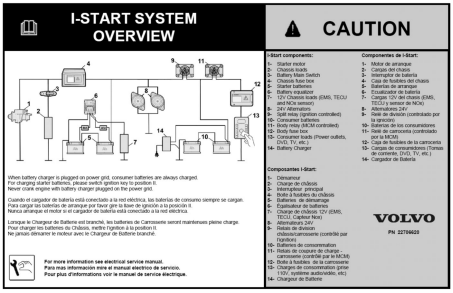
W0111068

Starter batteries decal.



W0111069

Consumer batteries decal.



W0111070

I-Start system description decal.

I-Start system failure detection

Due to the reason the I-Start system is multiplexed to the bus electrical architecture bus (*BEA2*), the system operation is continuous monitored by the auto-diagnostic system which informs the driver (through by the driver´s information display located in the instrument cluster) of the following conditions (which are the most common):

- MCM (*Master Control Module*) will check and warn if the batteries reach a voltage level higher than **28 V** when the engine is **OFF**. With the engine is **ON**, the voltage threshold was set in **23.5 V** (*low*) and **31 V** (*high*).
- Two messages were also created to inform if there is a problem in the K300 (*PID 158 FMI 1*) or K400 (*PID158 FMI 12*) relays. The messages below will appear on the LCD (*Liquid Crystal Display*) screen of the driver´s information display in the instruments cluster whenever MCM (*Master Control Module*) sends the fault codes to BIC (*Bus Instrument Cluster*).

  For more information about K300 and K400 relays, see the following section in this manual: “I-Start system power relays”, page 139
- MCM sends the information to BBM (*Body Builder Module*) through the *CAN Bus*, and BBM (*Body Builder Module*) sends the fault codes to the driver´s information display in the instrument cluster.

  For more information related to the MCM (*Master Control Module*), see the following section in this manual: “MCM (Master Control Module) service switch”, page 45.

Note: For more information related to I-Start system faults; see separate operating instructions: “I-Start” and for the symbols displayed in the driver´s information display related to I-Start system diagnostics; see separate operating instructions: “Driver´s information display”.

Starter and consumer batteries failure detection

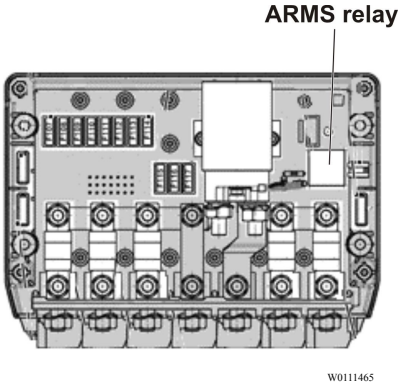
For the starter batteries, the state of charge is monitored by the BIC (*Bus Instrument Cluster*) module. The BIC (*Bus Instrument Cluster*) module will check and warn in case of high or low voltage being detected in the starter batteries.
In case for the consumer batteries, in order to protect the consumer batteries from draining and prolong their service life, a system based on ARMS (*Automatic Reset of Main Switch*). the MCM (*Master Control Module*) monitored the consumer batteries voltage and opens the **K400** power relay (also see: “I-Start system power relays”, page 139) when **23 V** is detected for more than **130 seconds**, shutting down the **+ 30** body power source.

Note: For the consumer batteries voltage control, this function will only act if the ignition key is on position **I** (for ignition key positions, see the following section in this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47.

Note: For more information related to I-Start system faults; see separate operating instructions: “I-Start” and for the symbols displayed in the driver´s information display related to I-Start system diagnostics; see separate operating instructions: “Driver´s information display”.

ARMS (Automatic Reset Main Switch)

The I-Start system in order to secure energy for cranking, the ARMS (*Automatic Reset of Main Switch*) relay was introduced. The ARMS relay is responsible for shutting down **+30** power source to prevent starter batteries from getting drained when **23,5 V** are detected for more than **120 seconds**. The control is made by BBM (*Body Builder Module*) through ARMS (*Automatic Reset of Main Switch*) relay, located in the fuse box inside to the right hand side batteries compartment.
This function will only act if the ignition key is on position **I + a click**, to refer the ignition key positions, see the following section in this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47.



ARMS relay inside to the chassis fuse box, located in the right side batteries compartment (*starter side batteries*).

ARMS failure detection

When a fault is detected on the ARMS (*Automatic Reset of Main Switch*) relay output the BBM (*Body Builder Module*) will generate a fault code in case of an ARMS (*Automatic Reset Main Switch*) relay open circuit and an icon and/or lamp and text shall be displayed in the driver´s information display.

Note: For more information related to I-Start system faults; see separate operating instructions: “I-Start” and for the symbols displayed in the driver´s information display related to I-Start system diagnostics; see separate operating instructions: “Driver´s information display”.

I-Start system power relays

The I-Start system have a two power relays that are part of the system: .

- Body relay (**K400**) which doing the separation between consumer batteries and body loads. This power relay its controlled by MCM (*Master Control Module*).
- Split relay (**K300**) which connecting both chassis and body electronics. This power relay its activated by the ignition key position **II** to refer the ignition key positions, see the following section in this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47.

Due to **K300** power relay control by the ignition key position **II**, the batteries sets will be put in parallel before starting, providing a higher CCA (*Cold Cranking Amps*), helping with the cranking.

Note: Both power relays have a decal in three languages for a better identification.

W0111071

K300 power relay decal.

W0111072

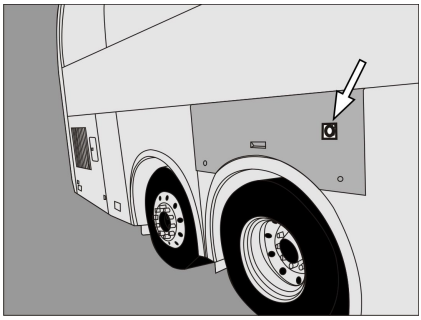
K400 power relay decal.

Batteries charger

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with a batteries charger (**120 V AC ± 10%, 60 Hz ± 10%**), installed in the luggage bay, on the left side.
In the right hand side batteries compartment hatch there is installed an electrical outlet for connecting the charger to the power grid.
The batteries charger has the following charging modes:

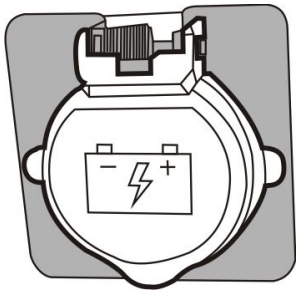
- If ignition key is **OFF**, on position **0** or **I + a click**, only the consumer batteries are charged.
- If Ignition key is on position **II**, starter and consumer batteries are charged.

Note: The bus must not be started with the battery charger connected to the power grid.



W0111073

Batteries charger electrical outlet location in the bus.



W0111074

Batteries charger electrical outlet.

Bulk charge time estimation

Consumer batteries charging (ignition key **OFF**, position **0** or position **I + a click**) :

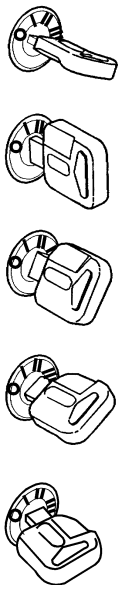
- State of charge from **50% to 80%**: Around **45 minutes**.*
- State of charge from **60% to 80%**: Around **30 minutes**.*
- State of charge from **70% to 80%**: Around **15 minutes**.*

Consumer batteries and starter batteries charging (ignition key on position **II**), at this position **+DR** power line is activated causing a higher consumption (*lower current charging the batteries*):

- Starter and Consumer Batteries with state of charge from **50% to 80%**: Around **6 hours**.*
- Starter and Consumer Batteries with state of charge from **60% to 80%**: Around **4 hours**.*
- Starter and Consumer Batteries with state of charge from **70% to 80%**: Around **2 hours**.*

* Considering SOH (State Of Health) **100%** and **25 °C**.
The values were estimated and may vary according to specific conditions.

To refer about ignition key positions, see the following section in this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47.



W3001302

Ignition key positions.

Safe driving

Attend and follow this advises to obtain a safe driving all the trip:

1 After starting, and regularly while driving, check that the instruments are giving their normal readings. If any warning lamp lights while driving, stop the bus and investigate the cause.

2 Never race a cold engine! Also avoid idling speed for long periods.

3 Never cover the radiator! The thermostat keeps the temperature constant regardless of ambient conditions. Check the coolant level regularly and use always the correct type of coolant. Check the hoses, pipes and tensioning of the belts. Do not drive with a cooling or heating system leakages.

4 Never drive off before the brake system warning lamps have extinguished in the dashboard.

5 Do not forget to release the parking brake.

6 The **ABS/EBS** indicator lamps may be light along the trip or stay lit after starting the engine, if this happens; the bus can be driven since the lights only indicate that the **ABS/EBS** auto diagnostic system detected a malfunctioning.

7 If one of the front wheels is blocked sideways, never try to force it to turn by applying excessive force to the steering wheel, because you can damage the servo-mechanism hydraulic pump.

8 While driving downhill and for gradual braking use the retarder (for more information see the following section in this manual: “Retarder (if installed)”, page 123). Take special care when driving in slippery conditions as there may be a risk of block the drive wheels using the retarder or disable the retarder altogether in this conditions to prevent the risk of wheels block and avoid skidding.

9 When driving on slippery surfaces, for example; in snow or heavy rain, reduce speed and avoid rapid steering wheel movements. Brake and accelerate gently, to make the journey as safe as possible for passengers. Driving in slippery conditions requires extra caution when there are strong side winds. Side winds can produce a lifting force acting on the front axle losing total directional control.

Economy driving

As the driver, you are the most important link in the chain for getting the best overall driving economy.
Follow these tips to get an acceptable economy driving:

1 **Warm up the engine as quickly as possible.** A warm engine (normal operation temperature) consumes less fuel than a cold one and there is less wear, extending the engine life time.

2 **Treat the throttle pedal gently.** Don't "pump" the throttle pedal. The pump action increases fuel consumption without increasing the speed. The information provided by the turbo boost pressure indicator will help to drive economically.

3 **High speeds increase fuel consumption.** Since, air resistance increases sharply when increases the speed. Front and side strong winds increase fuel consumption even more.

4 **Timely and correct servicing.** Timely and correct servicing will keep the bus in good condition, this will also contribute to preserving low fuel consumption.

Driving in cold weather

Before driving in cold weather conditions with ambient temperature of **41 °F (5 °C)** or below, pay attention to the following points:

1 The cooling system must be protected against freezing.

2 The washer fluid reservoir must be filled with winter liquid.

3 Batteries must be in good conditions. In low temperatures, the batteries capacity to deliver current drops, i. e. when starting the engine. Make sure that the poles of the batteries are thoroughly clean, with the cable terminals properly tightened and covered with grease, and that there is the correct amount of electrolyte in every cell.

4 Engine oil, as well as transmission and rear axle oil, must have the correct viscosity.

5 Fill up the tanks with winter fuel. This reduces the risk of wax settling in the fuel system. If this has already happened, change the fuel filters and fill up the tanks with winter fuel. Keep the tanks as full as possible.

6 The compressed air system is particularly sensitive to low temperatures. Excessive condensation in the primary tank indicates that the air drier is not working properly. Drain the tank and change the desiccator cartridge in the air drier. If none of these measures help, use an external heating source to defrost the system.

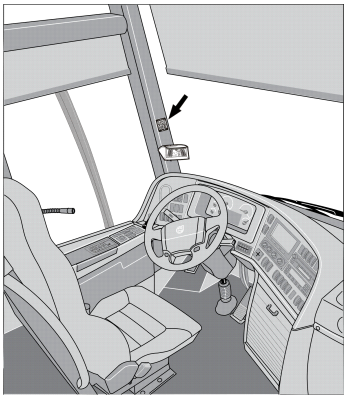
QR code labels

There are some QR code labels distributed inside the bus. The QR code labels provide the passenger's and the driver a basic information about the bus.
To access this information, must have a smart phone with the QR code labels reader application.
The QR code labels in the bus are the following:

1 For driver is located on left windshield pillar and cabin door (WCL) frame right structure pillar.
Link:
https://www.prevostcar.com/QRPassP-revost

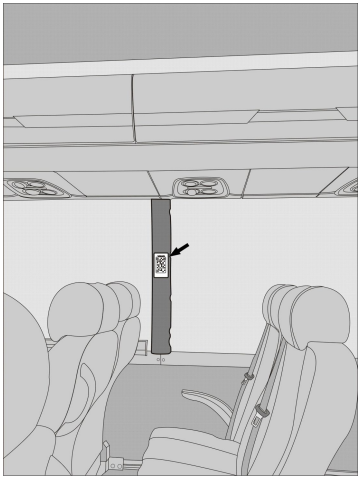
2 For passengers are located in the side windows pillars.
Link:
https://www.prevostcar.com/QRDrivV-2014

Note: QR codes can be read by mobile devices.



W0091714

QR code label for driver.



W0095902

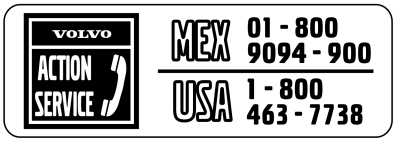
QR code labels for passengers.

Assistance and rescue on highway

(VAS, Volvo Action Service)

In all Volvo buses, is stuck a label on the right bottom corner of the window of the driver seat. On this label will find the contact telephone numbers to request at any time (**24 hrs, 365 days a year**) the assistance and rescue on highway service provided by Volvo and its dealers network (service available in Mexico and in the United States).

Note: Before request the assistance and rescue on highway service should be ready with the following information: Complete Vehicle Identification Number (**VIN**.
For more information, see the following section on this manual: “Bus identification plate”, page 213), the vehicle location (the most precise as possible) and a clear brief description to the problem.



W0086993

Label with the contact details to request the assistance and rescue on highway service **VAS** in Mexico and in the United States.

Safety

Note: Always make passenger safety your first priority!

If something unexpected happens you should always proceed as follows:

1 Stop the bus in a place which is safe for the passengers, and where the bus itself does not constitute an obstacle for other road users and switch on the hazard warning lights.
For more information, see the following section on this manual: “Hazard warning lights”, page 31.

2 Activate the emergency stop switch.
For more information, see the following section on this manual: “Emergency stop switch”, page 32.

3 Set the ignition key switch in **0** position (to refer the ignition switch positions see the following section in this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47).

4 Open the service door(s). If necessary, use the emergency valve located at the top of each door.

5 Let the passengers out.

6 Place a warning triangle behind the bus. Remember that the distance between the warning triangle and the vehicle depends on local regulations.

7 Immediately call an authorized Volvo service center, describe the problem and request the assistance and rescue on highway service.
For more information, see the following section on this manual: “Assistance and rescue on highway”, page 146.

If the engine is not working

If the engine does not start, check the following:

1 The emergency switch its not activated (The cover of the emergency switch is down.).
For more information, see the following section on this manual: “Emergency stop switch”, page 32.

2 The ignition switch is in **III** position.
For more information, see the following section on this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47.

3 The gear selector is in neutral position (**N**).
For more information, see separate operating instructions: “I-Shift”.

4 The parking brake is engaged (see the following section in this manual: “Parking brake”, page 63).

5 The switch in the engine compartment is in (**1**) position, (see the following section on this manual: “Engine control panel in engine bay”, page 101).

6 Appropriate battery voltage in the starter batteries (*right hand side batteries compartment*), the engine cannot be started when the battery voltage is too low (below **18 V**).
For more information about appropriate voltage in the electrical charge system, see separate operating instructions: “I-Start”.

7 The engine cannot be started if either the engine hatch or the front service hatch is opened. In that case the display will show an appropriate symbol. Close the hatch before trying to start the engine.

T3018116

Symbol as shown in the driver information display related to currently open hatches in the bus.

For more information about the symbols shown in the driver information display, see separate operating instructions: “Display”.

Note: This vehicle is equipped with a battery discharge prevention system. If, with the parking brake applied, the battery voltage drops below **23.5 V**, the ARMS (*Automatic Reset Main Switch*) system acts and cuts the power of the chassis loads (to refer for ARMS function, see the following section in this manual: “ARMS (Automatic Reset Main Switch)”, page 138).
When ARMS (*Automatic Reset Main Switch*) is acting, for re-start the bus, you must turn **OFF** and turn **ON** the ignition key switch or turn **OFF** and turn **ON** the batteries cut-out switch in the vehicle.
To refer about key positions, see the following section in this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47.

If the engine is not working (continue)

Note: When ARMS (*Automatic Reset Main Switch*) is acting for doing the rest it is needed to turn **OFF** and turn **ON** the ignition switch.

If these reviews don't get starting the engine, immediately contact an authorized Volvo service center to request the assistance and rescue on highway service.
For more information, see the following section on this manual: “Assistance and rescue on highway”, page 146.

Punctures

There are several safety requirements that need to be considered in the event of a punctured tire.
For detailed information concerning wheel changing, see separate operating instructions: “Wheel replacement and towing”.

Punctured air bellows

If any of the vehicle’s air bellows are punctured, further driving should be avoided. The preferred alternative is to replace the bellow at the current location or the vehicle should be towed to the nearest Volvo work shop.
Only if other options are judged not feasible, the vehicle shall be driven. In such case, the speed must be reduced to maximum **12 mph (20 km/h)** and during approximate **0,5 hour (30 minutes)** in order to avoid consequential faults or park the bus in a safe place out of the way and stop the engine and immediately contact an authorized nearest Volvo service center to request the assistance and rescue on highway service (see the following section on this manual: “Assistance and rescue on highway”, page 146).
For information about changing air bellows, see separate operating instructions: “Replacing wheels and bellows”.

Towing

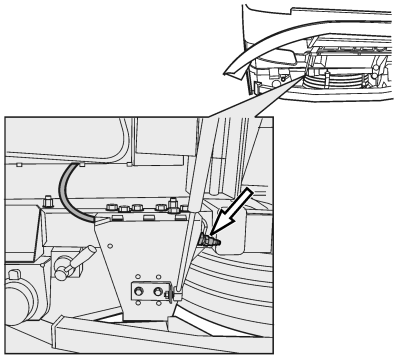
The bus has for attaching a front and a rear drag points, see the accompanying illustration for the general location. For all long distance towing, assure that the tow vehicle has the necessary equipment to reach the front axle, per bus specifications, to refer see the following section on this manual: “Technical data”, page 203.

Towing or moving the bus for short distances can also be performed using a towing rod or bar, refer to the accompanying illustrations for attaching points location.

It may be necessary for the tow vehicle to attach an air supply to the bus during towing. To perform the towing its necessary use a bar of drag to tow and deploy it to the corresponding drag point (either to the front or back), release mechanically the parking brake and mechanically disconnect the transmission (either by removing the axle shaft or the main drive shafts to the drive wheels).

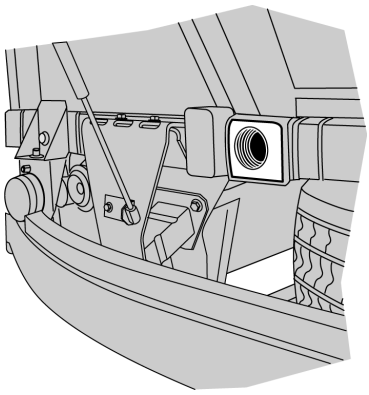
Towing requires either the drive shaft or both drive shafts to be removed, because otherwise the transmission may be damaged due to insufficient lubrication.

For more information about the transmission care in the towing process (for buses equipment with the Volvo I-Shift transmission), see separate operating instructions: “I-Shift”.



W1000252

Front air supply connection location.

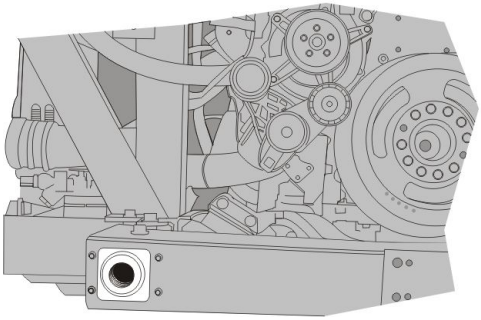


T8012390

Place for towing bar attachment (front).

Towing (continue)

During the preparations for the bus towing, pay attention and take care at all the time the mechanically parking brake release of the bus, because after that the bus may be not be stopped (with the service brake or parking brake). First block the drive wheels, or connect a drag bar in another vehicle, so that the bus will not be able to start moving after you have released the parking brake. After mechanically releasing the parking brake, the bus cannot be braked either with the main brake or with the parking brake. Block the wheels or connect to the tow vehicle, so that the bus cannot start moving after the parking brake has been released.



Place for towing bar attachment (rear).

Note: TCS should be turned off if one of the axles is raised during towing and for, punctures, the tire must be repaired before towing begins.

⚠ CAUTION

Failure to disconnect the drive shaft, remove the drive axle shaft(s) or lift the drive wheels off the ground before towing or pushing the vehicle, can cause serious transmission damage and void the transmission warranty.

Bus towing considerations

When you perform the bus towing, also consider the following indications:

- The hydraulic steering will not work during the vehicle towing due to the engine is not operating, so will be very difficult to steer the vehicle.
- A punctured or flat tire must be repaired before the vehicle towing.
- The connections for the drag bar are only to be used in the bus towing. Should not be used for other purpose.
- Bus conditioned with a low mounted coupling for trailer reduces the ground clearance. Make contact with the ground can cause damage to the bus!
- The TCS (traction control System) needs to be disabled if an axle is lifted during vehicle towing.

CAUTION

The towing requires that the axle shaft or both drive wheels main shafts are removed, otherwise the gearbox may be damaged due to insufficient lubrication.

Alternative towing procedure

Note: This procedure apply only for buses equipped with I-Shift AMT-D (Automatized Manual Transmission) and have the management software that include the alternative towing function.

If can not follow the bus standard towing procedure due to road conditions or any other circumstances, the I-Shift transmission provides an alternative function to bus towing which will allow it to tow the bus without axle drive shafts or drive wheels main shafts removals regardless of the distance that the vehicle needs to travel during the towing. For the alternative towing procedure can take place, you must engage the **3 HR** speed in the transmission; for this it to be possible you must meet certain conditions, follow the alternative towing procedure described at the next page.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not replace the towing standard procedure, this procedure does not have any indicator, if any of the steps below are not fulfilled a transmission damage may be occur.

Alternative towing procedure (continue)

Bus alternative towing procedure:

- The gear selector lever or the gear selector pad must be in neutral (**N**) position. For more information, see separate operating instructions: “I-Shift”.
- Engine is not running.
- There must be enough air pressure to the gearbox servo mechanism (minimum **4 bar / 58 psi**).
- The vehicle must have enough electrical power in the batteries.
- The ignition key must be in “ON” position.
- Vehicle must be towed forward.

CAUTION

Reverse towing is not allowed when such towing alternative procedure applied. Reverse towing can damage the gearbox.

Additional fire detection system (multiplexed)

T0012298

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with a fire detection multiplexed system in the engine bay, This system is multiplexed to the bus electrical architecture “BEA3”. When the presence of fire in the engine bay is detected, the warning lamp “STOP” in the dashboard will turn on at the same time will emitted an audible signal and a symbol appears in the driver display in the dashboard.
Park the bus off the road in a safe place, stop the engine and immediately contact to the assistance and rescue on highway service to the phone provided in the stick placed at the bottom right corner on the driver window (for more information, see the following section on this manual: “Assistance and rescue on highway”, page 146).
Also, for more information about additional Automatized Fire Extinguished System (AFES), see the following section in this manual: “Automatized Fire Extinguished System (AFES)”, page 92.

⚠ DANGER

When this warning is presented, park the bus off the road in a safe place and shut down the engine immediately! Failure to due so may be keep the radiator fan running which impels air into the engine bay and fans the fire. Failure to do so may be result in serious personal injury or death.

Releasing the parking brake

Release the parking brake with air from the bus tires

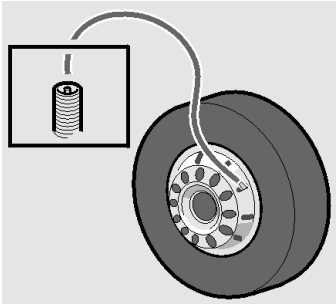
Only in a emergency case, you can use the bus tire or wheel air pressure to release the parking brake in case of being left without air pressure in the pneumatic system circuit.
To perform this, do the following:

1 Block the drive wheels or grip a drag bar to another vehicle in order to prevent the bus movement when the parking brake is release.

2 Connect the clamp head of the tire inflation hose to the valve of one of the wheels.

3 Move the parking brake control to the drive position (parking brake release, for more information see the following section on this manual: “Parking brake”, page 63).

4 While pressing the other end of the tire inflation hose against the pump nipple, press in the blocking valve. Now the brake system is filled with the air from the wheel. Filling can be interrupted as soon as the air flow stops.



T0009182

⚠ DANGER

Block the drive wheels to prevent the bus from moving when releasing the parking brake. Failure to do so may be result in serious personal injury or death.

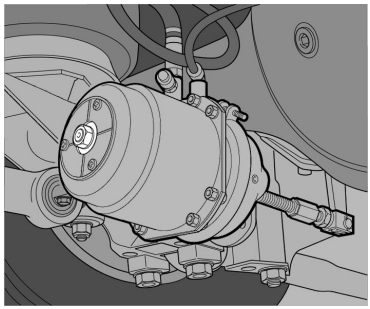
Parking brake mechanical releasing

To perform the bus towing procedure if there's no enough air pressure to release the parking brakes, these can be released mechanically.
To do this, proceed as follows:

1 Block the drive wheels or clamp a towing bar to another vehicle in order to prevent the vehicle to move when of releasing the parking brake.

2 In both drive shaft brake cylinders there are release bolts. Screw until you see out a red plastic button in the center of the screw, this the same in the other side, then the parking brakes are released. The full compression of the parking brake spring requires approximately **45 turns**, use the wrench, the socket and the fastener shank found in the tool box. Whenever possible try to fill with air the parking brake cylinders, this makes easier to turn the nuts of the release mechanism.

3 The bus can be towed when the parking brakes are fully released. Remember to make the bus towing must be done using the drag bar.
For more information about two available bus towing procedures, see the following sections on this manual: "Towing", page 151 or "Alternative towing procedure", page 154.



T5014634

Note: Do not forget to reset the bolts to their original position and attach the plastic cover after towing has been completed.

⚠ DANGER

Block the drive wheels to prevent the bus from moving when releasing the parking brake. Failure to do so may be result in serious personal injury or death.

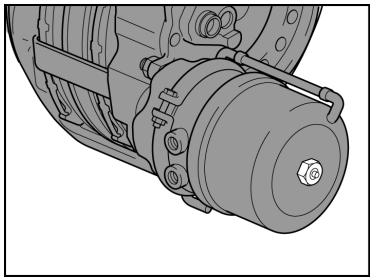
Parking brake on disc brakes mechanical releasing

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped in all axles with disc brakes, which in the drive axle can be mechanically released if there's no enough air pressure to release the parking brakes.
To do this, proceed as follows:

1 Block the drive wheels or clamp a towing bar to another vehicle in order to prevent the vehicle movement when releasing the parking brake.

2 In the disk brakes set for the drive wheels, both brake cylinders are equipped with a release screw, screw until you see out a red plastic button in the center of the screw, do this in the other brake cylinder side, then the parking brakes are released. The full compression of the parking brake spring requires approximately **45 turns**, use the wrench, the socket and the fastener shank found in the tool box. Whenever possible try to fill with air the parking brake cylinders, this makes easier to turn the nuts of the release mechanism.

3 The bus can be towed when the parking brakes are fully released. Remember to make the bus towing must be done using the drag bar.
For more information about two available bus towing procedures, see the following sections on this manual: "Towing", page 151 or "Alternative towing procedure", page 154.



T5014635

Note: Do not forget to reset the bolts to their original position and attach the plastic cover after towing has been completed.

⚠ DANGER

Block the drive wheels to prevent the bus from moving when releasing the parking brake. Failure to do so may be result in serious personal injury or death.

Change the batteries

When changing the batteries, both batteries should have the same capacity and be of the same age. When connecting batteries correct polarity must be observed (to refer about correct batteries polarity, see the following section in this manual: “Starting assistance”, page 162).
To change a battery, proceed as follows:

1 Turn **OFF** the power supply with the ignition switch located in the left side of the steering wheel column (see the following section on this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47).

2 Open the batteries compartment hatch (*Right or left hand side*)

Note: Use the proper key to open, see the following section in this manual: “Keys”, page 2.

.

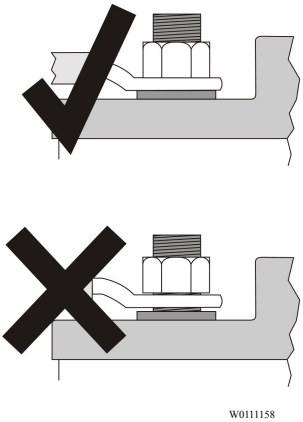
3 Turn **OFF** the total power supply through by the batteries *cut-off switch* (“General switch)”.
As a reference, see the following section in this manual: “Batteries cut-off switch”, page 166.

4 Disconnect the cable terminal from the battery negative pole.

5 Disconnect the cable terminal from the battery positive pole.

6 Change the battery or batteries.

7 Clean the cable terminals and both poles of the battery or batteries.



Upper: Mounted properly, the terminal firmly tighten to the battery post.
Lower: Improperly mounted, the terminal doesn´t tighten to the battery post.

Change the batteries (continue)

8 — Connect the positive cable terminal to the battery pole (tighten firmly).

9 — Connect the negative cable terminal to the battery pole (tighten firmly).

10 — Apply an anti-corrosive agent to the poles with terminals.

11 — Turn **ON** the batteries power supply through by the batteries *cut-off switch* ("General switch)".
As a reference, see the following section in this manual: "Batteries cut-off switch", page 166.

12 — Turn **ON** the power supply with the ignition switch (to refer the ignition switch positions, see the following section on this manual: "Ignition switch", page 47).

13 — Close the batteries compartment hatches (*Right or left hand side*).

For more information about care and bus batteries handle, see separate operating instructions: "I-Start" .

Note: When you connect the cable terminals to the battery posts, should be tightened firmly, in order to avoid a false contact and cause cables overheating.

CAUTION

Incorrect batteries polarity connection will seriously damage the electrical system.

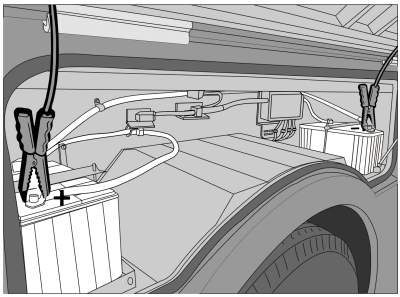
WARNING

If a cable clamp has been incorrectly installed (seated), the battery terminal must be reamed to give a sufficiently large mating surface when correctly installed (seated). Incorrect installation entails a high risk of oxidation in the space between the top of the battery terminal and the battery cable clamp.

Starting assistance

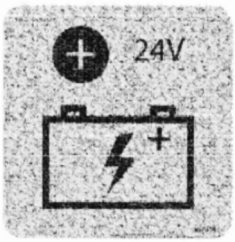
In the event that the batteries are unable to start the engine, auxiliary batteries can be used to help in starting. These batteries are connected in parallel with the ordinary bus batteries.
For more information about the auxiliary batteries connection to the electrical system bus, see separate operating instructions: “I-Start”.
For connect the batteries in case of starting assistance, proceed as follows:

Note: The batteries polarity is indicated by decals on both batteries compartments.
Note the polarity plus to plus and minus to minus. It is important to handle the battery in a suitable environment, contact a Volvo dealer when discarding or storing batteries.



W0101443

Jump start.



W0111075

Positive pole polarity decal.

W0111076

Ground pole polarity decal.

Jump start batteries procedure

For jump start batteries, proceed as follows:

1 Place the ignition switch in **0** position.

2 Make sure the auxiliary batteries have **24 V** total voltage or **24 V** voltage on the system.

3 Turn **OFF** the engine on the “assistance vehicle” and make sure the vehicle do not touch each other.

4 Open the right hand side batteries compartment hatch.

5 Connect one of the red cable clamps to the positive terminal of the auxiliary battery. The positive terminal is marked in red, **P** or +.

6 Connect the other red cable clamp to the positive terminal in the bus battery. The positive terminal is marked in red, **P** or +.

7 Connect one of the black cable clamps to the negative terminal of the auxiliary battery marked in blue, **N** or **-**.

8 Connect the other black cable clamp to a ground stud for jump start placed inside to the right hand side batteries compartment.

9 Run the engine of the “assisting vehicle”. Let the engine run for about **1 minute**, at approximately **1000 rpm**.

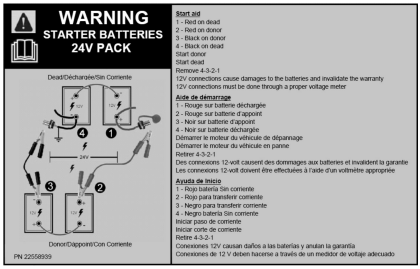
10 Start the engine of the other vehicle.

11 Remove the clamp on the black cable from the ground terminal.

12 Remove the clamp on the black cable from the negative terminal on the auxiliary battery.

13 Remove the red cable.

14 Close the right hand side batteries compartment hatch.



W0111077

Batteries jump start instructions decal.

Note: To refer about the ground stud for batteries jump start, see the following section in this manual: “Ground stud for jump start batteries”, page 165.
For batteries polarity identification, see the polarity decals placed into the batteries compartments.

In the backside of the right hand side batteries compartment hatch there is a decal with instructions for jump start in three languages.

Jump start batteries procedure warnings

CAUTION

Make sure the cable clamps are firmly fixed to the battery poles to avoid risk of sparks and resulting explosion.

CAUTION

Battery chargers with a start boost feature must not be used for starting assistance. Failure to do so may be cause damage to the electrical system.

CAUTION

Do not touch the auxiliary batteries cables or the terminals while starting the engine (risk of sparkles).
Do not lean over the batteries.

WARNING

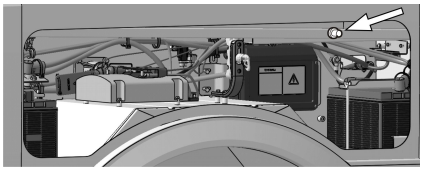
Do not connect auxiliary battery rechargers to start the vehicle, since they operate at high voltage and can damage the electronic control units (ECU's).
Always use another vehicle or other batteries to assist in jump-starting the engine.

DANGER

Batteries contain sulfuric acid (which is corrosive and toxic) that can cause severe burning. If the acid contacts eyes, skin or clothes, flush with abundant water. If the acid spills on the eyes, visit a doctor immediately. Do not lean on or stand on the batteries.

Ground stud for jump start batteries

Inside of the right hand side batteries compartment, a stud for batteries jump start was placed at the right on the top of the batteries compartment frame.
One ground indication decal is placed next to the stud.



W0111078

Ground stud for batteries jump start location in the right hand side batteries compartment.

W0111076

Ground stud indication decal.

Batteries cut-off switch

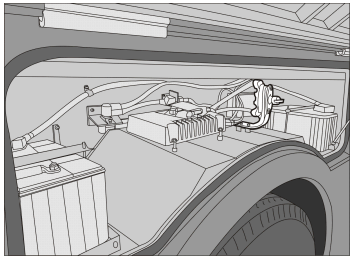
Also called “General switch”, is located into the right side batteries compartment and is there to completely cut off the bus power supply. To prevent battery discharge when the bus is standing for **24 hours** or more, turn **OFF** the battery cut-off switch to the **0** or **OFF** position.
For more information about to the batteries power supply and the general switch function, see separate operating instructions: “I-Start”.

Note: After using the battery cut-off switch and to avoid the vehicle’s equipment may loose memory functions. For example: the radio code or trigger fault codes recordings due a lack of power to the control units.
The **B+** power supply is taken directly from the I-Start consumer batteries and is not disconnected by the batteries cut-off switch. This was intended especially to keep clock and radio memory when is necessary to turn **OFF** the batteries cut-off switch.

To refer the I-Start system in this manual, see the following section: “I-Start system”, page 134.
For more information related to the I-Start system, see separate operating instructions: “I-Start”.

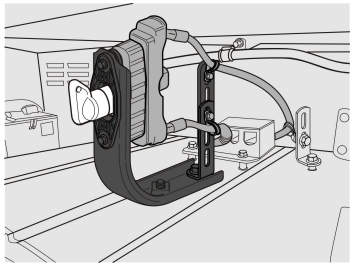
CAUTION

Always switch **OFF** the power with the cut-off switch when charging the batteries and when connecting an auxiliary batteries to start the engine.
Before using the battery cut-off switch, the power must always be switched **OFF** using the ignition key at the right side of the wheel steering column in position **O** (to refer the ignition key positions, see the following section in this manual: “Ignition switch”, page 47).
Failure to do so may cause damage to the electrical system.



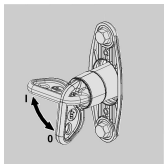
W0100418

Batteries cut-off switch location.(right side batteries compartment).



W0108406

Batteries cut-off switch knob.



T0076655

Battery cut-off switch positions:
Position I: Connected.
Position 0: Disconnected.

Operation of the SCR (Selective Catalyst Reduction) system

When the engine is **OFF**, the SCR injection system continues working to clear Diesel Emission Fluid (DEF) from the injector and supply tubes. This process takes approximately **90 seconds**.

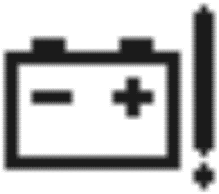
CAUTION

Wait at least **5 minutes** after shutting **OFF** the engine to turn **OFF** the main switch (by ignition key in position **0**) so that the cleaning process can be completed. Otherwise, the Diesel Emission Fluid (DEF) in the SCR system can freeze at low temperatures.

For more information, see separate operating instructions: “Exhaust Aftertreatment System (EATS)”.

I-Start system failure detection

The I-Start system continuously perform an operating status auto-diagnostics using the MCM *(Master Control Module)* to check the wiring harness status, batteries temperature, batteries voltage level, ARMS *(Automatic Reset Main Switch)* operation and other I-Start system operating issues.
If a fault or faults are detected, these will be shown in the driver´s information display located in the cluster of the instrument panel by a symbols and informative or warning messages.
To learn more about these symbols and diagnostic messages displayed in the driver´s information display; see separate operating instructions: “Driver´s information display”.



T3113158

I-Start failure symbol showed in the driver´s information display.

Bulb replacement

Headlamps

Headlamp bulb replacement

For headlamp bulb replacement (right or left side), must do the following:

1 Lift the front bumper.

2 Loosen the securing screws (**A**) and (**B**), delicately lower the lamp module and tilt it open.

3 Disconnect power supply cables.

4 Remove the bulb(s).

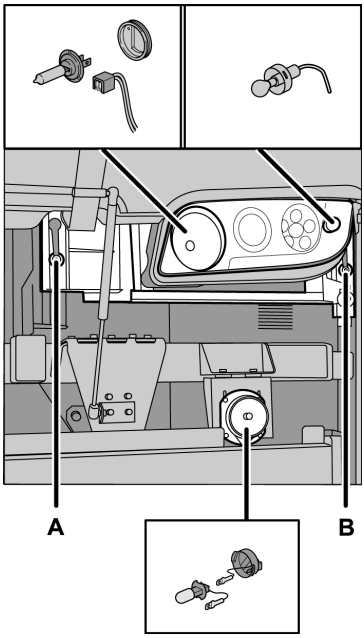
5 Replace the bulb(s) as required.

6 Check the proper operation of the lights.

7 Install the lamp module.

8 Close the front bumper.

Note: Replace it with a new bulb of **24 V**, the same type and power rating (see the bulb part number in the following section in this manual: “Bulbs for lighting lamps”, page 205).



T8012393

Xenon lights

⚠ DANGER

Xenon lights should only be serviced at an authorized service facility.
Never try to repair the lights on your own. Ignition voltage in xenon bulbs is **28,000 V**. Servicing these lights without the necessary knowledge and service information may be result in serious personal injury or death.

Rear lights

Tail lamp replacement

For tail lamp replacement (right or left side), must do the following:

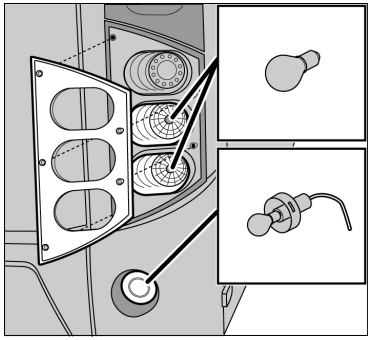
1 Unscrew the five cover fixing screws in the tail lamp.

2 Replace the lamps(s) as required.

3 Check the proper operation of the tail lamps.

4 Assembly the tail lamp set.

Note: Make sure that the lamp is replaced with a new lamp of **24 V**, the same type and power rating (see the lamp part number in the following section on this manual: “Bulbs for lighting lamps”, page 205).



T3019941

License plate lighting

License plate lighting lamp replacement

Replace the license plate lamp as follows:

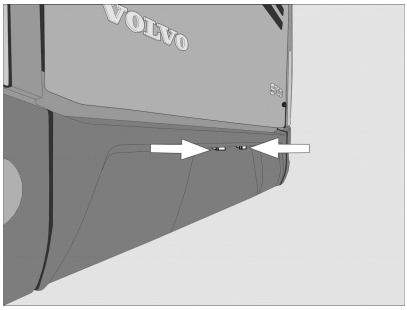
1 Unscrew the cover fixing screws of the lamp.

2 Replace the lamps(s) as required.

3 Check for proper operation.

4 Assembly the lamp set.

Note: Make sure that the lamp is replaced with a new lamp of **24 V**, the same type and power rating (see the lamp part number in the following section on this manual: “Bulbs for lighting lamps”, page 205).



W0089795

Electrical fault general lookup

The first step to take when troubleshooting the electrical system is to check the fuses in the bus electrical center and check the messages displayed by the On-Board Diagnostic (OBD) system.
A burnt-out fuse can be seen with the eye. In this case, remove the fuse from the fuse holder and replace it. If the same fuse burns repeatedly, the bus should be contact to a Prevost or Volvo authorized dealer to have the electrical system repaired.

WARNING

Never replace fuses with higher capacity fuses or with metal elements like wires, coins, etc.

Bus electrical center

W0089803

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with an electrical center where install the protect fuses and relays to the chassis and body electric circuits.
This electrical center is located at the front right of the bus, next to the entrance stairs and under to the partition wall.

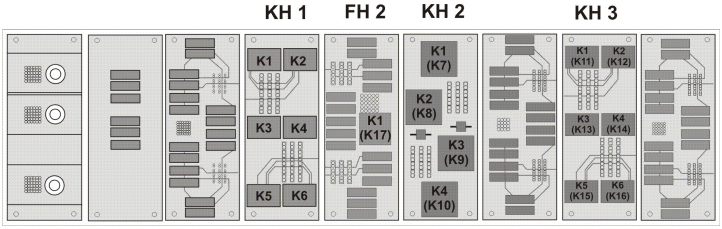
Note: At the back side of the electrical center hatch, is stuck a label which has the description of each relay and fuse installed in the power load center to the chassis electrical circuits.
Similarly, for the fuse and relay box corresponding to the body electrical circuits, is stuck a label at the box lid back side which indicates the description of each fuse and relay installed inside the box.
Also the description for each symbol must be checked in this manual.
The label for the chassis electrical circuits on the electrical distribution unit only uses symbols for identification.

WARNING

The relays in the electrical distribution unit that have this symbol next to them are mandatory for vehicle operation. Do not use the relays to replace other faulty relays.

Chassis electric circuit relays

This electrical distribution unit is located in the bus electrical center, which is installed at the left side and beside of the service door.



The relays numbering its according to the circuit board position and into the parenthesis the equivalent position printed on the electrical distribute unit labels.

Relays “KH1 section”					
K1 [1]	——	Not in use.	K2		Over load indicator.
K3		ECS (Electronic Control Suspension).	K4		Transmission “I-Shift” .
K5 [1]	——	Not in use.	K6 [2] [1]	——	Not in use.

1 Depends on version.

2 12 V Relay only.

Note:

The relays numbering positions in the circuit board are equal with the relays positions printed on the electrical distribute unit labels.

Chassis electric circuit relays (continue)

Relays “KH2 section”					
K1 (*K7*)		Start engine.	K2 (*K8*)[1]		VECU (Vehicle Electronic Control Unit). EMS (Engine Management System).
K3 (*K9*)[1]		Wiper motor. Washer.	K4 (*K10*) [1]	— —	Not in use.

1 Depends on version.

Relays “KH3 section”					
K1 (*K11*)		Prevent start engine.	K2 (*K12*)		Luggage compartment lighting.
K3 (*K13*)		Emergency switch relay.	K4 (*K14*) [1]	SPARE	Spare.
K5 (*K15*) [1]	SPARE	Spare.	K6 (*K16*) [1]	SPARE	Spare.

1 Depends on version.

Relays “FH2 section”		
K1 (*K17*)		Ignition “+ 15”.

Note:
The relays numbering match as follows:
Circuit board position / (label position).

Other chassis electric circuit relays

Chassis electric circuit relays located outside from the bus electrical center.

Relays chassis					
K35[1]		Relay disconnect headlight wash.	K48[2]		Relay engine preheating.
K53[3]		Relay starter key .	K79 [4]		Prevent star relay.
K300[3]		I-Start main relay.	K400[5]	BODY +30	I-Start +30 Relay (Body builder).
K911[6]		Relay DRL front lights.	K918[3]		Relay for Allison gear selector ECU, I-Shift TECU, Aftertreatment NOX sensors, Relay 12 V EMS2 (Engine Management System, version 2), Solenoid valve AVU, engine breake / EPG.
K919[3]		Allison Gear selector ECU, Allison control module, power supply relay. Relay 12 V IVS.			

1 Depends on version.

2 Located inside of the under floor rear compartment at the back side of the passengers compartment.

3 Located inside of the right hand side batteries box.

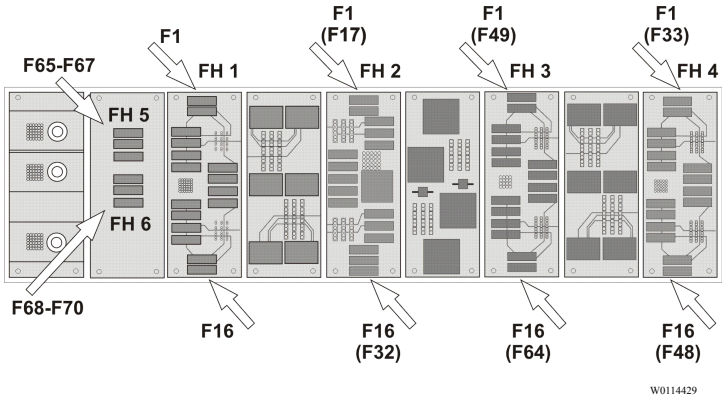
4 Located inside of the engine compartment.

5 Located inside of the left hand side batteries box.

6 Located inside in the electric center.

Chassis electric circuit fuses

This electrical distribution unit is located in the bus electrical center, which is installed at the left side and beside of the service door.



The fuses numbering its according to the circuit board position and into the parenthesis the equivalent printed on the electrical distribute unit labels.

Chassis electric circuit fuses (continue)

Fuses “FH1 section”							
F1	5A		Electronic Control Suspension (ECS).	F2	10A		Instrument Cluster (IC08).
F3 [1]	15A	— —	Not in use.	F4[1]	20A		Electronic Brake System (EBS). Anti lock Brake System (ABS).
F5	5A		Horn.	F6 [1]	5A	— —	Not in use.
F7[1]	15A		Allison transmission control module. Transmission Electronic Control Unit (TECU) I-Shift.	F8 [1]	5A		Gear Electronic Control Unit (GECU) Gear lever selector.
F9	5A		Engine bay control panel to “start / stop”.	F10	5A		Fire alarm.
F11[1]	10A	FMS	TGW II (Telematics Gate Way) control unit. Dynafleet. Fleet Management System (FMS).	F12	5A	BODY +30	Body Builder (BB) Body + 30.
F13 [1]	10A		K919 relay (*12V IVS*) protection used to Allison transmission control module and Allison transmission shifter circuits.	F14	5A	BBM	Body Builder Module (BBM).
F15 [1]	15A		Fuel cut-off valve front axle. K918 relay (*12V EMS2*) protection used to FH1 12V fuse holder supply. Vehicle interface chassis (VIC) control module. K48 relay (*engine preheating or EST-AID*) Solenoid valve AHI. K53 relay protection used to consumer circuits supply.	F16	5A	VECU	Vehicle Electronic Control Unit (VECU).

1 Depends on version.

Note:
The fuses numbering positions in the circuit board are equal with the fuses positions printed on the electrical distribute unit labels.

Chassis electric circuit fuses (continue)

Fuses “FH2 section”							
F1 (*F17*) [1]	5A		Switch leveling feed. Switch retarder. Main lights switch, selector type. Traction Control System (TCS) switch. TGW II (Telematics Gate Way) control unit. Brake hold switch. Differential gear lock rear wheels switch. Dependant ride height switch.	F2 (*F18*)	5A		Alternator (s).
F3 (*F19*) [1]	10A		K7 relay protection used to start engine circuit. Vehicle Electronic Control Unit (VECU). Light Control Module (LCM).	F4 (*F20*)[1]	10A	ABS	Electronic Brake System (EBS). Anti lock Brake System (ABS).
F5 (*F21*) [1]	15A		Wipers and washer windscreen. K9 relay protection used to wiper/washer circuit.	F6 (*F22*) [1]	10A		Gear selector pad or lever (I-Shift transmission).
F7 (*F23*)[1]	5A	FMS	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC). Fleet Management System (FMS) control module.	F8 (*F24*) [1]	5A		Instrument Cluster (IC08). OBD (On Board Diagnostic) connector.
F9 (*F25*)	15A		K35 relay (*disconn headlight wash*) protection used to washer motor circuit.	F10 (*F26*)	5A		Electronic Control Suspension (ECS) module.
F11 (*F27*)[1]	10A	——	Not in use.	F12 (*F28*) [1]	10A		Gear Electronic Control Unit (GECU) module for I-Shift transmission.
F13 (*F29*)	5A	BODY +DR	Body Bulder + DR (ignition key switch).	F14 (*F30*)[1]	20A	ABS	Electronic Brake System (EBS); Signal not in use.
F15 (*F31*)[1]	10A		Hydraulic oil level sensor. Hydraulic level sensor 2. DEF (Diesel Emission Fluid) control module.	F16 (*F32*) [1]	5A		Tacograph. (for 9700 US/CAN *cross-boarder* version ONLY).

1 Depends on version.

Note: The fuses numbering match as follows:
Circuit board position / (label position).

Chassis electric circuit fuses (continue)

Fuses “FH3 section”							
F1 (*F49*) [1]	5A	— —	Not in use.	F2 (*F50*)[1]	10A	— —	Not in use.
F3 (*F51*)	5A		Voltage converter.	F4 (*F52*)	10A		K12 relay protection used in luggage compartment lights.
F5 (*F53*)[1]	10A		Bogie control valve. K14 relay protection used to Hydraulic oil flow sensor switch and Steerable axle bogie solenoid valve.	F6 (*F54*)[1]	5A		Body Builder (BB) harnesses to Luggage compartment hatches. and engine compartment hatch.
F7 (*F55*)[1]	10A	VIC	Vehicle Interface Chassis (VIC) module. Solenoid valve AHI.	F8 (*F56*) [1]	10A	VIC	Vehicle Interface Chassis (VIC) module. K53 relay protection used to consumer circuits supply.
F9 (*F57*) [1]	5A		Key switch. K13 relay protection used to emergency switch relay, switch starter key, switch starter feed circuits. K11 relay protection used to prevent start engine circuit.	F10 (*F58*)	5A	BIO	BIO (Bus Intakes — Outs) control module.
F11 (*F59*)[1]	10A	BIO	BIO (Bus Intakes — Outs) control module.	F12 (*F60*)[1]	10A		Sensor foot brake valve. I-Shift lever.
F13 (*F61*)[1]	10A		Light. Luggage room. Body Builder (BB) harness.	F14 (*F62*) [1]	20A		K911 relay protection used to DRL lights circuit. Voltage converter (Bi-xenon). Light sleeping compartment. (for 9700 US/CAN *cross-boarder* version ONLY).
F15 (*F63*)[1]	5A		Overload indicator (Not in use).	F16 (*F64*)	10A		Load indicator.

1 Depends on version.

Note: The fuses numbering match as follows:
Circuit board position / (label position).

Chassis electric circuit fuses (continue)

Fuses "FH4 section"							
F1 (*F33*)	5A		Instrument Cluster (IC08).	F2 (*F34*) [1]	5A		Instrument Cluster (IC08).
F3 (*F35*)	25A		Lighting Control Module (LCM).	F4 (*F36*)	25A		Lighting Control Module (LCM).
F5 (*F37*)	25A		Lighting Control Module (LCM).	F6 (*F38*)[1]	—	SPARE	Spare.
F7 (*F39*)[1]	25A		After treatment Control Module (ACM).	F8 (*F40*) [1]	—	SPARE	Spare.
F9 (*F41*)	20A		Voltage converter.	F10 (*F42*)[1]	5A		Emergency *cut-out* switch.
F11 (*F43*)[1]	—	SPARE	Spare.	F12 (*F44*)	25A		Lighting Control Module (LCM).
F13 (*F45*)	25A		Lighting Control Module (LCM).	F14 (*F46*)	25A		Lighting Control Module (LCM).
F15 (*F47*)	5A		Left side marker lights.	F16 (*F48*)	5A		Right side marker lights.

1 Depends on version.

Note: The fuses numbering match as follows:
Circuit board position / (label position).

Chassis electric circuit fuses (continue)

Fuses “FH5 section”							
F65 [1]	30A	BODY +30	+30 Feed “A” (Not in use).	F66 [1]	15A	BODY +30	+30 Feed “B” (Not in use).
F67 [1]	—	SPARE	Spare.				

1 Depends on version.

Fuses “FH6 section”							
F68 [1]	30A	B+	B+ Feed “B” (Not in use).	F69 [1]	—	SPARE	Spare.
F70 [1]	—	SPARE	Spare.				

1 Depends on version.

Note:
The fuses numbering match according to the position printed on the electrical distribute unit labels.

Other chassis electric circuit fuses

Chassis electric circuit fuses located outside from the bus electrical center.

Fuses chassis							
F76[1]	80A		12V Equalizer.	F77[1]	40A		24V Equalizer,
F99[1]	15A		Allison transmission control module +30 power supply.	F100[1]	10A		ODB (On Board Diagnostic) connection to B+.
F206[2]	5A		External pre-heater.	F907[3]	20A		12V I-Shift.
F915[3]	30A	EMS	12V EMS2 (Engine Management System).	F955[3]	20A	EMS	12V EMS (Engine Management System) Act.
F956[3]	10A		12V Fuel pump.	F957[3]	20A		12V Cool fan.
F958[3]	10A		12V Allison transmission, gear box and OBD diagnostic connector.				

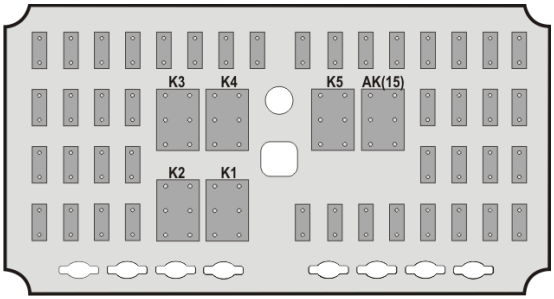
1 Located inside of the right hand side batteries box.

2 Located inside of the rear fuse box installed in the engine compartment (VPDUR; Volvo Power Distribute Unit Rear).

3 Located inside of the right hand side batteries box (on FH1; Fuse Holder board 1).

Body electric circuit relays

This electrical distribution unit is located in the bus electrical center, which is installed at the left side and beside of the service door.



T8059319

Body relays					
AK (15)	BODY +15	Loads +15.	K3		Defroster speed 2.
K1		Over speed control 59 mph (95 km/h).	K4		Defroster speed 3.
K2		Defroster speed 1.	K5[1]		Free relay. Night light.

1 Depends on version.

Other body electric circuit relays

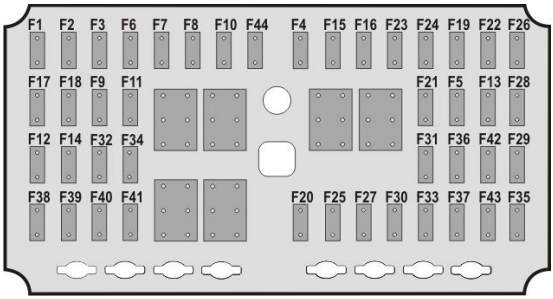
Body electric circuit relays located inside the bus electrical center.

Other body relays					
K910[1]		KIDDE protection panel (Automatized Fire Extinguished System, AFES).	K911[1]		Audio & video on demand.
K912[1]	PsI	Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) relay.			

1 Located inside in the electric center.

Body electric circuit fuses

This electrical distribution unit is located in the bus electrical center, which is installed at the left side and beside of the service door.



T8058916

Body fuses							
F1	3A	BODY +30	Feed +30 service kit.	F7	5A	BIO	Climate unit I/O A module.
F2[1]	5A		Bosch entertainment system. DRL (Day Run Lights).	F8[1]	15A		Defroster flap.
F3	20A		Audio & Video 12V.	F9	5A		Red led switches.
F4	30A		Feed relay K5.	F10	20A		Defroster.
F5	30A	BIO	Floor I/O B module.	F11	30A	BIO	Floor left 2 I/O B module.
F6	5A	BIO	Climate I/O A module.	F12[1]	7.5A		Innova control. MCM (Master Control Module) feed.

1 Depends on version.

Body electric circuit fuses (continue)

Body fuses (body electric circuits, continue)							
F13[1]	7.5A	BIO	Left & middle toilet I/O B module.	F22	15A	B+	+B feed MCM.
	15A		AFES (Automatized Fire Extinguished System).				
F14	20A		Electric window.	F23	5A		Light under seats.
F15	30A		Wheel Chair Lift (WCL).	F24	5A	BIO	Middle door I/O A module.
F16	30A	BIO	Roof left I/O B module.	F25	5A		Webasto timer 3.
F17	5A		Webasto timer 2.	F26	5A	BIO	Dashboard I/O A module.
F18	20A		Audio & Video 24 V.	F27	30A	VOLT	24V CD Output in driver side.
F19	7.5A	BIO	Toilet I/O B module.	F28	5A		Pressure switch.
F20[1]	15A		Dashboard converter. Cigarette lighter output.	F29[1]	3A		Copiloto. Volvo link.
F21[1]	5A		Copiloto. TD7. Wi — Fi.	F30	5A		Control panel air.

1 Depends on version.

Body electric circuit fuses (continue)

Body fuses (body electric circuits, continue)							
F31 [1]	3A	BODY +15	Feed +15 TD7.	F38	3A	VOLVO LINK	Volvo link.
F32[1]	5A	BODY +15	Innova (+15).	F39[1]	7.5A		Roof hatch front.
F33	15A		DRC Air conditioning.	F40[1]	7.5A		Roof hatch rear.
F34	20A		Audio & Video (+15).	F41	5A		Webasto timer 1.
F35	10A	P	Park pilot system.	F42	15A		Electrical blinder.
F36	5A	12:00	Time & temperature display.	F43	5A		Auxiliary heater.
F37	15A	PSI	TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System).	F44	15A		Feed over speed relay.

1 Depends on version.

Other body electric circuit fuses

Body electric circuit fuses located inside the bus electrical center.

Other body fuses			
F107[1]	40A		I-Start B+ supply from body electrical center (distribution box).

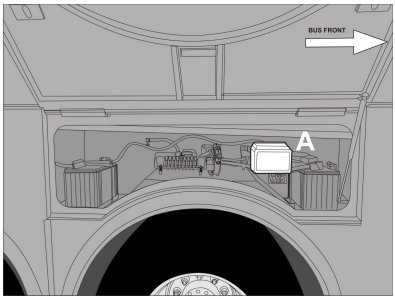
1 Located inside in the electric center.

Fuse boxes inside to the batteries compartments

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus is equipped with 2 fuses and relays electrical boxes mounted inside to the batteries compartments. This fuses and relays boxes are follows:

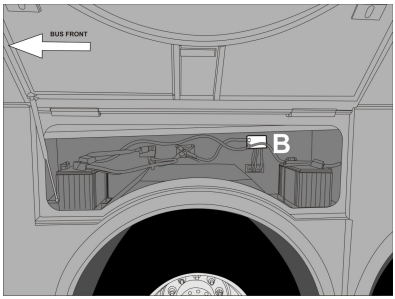
- (**A**) Chassis fuses and relays box, including protect elements for the “I-Start” system (for more information, see separate operating instructions: “I-Start”).
- (**B**) Mini fuse box holder for body builder equipment electrical distribution.

The fuse and relay box lid corresponding to “I-Start” system has a label in one of its sides, which; description provide for each relay and fuse are install.
In the information shown below, its provide the fuse and relay description installed in both electrical boxes for a quickly references guide.



W0111079

(**A**) Chassis fuses and relays box inside to the right hand side batteries compartment.

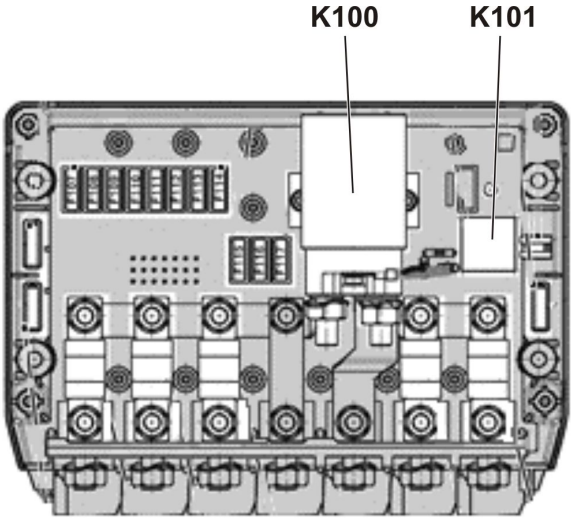


W0111080

(**B**) Mini fuse box holder inside to the left hand side batteries compartment.

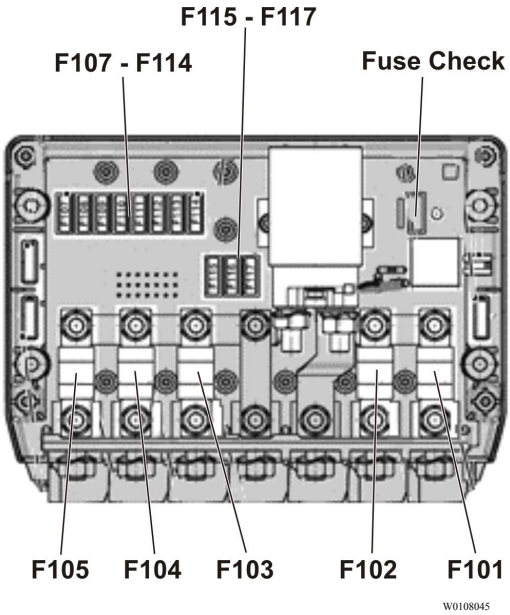
Fuses and relays electrical box inside to the right hand side batteries compartment

Relays in the electrical distribution box corresponding to the I-Start system



Relays in the electrical distribution box corresponding to the I-Start system					
K100		Main relay.	K101		Automatic Resetting Main Switch (ARMS).

Fuses in the electrical distribution box corresponding to the I-Start system



Fuses in the electrical distribution box corresponding to the I-Start system							
F101	150 A	B+	Chassis B+.	F102 [1]	100 A	B+	Chassis B+.
F103	150 A	+30	Chassis +30.	F104	150 A	G	Alternator B+.
F105[1]	200 A	G	Alternator B+.	F107	5 A	G	Alternator B+.

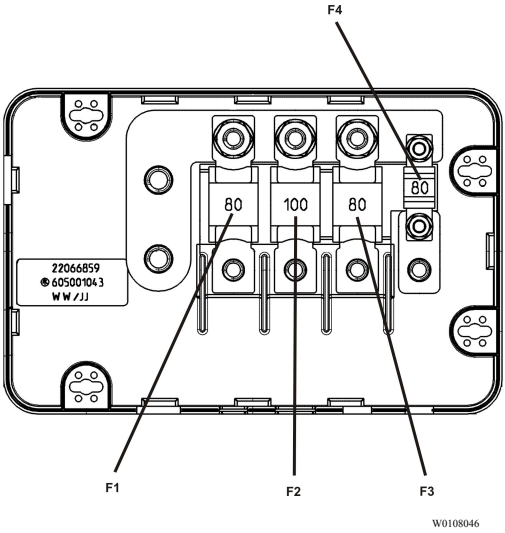
1 Fuse unused.

Fuses in the electrical distribution box corresponding to the I-Start system (continue)

Fuses in the electrical distribution box corresponding to the I-Start system							
F108[1]	10 A		Alternator B+.	F109	10 A		Alternator B+.
F110[1]	10 A		Alternator B+.	F111[1]	10 A		Alternator B+.
F112[1]	20 A		Chassis B+.	F113	10 A		Chassis B+.
F114	5 A		Chassis B+.	F115[1]	15 A		Chassis B+.
F116[1]	20 A		Chassis B+.	F117[1]	20 A		Chassis B+.

1 Fuse unused.

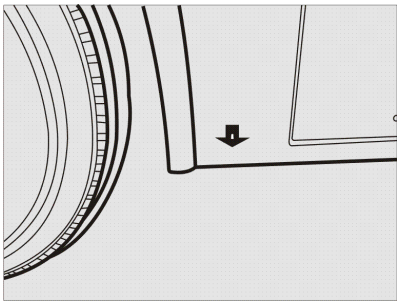
Mini fuse box holder inside to the left hand side batteries compartment



Mini fuse box holder							
F1	80A	BODY +30	Body electric center +30.	F2	100A		Inverter.
F3	80A		AC unit.	F4 (mini)	60A		Wheel Chair Lift (WCL).

Wheels replacement

All Volvo buses have a structural lift points (in both sides) for raise the bus and sustain it without a problem for change any punctured tire. These structural points are marked by a label stick on the bus in the exact location where the structural lift points are located on the bus. Only in this points, the hydraulic jack provided in the bus toolbox must be placed (see also the following section in this manual: “Hydraulic jack”, page 99).
For more information about cautions and wheel replacement procedure on the road, see separate operating instructions: “Wheels and air springs replacement”.

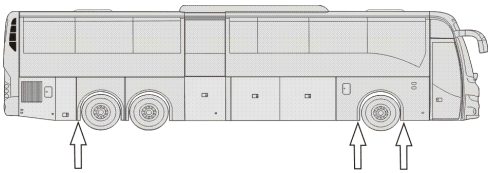


W0089967

Sticker to indicate the location of the bus structural lift points.

CAUTION

Place the hydraulic jack in a different marked body structure points. So may be a considerably bus body structure damaging risk.



W0089962

Structural lift points localization (symmetrically on both sides, 6x2 configuration).
Valid in models with Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) or without WCL.

Spare wheel

All Volvo buses feature with a wheel of a spare installed from the factory. For the case of the Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus the spare wheel is mounted in the front of the bus under the driving cab floor.
Do the following to access the mechanism that holds the spare wheel:

1 Get off the bus and open the front hatch.

2 Unhook the spare wheel clamping system.

3 Drop the spare wheel base support to the floor.

4 Pull the spare wheel to the outside.

5 Perform the spare wheel change.

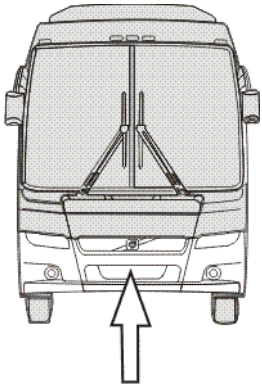
6 Install the punctured wheel in the spare wheel base support.

7 Lift the spare wheel base support and lock the clamping system.

8 Close the front hatch.

Note: You should periodically verify the proper spare wheel pressure inflation and so keep it always ready at any time for when it happens a contingency.

For more information about release or set up the spare wheel, see separate operating instructions: “Wheels and air bellows replacement”.



Spare wheel location in the bus.

Recommendations to avoid unnecessary tire wear

- Perform periodic inspections.
- Keep the correct air pressure, checking it against the load.

  Note: Always check the pressure with a cold tire.
- Wear increases with increasing speed.
- Do not overload the tires with an unevenly distributed load.
- Do not drive when the tires are unbalanced and with different pressures.
- Check the wheel toe periodically.
- Rotate the wheels regularly.
- Keep the tires free of rocks and other objects on the tread grooves.
- Do not allow the tires to contact solvents, fuels and mineral lubricants.

  Note: When mounting the tire on the rim, use only vegetal lubricant.

Recommended tire pressures

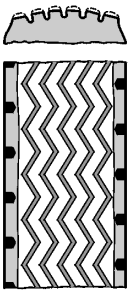
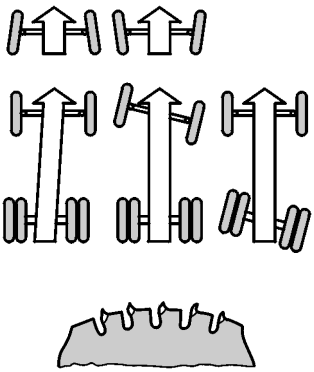
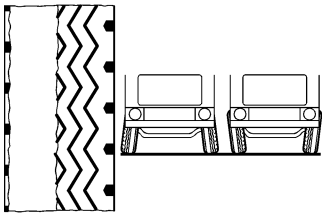
Always follow the tire manufacturer's recommendations. When this information is not available, you may temporarily use the tire pressures on the table below as a reference.

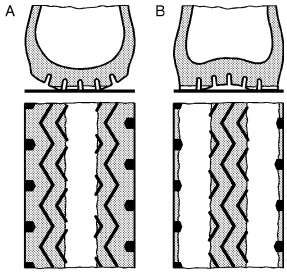
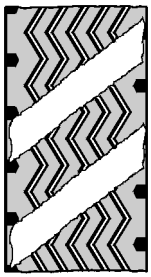
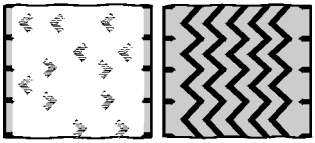
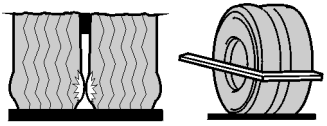
Note: The values in the table of tire pressures below come from (Latin American Tire and Rim Association).

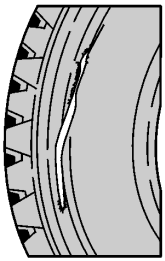
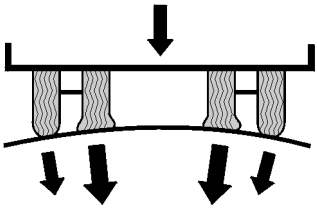
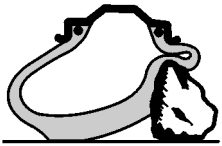
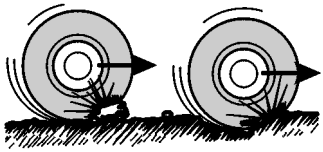
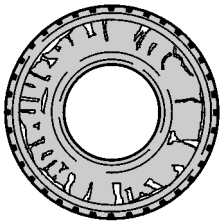
Tire / Measurement	Load Index		Inflation pressure - lb/pl² (bar)										
			75 (5,2)	80 (5,5)	85 (5,8)	90 (6,2)	95 (6,5)	100 (6,9)	105 (7,3)	110 (7,6)	115 (8,0)	120 (8,3)	125 (8,5)
			Load per tire in Kg										
315/80 R22,5	154 / 150	D	2300	2420	2540	2660	2780	2895	3010	3125	3240	3350	-
		S	2575	2710	2845	2980	3110	3240	3370	3500	3625	3750	-

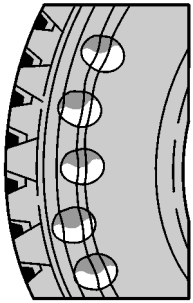
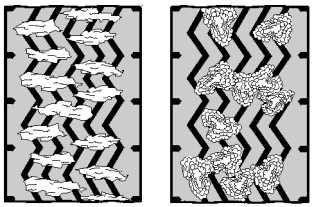
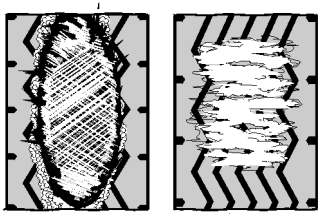
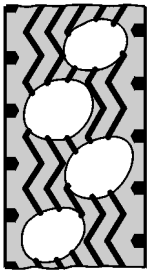
Check of tire wear

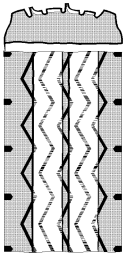
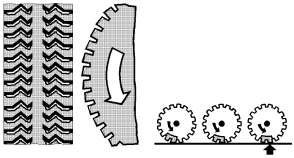
Check to make sure the tires are wearing normally.
Compare the wear with the figures, checking for various types of wear.

Symptoms	Probable cause	Illustration
Normal wear, fast.	1 Hill roads with many curves or poorly paved. 2 High ambient temperature. 3 Improper tire for the usage type. 4 Bad driving habits, specially incorrect use of the brakes and high speeds.	
Uneven wear, fast.	1 Incorrect parallelism of the front wheels. 2 Incorrect parallelism between axles. 3 Lack of regular inspections.	
Wear, one side.	1 Excessive positive or negative camber. 2 Excessive bending of the axle due to overload.	

Symptoms	Probable cause	Illustration
Central wear (**A**) and shoulders wear (**B**).	Incorrect pressure: A Pressure above recommendation. B Pressure below recommendation.	
Diagonal wear	1 Tire fluctuation. 2 Doubles poorly combined. 3 Erratic operation of the brakes. 4 Heavy loads (“distribution”). 5 Low air pressure or pressure difference between doubles. 6 Tire breakdowns.	
Fast wear in one of the double assembly tires.	1 Tires with different diameters. 2 Calibration. 3 Bent axle. 4 Overload.	
Wear due to friction between tires (“double assembly”).	1 Inappropriate pressures. 2 Wheels incorrectly centered. 3 Minimum spacing between tires outside the recommended. 4 Incorrect tires type.	

Symptoms	Probable cause	Illustration
Housing broken on the flank.	1 Underinflated tire. 2 Load unevenly distributed on the vehicle. 3 Incorrect double assembly (dimensions, different wears, etc). 4 Bulged roads. 5 Accidental cut.	 
Housing broken due to impacts.	1 Excessive pressure. 2 High speed over big obstacles. 3 Over-charging. 4 Suspension, spring and dampers problems. 5 Pinching by obstacle.	 
Tire driven while empty or with low pressure.	1 Tire tube failure. 2 Object penetration. 3 Small leakage.	

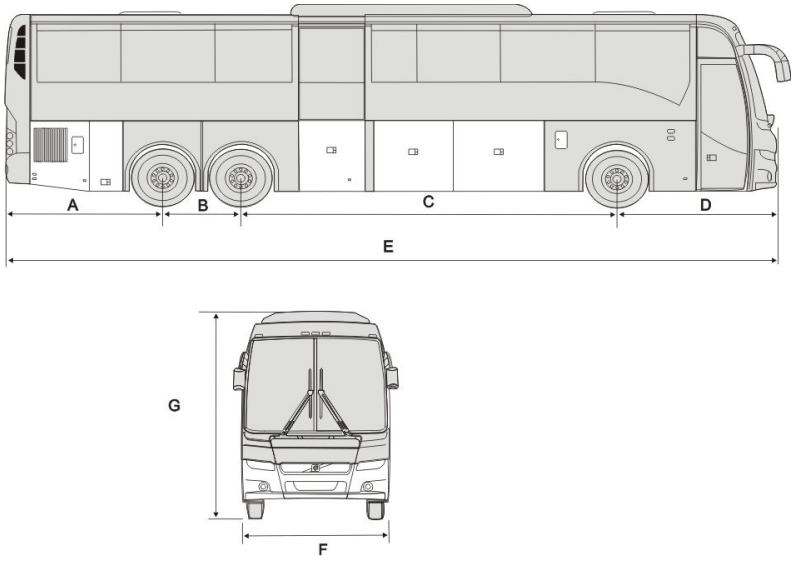
Symptoms	Probable cause	Illustration
Contamination of rubber.	1 Contact of the tire with fuel, lubricants, burnt oil, greases, etc.	
Multiple cuts.	1 Improper tire for the usage type. 2 Excessive pressure. 3 Gravel roads, poorly kept roads, job sites, mines, etc. 4 Excess of acceleration (“abusive usage”).	
Localized wear due to brakes.	1 New brakes not broke-in. 2 Abrupt braking. 3 Brake System unbalanced.	
Wear of wave, bubble, etc. type.	1 Incorrect assemblies. 2 Incorrect matching of double assemblies. 3 Anomalies on the fuel system operation. 4 Pressures too low or unbalanced pressure in double assembly tires. 5 Fatigued dampers and/or springs.	

Symptoms	Probable cause	Illustration
Longitudinal grooves.	1 Normal in non-drive wheels, good roads and long travels.	
Wear on the grooves edges (“tread”).	1 It is normal, depending on the size of the tread; wear increases with increased weight.	

General dimensions

9700 US/CAN (6x2 only)

General dimensions for Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus in 6X2 axle configuration only.
General dimensions valid too: “9700 US/CAN WCL; with Wheel Chair Lift” version.



General dimensions	
	3 axle (Only); 13.7 m
A	2,780 mm (109 in.)
B	1400 mm (55 in.)
C	6660 mm (262 in.)
D	2,850 mm (112 in.)
E	13,690 mm (539 in.)
F	2600 mm (102 in.)[1]
G	3671 mm (145 in.)[2]

1 The dimension doesn't consider the side-view mirrors.

2 The air conditioning equipment is considered.

Electrical system specifications

Voltage	24 V and 12 V (separately circuits).
Number of batteries	4
Connection to ground	Negative poles connected to the chassis.
Voltage (1 battery)	12 V
Capacity in 20 hours	105 Ah (consumer and starter batteries).
Electrolyte density	1.3 g/cm³ (charged).
	1.18 g/cm³ (half charged).
	1.09 g/cm³ (uncharged).
Alternator	150 A x 2
Starting Motor	5.6 kW (at +68 °F battery and wiring resistance 8 Ω).

Bulbs for lighting lamps

In the table below, its provide the bulbs for lighting lamps part numbers, when require the order to be replaced.

Light	Rated Power	Volvo P/N
Main beam.	70 W	990037
Dipped beam.	35 W	21008653
Direction indicator, front.	21 W	982558
Direction indicator, rear.	21 W	982558
Fog lamps, front.	70 W	943903
Rear direction indicator lamp (LED).	—	22393677
Reversing lamp (LED).	—	22393680
Central tail lamp (LED).	—	70324417
Rear fog lamps.	21 W	945091
License plate lamp (LED).	—	21135967
Directional side lamp (LED).	2.64 W	22273875
Navigation side light (amber colour).	1.2 W	22358184
Navigation side light (red colour).	1.2 W	22358181
Cockpit upper light.	—	21599992

Engine specifications

Type	D13M
Number of cylinders	6
Maximum wattage	324kW (435hp) at 1700 rpm
Max torque	2250 Nm (1650 lb – ft) at 1100 rpm
Cylinder displacement	781 in^3 (12.8 L)
Compression ratio	16:1
Injection sequence	1 - 5 - 3 - 6 - 2 - 4
Emissions regulation	EPA 17
Fasteners and threads	Metric.

Automatic and automatized gearbox specifications

Transmission ratios

Speed	Reductions, Volvo I-Shift AT2612D	Reductions, Allison 6B500[1]
1st	14,94:1	3,51:1
2nd	11,73:1	1,91:1
3rd	9,04:1	1,43:1
4th	7,09:1	1,00:1
5th	5,54:1	0.74:1
6th	4,35:1	0.64:1
7th	3,44:1	N.A.[2]
8th	2,70:1	N.A.
9th	2,08:1	N.A.
10th	1,63:1	N.A.
11th	1,27:1	N.A.
12th	1,00:1	N.A.
Reverse gear R1	17,48:1	4,80:1
Reverse gear R2	13,73:1	N.A.
Reverse gear R3	4,02:1	N.A.
Reverse gear R4	3,16:1	N.A.

1 Gear ratios do not include torque converter multiplication.

2 Not Apply.

Rear axle specifications

Designation	RS1228 C
Differential type	MS17X
Final drive/ratio	2,64:1
Number of teeth on differential (crown wheel/pinion)	45 / 17

Wheels and tires specifications

Wheels		Tires
Alloy disc wheels (with **DuraBrite™** finished).	9.00 x 22.5	315/80R22,5

Front wheels alignment specifications

Toe—in.	1 to 3 mm	
Caster.	+3° ± 0.25°	
Left driver's position vehicle:		
Camber.[1]	**LHS**	**RHS**
	+0.4°	–0.2°
King pin inclination.	5.75°	6,5°
Lock angle (°) left and right turn.	**Front axle ± 1,0°**	
	Inner wheel	**Outer wheel (not adjustable)**
	50	41.4
	Tag axle (steering) +1° / -2°	
	- - -	- - -

1 Tolerance for vehicles in service at kerb weight= ± 0.5°

Note: Measure with the vehicle empty.

Diesel Emission Fluid (DEF) tank specification

Capacity	60 L

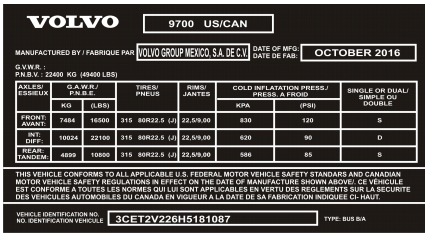
Vehicle identification

Some components that integrate the Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus, for example; the engine, transmission, retarder (*if installed*), drive axle, among the others. may be have a plate or a label used for component identification, where provide a useful information to identify the component, some of these usually data are:

- Manufacturer.
- Manufacturing date and place.
- Serial number.
- Component model.
- Important technical data related with the component configuration.
- Internal own component manufacturer control information.

Below will mention only the most important identification plates or labels (as corresponds) in the bus for familiarization.

Bus identification plate


VOLVO 9700 US/CAN

MANUFACTURED BY / FABRIQUE PAR VOLVO GROUP MEXICO, S.A. DE C.V DATE OF MFG: DATE DE FAB: OCTOBER 2016

G.V.W.R. :
P.N.B.V. : 22400 KG (49400 LBS)

AXLES/ ESSIEUX	G.A.W.R./ P.N.B.E.		TIRES/ PNEUS	RIMS/ JANTES	COLD INFLATATION PRESS./ PRESS. A FROID		SINGLE OR DUAL/ SIMPLE OU DOUBLE
	KG	(LBS)			KPA	(PSI)	
FRONT: AVANT:	7484	16500	315 80R22.5 (J)	22,5/9,00	830	120	S
INT: DIFF:	10024	22100	315 80R22.5 (J)	22,5/9,00	620	90	D
REAR: TANDEM:	4899	10800	315 80R22.5 (J)	22,5/9,00	586	85	S

THIS VEHICLE CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE U.S. FEDERAL MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY STANDARS AND CANADIAN MOTOR VEHICLE SAFETY REGULATIONS IN EFFECT ON THE DATE OF MANUFACTURE SHOWN ABOVE/. CE VEHICULE EST CONFORME A TOUTES LES NORMES QUI LUI SONT APPLICABLES EN VERTU DES REGLEMENTS SUR LA SECURITE DES VEHICULES AUTOMOBILES DU CANADA EN VIGUEUR A LA DATE DE SA FABRICATION INDIQUEE CI- HAUT.

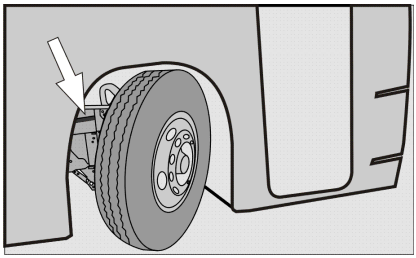
VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NO. NO. IDENTIFICATION VEHICULE 3CET2V226H5181087 TYPE: BUS B/A

The Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) its marked on the bus identification plate located in the front lower part of the bus access stairs.
Within its inside border, the identification plate is subdivided into a legal requirement section, as well as three boxes for the chassis number, drive and wheelbase. These latter are not used for buses, only for lorries. The identification plate is located by the driver's seat and contains the following information:

- G.V.W.R (Gross vehicle weight rating), is the maximum allowable total weight of the vehicle.
- G.A.W.R (Gross axle weight rating), is the maximum distributed weight that may be supported by an axle VIN is the same number that can be found on the frame member.
- Maximum gross vehicle weight (kg / lb). The technical weight refers to the weight for which it was built the bus.
- The maximum weight (kg / lb), for the 3rd. axle (auxiliary or drag axle).
- Tires dimensions.
- Rims dimensions
- Cold inflation pressure, is the inflation pressure of the tires before the vehicle is driven and the tires warmed up.
- VIN is the same number that can be found on the frame member.

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This is stamped on the chassis C-beam at the right-hand front end of the vehicle, in the wheel arch in front of or behind the front axle.



W0089910

The **VIN** number consists of 17 alphabetic and numeric characters, in which are expressed characteristics, vehicle origin place, manufacturing date and place, as well as the manufacturing consecutive number or serial number, among other data.
For example, with this **VIN** number **YV3R7G62151106335** express the following:

YV3	Manufacturer identification.
R7	Chassis version.
G6	Engine version.
2	Brake system type.
1	Check digit (according ISO 13779).
5	Model year.
1	Assembly factory.
106335	Chassis number.

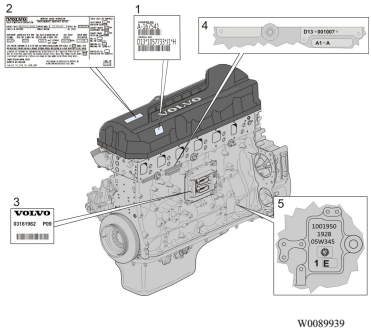
Engine identification labels

For the engine identification has a couple of labels adhered to the right side of the valve cover.
In these labels will find the following information:

- Application type.
- Part number.
- Engine serial number.
- Chassis serial number.
- Information of emission certification.

Also on the engine block count with the following information (which is marked with a punch in the middle of the engine block near the transfer pump):

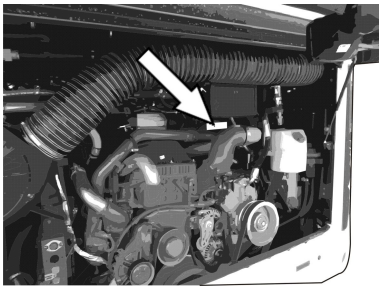
- Engine control module part number (label adhered on the module).
- Engine type and application.
- Stamped engine serial number.
- Engine certifications.



W0089939

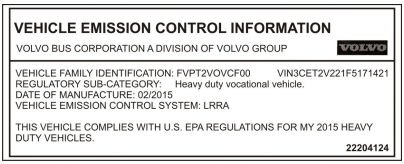
Vehicle emission control information label

In the engine compartment, an additional label is placed (**A**). Which label contains information regarding to vehicle emission control (**B**).
This label is located as shown in the image (**A**).



W0101024

(**A**) Vehicle emission control label location inside the engine compartment.



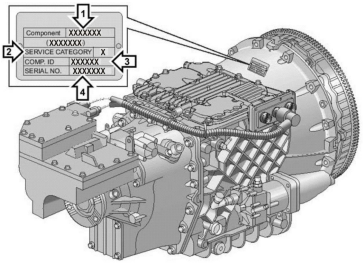
W0101015

(**B**) Vehicle emission control label information.

I-Shift transmission identification plate (if installed)

The type designation and serial number of the **I-Shift** transmission are marked on the identification plate located at the top of the transmission.
The information provided in the plate is as follows:

- Transmission model.
- Service type.
- Part number.
- Serial number.

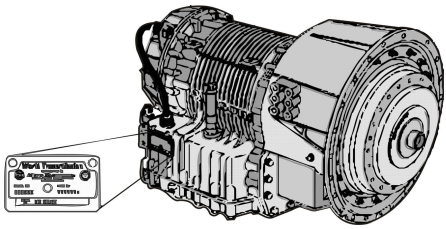


W0091964

Allison transmission (identification plate)

The transmission series, the transmission model and the serial number are punched on the plate located in the left side of the transmission.
The information provided on the plate as follows:

- Transmission series and model.
- Serial number.
- Part number.

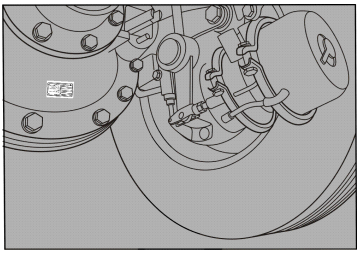


W0095903

Rear axle identification plate

The plate is located on the carrier housing in the drive axle.
The information provided in the plate is as follows:

- Carrier model.
- Carrier ratio.
- Category or service type.
- Drive axle part number.
- Carrier assembly number.
- Chassis serial number assigned.
- Axle serial number.

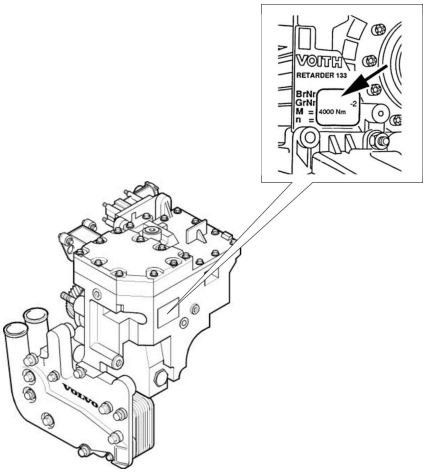


W0089943

Retarder identification plate (if installed)

Retarder serial number and its version are stamped on rear left side of retarder housing. The information provided in the plate is as follows:

- Retarder model.
- Serial number.
- Manufacturing date.
- Part number assigned by “VOITH”.
- Part number assigned by “Volvo”.



W0089959

Service intervals

Regular servicing in accordance with the special service schedule is required to maintain the bus to its original specifications throughout its service life.
Carry out all servicing and maintenance of the bus at a Volvo workshop or, for Prevost support vehicles, in Prevost service center/provider.
These workshops have the trained personnel, special tools and necessary service literature that are vital in ensuring high quality of servicing. This quality also depends on the use of Volvo Original parts, which are of identical quality to the components installed at the Volvo manufacturing facility.
For service intervals, see the separate service literature to know this intervals. Refer to the separate service information related to the 9700 BSTAR — NAM-SPEC and B13R EM-USA17 model.

Note: When washing the bus, only use agents that are intended for this purpose, see separate operating instructions: “Interior maintenance” and “Exterior maintenance”.

A

A/C Controller, multiplexing system. 71
Accelerator pedal deactivated. 20
Additional fire detection system (multiplexed). 156
Adjusting external rear view mirrors. 49
Air conditioning test switch. 45
Allison automatic transmission..... 57
Allison identification plate. 218
Allison transmission mode function. 59
Allison transmission shifter..... 58
Alternative towing procedure. 154
ARMS (Automatic Reset Main Switch). 138
ARMS failure detection. 138
Assistance and rescue on highway (VAS, Volvo Action Service)..... 146
Audio system. 42, 88
Audiovisual control panel..... 87
Audiovisual system..... 86
Audiovisual system. 86
Automatic and automatized gearbox specifications. 207
Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR). 82
Automatized Fire Extinguished System (AFES) manual discharge..... 93
Automatized Fire Extinguished System. 92

B

Batteries charger. 140
Batteries cut-off switch. 6, 166
Blocking valve..... 65
Body electric circuit fuses..... 185
Body electric circuit relays. 184
Body fuses. 185
Body fuses, continue. 186–187
Body relays. 184
Bulb replacement. 169
Bulbs for lighting lamps. 205
Bulk charge time estimation. 141
Bus electrical center..... 173
Bus identification plate. 213
Bus interior and exterior cleaning and maintenance. 106
Bus structural lift points. 194
Bus towing considerations..... 153

C

Central locking. 41
Change the batteries. 160
Chassis electric circuit fuses..... 177
Chassis electric circuit relays. 174
Check the warning lights. 107
Checking before driving. 105
Checking of tire wear. 198
Closing the bus. 9
Combined cruise control and speed limiting. 127
Compensating for differences in the wear of the brake pads. 69
Control pendant (for Wheel Chair Lift, WCL equipment). 85
Critical emissions related maintenance. 133

Cruise control activation. 121
Cruise control deactivation. 122

D

Daily inspection. 108
Dashboard. 18
Data. 5
Destination sign control. 72
Destination sign lighting. 39
Destination sign, Innova. 73
Destination sign, Mobitec. 74
Diesel Emission Fluid (DEF) tank specification. 211
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) level related messages. 114
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank 113
Diesel exhaust fluid gauge. 27
Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) regeneration required icon. 131
Diesel. 4
Differential lock 36
Directional indicator, dipped / full beam changer. 53
Door brake general deactivation. 51
Door brake switch. 46
Doors and hatches 7
Doors and hatches configurations. 10
Doors. 7
Driver blower. 40
Driver compartment lighting. 38
Driver display. 24
Driver window heating. 40
Driver's area 14
Driver´s area. 14
Driver's responsibility. 1
Driver's seat. 15
Driver's seat features label. 16
Driving in cold weather. 144

E

EBS, Electronically-controlled braking system. 68
Economy driving. 143
Electrical fault general lookup. 172
Electrical system specifications. 204
Electrically heated rear view mirrors. 40
ELR / ALR passenger seat belts mechanism. 82
ELR / ALR seat belts use recommendations. 83
Emergency and safety equipment 90
Emergency and safety equipment. 90
Emergency brake. 64
Emergency exits — doors. 102
Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR). 82
Emergency stop switch. 32
Emergency stop. 5
Emergency window in use indicator lamp. 44
Emergency windows. 104
Emission green house gas component warranty. 133
Engine block heater. 115
Engine control panel in engine bay. 101
Engine coolant system fluid level. 109
Engine coolant temperature gauge. 23
Engine identification labels. 215
Engine idle speed adjustment. 119

Engine oil level..... 108
Engine specifications. 206
Engine. 4
Entering the bus. 4
Exhaust Aftertreatment System (EATS) components. 129
Exhaust Aftertreatment System (EATS), warnings..... 130
Exhaust. 4
External air supply connection. 98

F

Faults and warnings..... 19
Fire extinguisher..... 91
First aid kit..... 97
Front wheels alignment specifications. 210
Fuel gauge. 24
Fuel replenishment warnings..... 112
Fuel replenishment. 111
Fuse boxes inside to the batteries compartments. 189
Fuses and relays electrical box inside to the right hand side batteries compartment..... 190
Fuses chassis..... 183
Fuses FH1 section. 178
Fuses FH2 section. 179
Fuses FH3 section. 180
Fuses FH4 section. 181
Fuses FH5 section. 182
Fuses FH6 section. 182
Fuses in the electrical distribution box corresponding to the I-Start system. 191
Fuses in the right hand side batteries compartment electrical box..... 191–192

G

General dimension, Volvo 9700 US/CAN (6X2) bus. 203
General switch. 6
Ground stud for jump start batteries. 165
Guide or driver microphone..... 89

H

Half-light lighting. 38
Hatches and doors opened warning. 10
Hazard warning lights. 31
Headlamp bulb replacement..... 169
Headlamps. 169
Headlight washers..... 54
High brake temperature warning. 70
High engine exhaust system temperature. 132
Hill start assistance..... 36
Horn. 17
Hydraulic jack. 99
Hydraulic level fluid for the engine coolant fan. 109

I

I-Shift transmission identification plate. 217
I-Shift transmission lever selector. 55
I-Shift transmission pad selector. 56
I-Start system batteries compartments decals. 135
I-Start system failure detection. 136, 168
I-Start system power relays..... 139
I-Start system. 134

If something happens 146
If the engine is not working. 148
Ignition switch. 47
Increasing load on the drive axle (bogie lift). 35
Indicator lights on after the engine has been started. 118
Instrument cluster. 22
Instrument panel lamps and symbols. 28
Instruments and controls 19
Interior equipment 75
Interior equipment. 75
Introduction 1

J

Jump start batteries procedure warnings. 164
Jump start batteries procedure. 163

K

Key and cylinder replacement. 3
Keys. 2
Kneeling system. 33

L

LED lighting stripe. 78
Legislation. 5
Level control. 34
Liaison communication system 81
License plate lighting lamp replacement. 171
License plate lighting. 171
Lighting Switch 30
Lights switch. 30

M

Main/dipped beam, switching (lights on) 53
MCM (Master Control Module) service switch. 45
Mini fuse box holder inside to the left hand side batteries compartment. 193
Mini fuse box holder. 193

N

Night lighting. 37
Notice. 5

O

Open door brake deactivation. 51
Open door brake. 50
Opening service door from the outside. 42
Opening the bus from inside. 8
Other body electric circuit fuses. 188
Other body electric circuit relays. 184
Other body fuses. 188
Other body relays. 184
Other chassis electric circuit fuses. 183
Other chassis electric circuit relays. 176

P

Park pilot system. 94
Parking brake mechanical releasing. 158
Parking brake on disc brakes mechanical releasing. 159
Parking brake. 63
Passenger AC 110 V power outlets circuit breaker. 80
Passenger compartment lighting. 37

Passenger´s individual lighting. 38
Passengers AC 110 V power outlets in the passengers seats..... 79
Passengers panel..... 78
Passengers sliding seats. 84
Passengers thermometer and clock display. 77
Pneumatic system pressure gauge. 25
Position lights. 39
Power steering hydraulic oil level..... 109
Power steering..... 128
Prioritized brake function..... 20
Privacy..... 5
Protection against batteries discharge..... 5
Punctured air bellows..... 150
Punctures..... 150

Q

QR code labels. 145

R

Rear axle identification plate. 219
Rear axle specifications..... 208
Rear lights..... 170
Recommendations to avoid unnecessary tire wear. 196
Recommended tire pressures. 197
Regulation..... 5
Relays chassis..... 176
Relays FH2 section. 175
Relays in the electrical distribution box corresponding to the I-Start system. 190
Relays in the right hand side batteries compartment electrical box..... 190
Relays KH1 section. 174
Relays KH2 section. 175
Relays KH3 section. 175
Release the parking brake with air from the bus tires. 157
Retarder enabled. 37
Retarder identification plate. 220
Retarder overheating. 62
Retarder use..... 124
Retarder..... 61, 123
Roof hatches 13
Roof hatches. 103

S

Safe driving. 142
Safety information. 13
Safety. 147
Selective Catalyst Reduction (SCR). 167
Service brakes use..... 67
Service brakes..... 66
Service intervals..... 221
Shutdown the engine. 117
Some advice for driving..... 142
Spare wheel. 195
Speed limiting..... 126
Speedometer..... 26
Start a cold engine. 116
Starter and consumer batteries failure detection. 137
Starting a warm engine. 117
Starting and driving 105
Starting assistance. 162
Starting the engine. 116
Steering wheel adjustment..... 52
Stop at the next bus stop message. 21
STOP message..... 21
Sun visor..... 41
Switches into the electrical center..... 45
Switches. 32

T

Tachometer..... 26
Tail lamp replacement. 170
Technical data..... 203
Telematics Gate Way system 81
Tire inflation valve. 98
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) display. 96
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). 95
Toilet activation. 41
Toilet. 76
Toolbox. 100
Towing. 151
Traction Control System (TCS). 35
Transmission overheating. 60
Transmission ratios..... 207
Trash bin; rear..... 76
Turbo pressure gauge. 23

V

Vehicle emission control information label. 216
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). 214
Vehicle identification. 212
Vehicle..... 5
Vent..... 4
Video system. 87

W

Warning message. 21
Warning triangle. 97
Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system indicator light. 44
Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) system; (optional). 43
Wheels and tires specifications. 209
Wheels replacement. 194
Windscreen washers 54
Windscreen wipers 54
Windscreen wipers, windscreen headlight washer. 54
Windshield washer fluid. 110

X

Xenon lights. 170

VOLVO

Volvo Bus Corporation

Göteborg, Sweden

89379469 English November, 2018

Printed in Mexico

Driver’s Handbook

Webasto Thermo Control 230/300/350

T8008841

VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the operation and function of the Webasto Thermo 230/300/350 water heating unit control. The information in this manual applies to vehicles built June 2008 and later. Please keep this manual in the vehicle at all times.

Note: Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: PV776-20196677

© 2009 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Display 1
General Introduction 1
Display 2

Button Functions 3
Buttons for Changing Parameter Values 3
Setting of the Time and Date 3
Button for Programming Unit Start-up Time 4
Button for Starting the Unit 5
Turning off the Unit 5
Programming and Control of the Unit Time of Work 5
Setting of the Alarm Clock 6
Check the Setting of the Alarm Clock 6
Programming Unit Start-up/Shut-down Time 6

Error Messages 7
Error Messages 7

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

WARNING

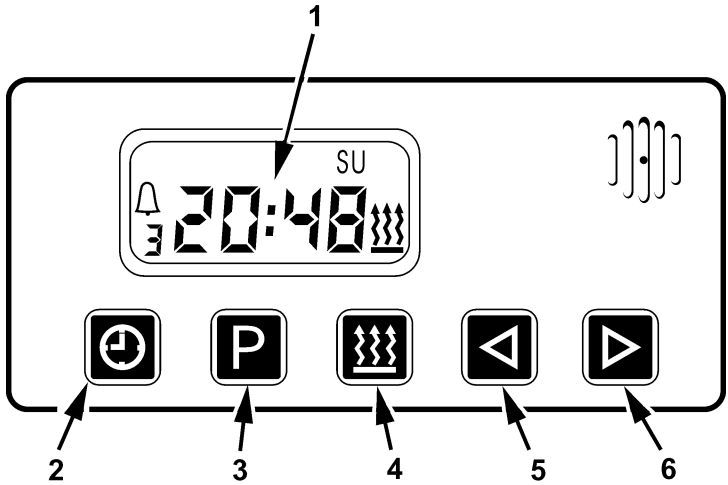
Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

General Introduction

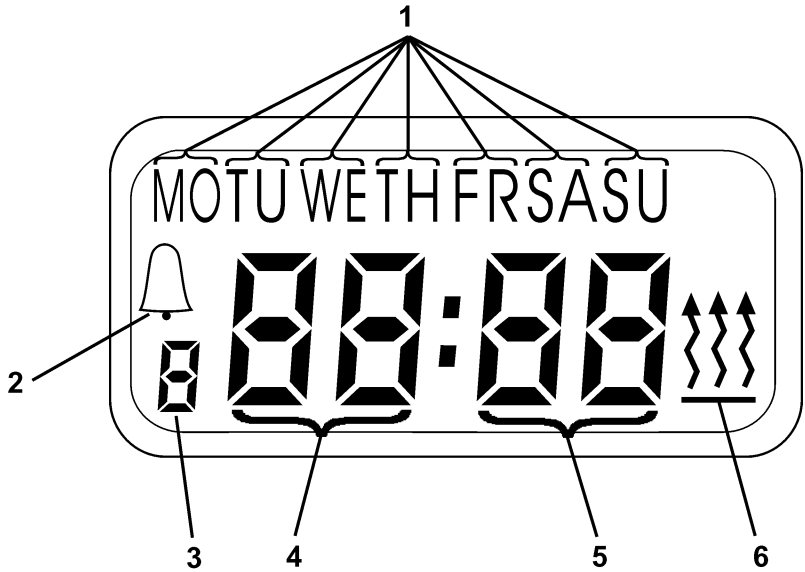


T8008842

1 Display
2 Clock button
3 Program selection button
4 Button for unit start-up
5 Button for reducing the value of the parameter selected
6 Button for increasing the value of the parameter selected

2 Display

Display



T8008844

1 Symbols for the days of the week:
MO - Monday
TU - Tuesday
WE - Wednesday
TH - Thursday
FR - Friday
SA - Saturday
SU - Sunday

2 Symbol for alarm clock set

3 Symbol for programming unit start-up time (1, 2, 3)

4 Symbol for hours (0, 1, 2.....22, 23)

5 Symbol for minutes (00, 01, 02.....58, 59)

6 Symbol for unit turned on

Buttons for Changing Parameter Values

By pressing the (1) button, you can reduce the value of the selected parameter (day of the week, hour, minutes or programme of starting up the unit) and by pressing the (2) button, you can increase the value of the selected parameter. Pressing and holding either button (1) or (2) for longer than 2 seconds, will change the selected parameter at a faster rate. When the buttons are not used for longer than 5 seconds the value set is entered in the memory.

T8008839

Button 1

T8008840

Button 2

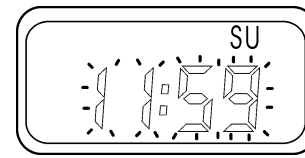
Setting of the Time and Date

By pressing the (3) button, you can set the present hour, minutes and day of the week.

T8008836

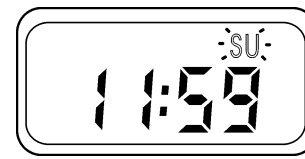
Button 3

Pressing and holding the (3) button for longer than 2 seconds and the symbols for hours and minutes begin to flash simultaneously. With the aid of the (1) or (2) button, set the present time.



T8008851

After setting the time, wait 5 seconds and the symbol for the day of the week begins to flash. Next, with the aid of (1) or (2) button, set the present day of the week. After setting, press the button or wait 5 seconds to enter the selected values in the control memory.



T8008852

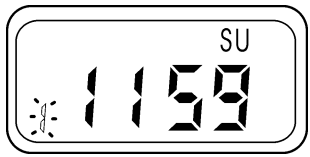
Button for Programming Unit Start-up Time

Using the (4) button you can select one of three programs for unit starting up.

T8008837

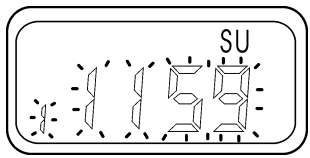
Button 4

To change the setting of the first program, press the (4) button once. To change the setting of the second program press the (4) button twice and to change the setting of the third program, press the (4) button three times. The number of the program that's selected, will be shown flashing on the display.



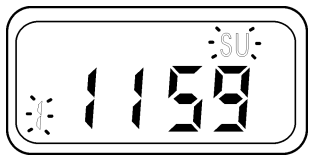
T8008854

When the (1) or (2) button is pressed, the symbol of the hours and minutes then begins to flash. Set the desired hour and minutes with the (1) or (2) button and then wait five seconds.



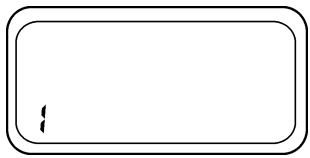
T8008853

The symbol of the day of the week begins to flash. The value can changed with button (1) or (2). After waiting five seconds or pressing button (4), the time value for unit starting up is set and entered in the memory.



T8008855

On the display, the number of the program selected is illuminated and the background lighting of the unit start-up time button (5) begins to flash.



T8008856

Button for Starting the Unit

The unit can start up automatically (see subheading Button for programming unit start-up time) or manually. In order to start up the unit manually press button (5).

T8008838

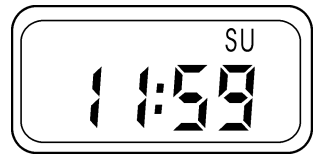
Button 5

The unit turned on symbol appears on the display and the time remaining for completion of its work. If you wish to change the value of the time remaining for completion of the work, press button (1) or (2). The unit time of work can be regulated in a range of 1 to 120 minutes.

T8008857

Turning off the Unit

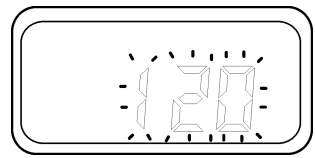
The unit can be turned off by pressing button (5) again. The unit start-up signal will disappear from the display. The unit will turn itself off automatically if you have pre-programmed a time for this function.



T8008858

Programming and Control of the Unit Time of Work

With the unit off, the unit time of work can be set. Press the (1) button longer than 3 seconds - on the lit screen the symbol for unit time of work begins to flash. Pressing button (1) or (2) will set the desired time of work for the unit (in program 1, 2, 3 and with manual start up). After waiting 5 seconds the selected time is entered into the memory.



T8008846

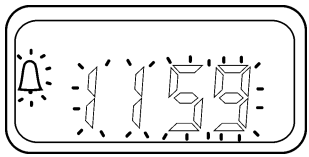
6 Button Functions

Setting of the Alarm Clock

The setting of the alarm clock is not connected with a day of the week. Press the (4) button four times, the symbol for the alarm clock will then begin to flash on the display.

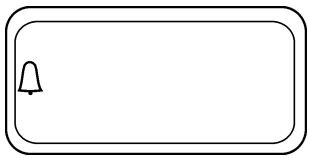
T8008847

Press either the (1) or (2) button. The symbol for hours and minutes begins to flash.



T8008848

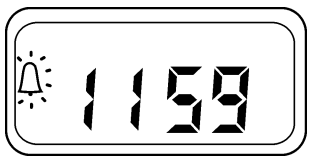
To set the desired waking time press button (1) or (2). After waiting five seconds the waking time is entered in the memory. The symbol for the alarm clock remains illuminated on the display. The alarm sounds for 5 minutes. You can turn it off by pressing any button.



T8008849

Check the Setting of the Alarm Clock

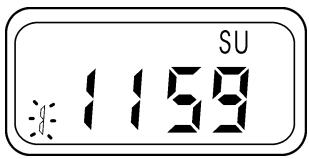
To check the setting of the alarm clock press the (4) button four times. When alarm clock symbol begins to flash on the display, the set time for waking can read. To cancel the setting of the alarm press the (4) button a fifth time. The symbol of the alarm disappears from the display.



T8008847

Programming Unit Start-up/Shut-down Time

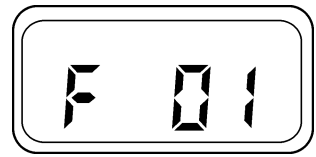
Pressing the (4) button once, will allow checking the setting of the first program. Pressing the (4) button twice, will allow checking the setting of the second program. Pressing the (4) button three times, will allow checking the setting of the third program. Pressing the (4) button five times, exits the program.



T8008854

Error Messages

Messages about errors appear on the lit display screen in the form of codes. The error code descriptions can be found in the accompanying table.



T8008850

Code	Description
F01	No start up
F02	Interruption of the flame
F03	Tension too low
F04	Recognition of a foreign light in start up or run out
F05	Damage to flame sensor
F06	Damage to temperature sensor
F07	Damage to magnetic valve
F08	Damage to blower motor
F09	Damage to circulation pump
F10	Damage to/overheating of temperature limiter
F11	Damage to ignition spark generator
F12	Blocking of the appliance through repeated disturbance or repeated interruption of the flame

VOLVO

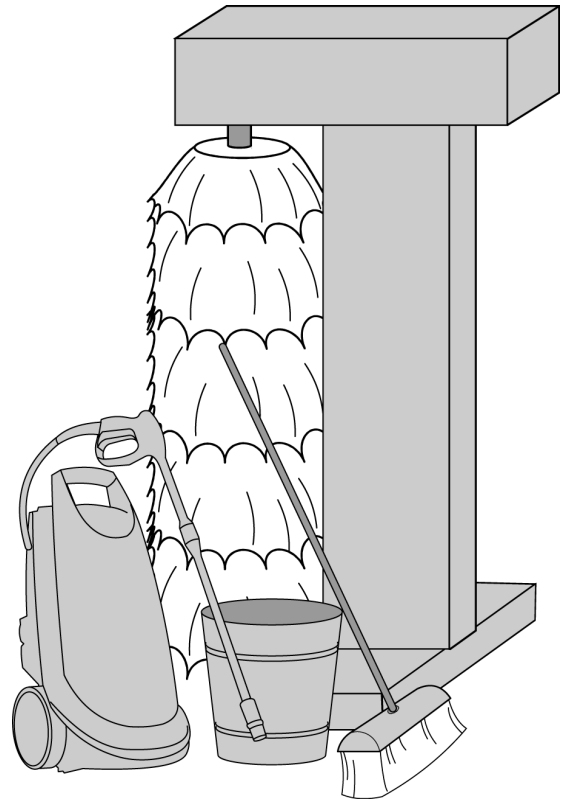
Volvo Bus Corporation

Göteborg, Sweden

PV776-20196677 English .01.2009

Driver’s Handbook

Cleaning and Maintaining the Paint Finish
9700



VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the maintenance of the bus exterior finish. The information in this manual applies to vehicles built January 2009 and later. Please keep this manual in the vehicle at all times.

Note: Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: PV776-20196937

© 2009 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

General Information 1
Keeping the Vehicle Clean — Overview 1

Washing and Aftercare 3
Hand Washing, Painted Finishes 3
Washing in a Car Wash 5
Washing and Waxing 5
Waxing 6
Polishing 7

Renovation of the Paint Finish 8
Renovation 8
Professional Renovation 8

Additional Information 9
Stickers 9

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

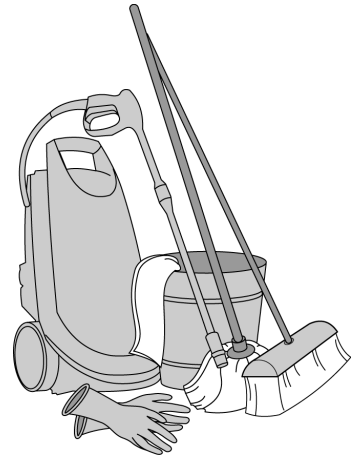
CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

Keeping the Vehicle Clean — Overview

The maintenance procedures described in the following instructions ensure the correct utilization and attractive appearance of the vehicle.



T1008823

Maintenance Objectives:

- To ensure the cleanliness and smart appearance of the bus from the outside
- To prolong the life of the vehicle’s paint finish

Equipment:

- Cloths, soft brushes, cotton cleaning cloths
- Protective clothing, rubber gloves
- Pressure washer
- Detergents, agents for washing painted surfaces, waxes, and polishing agents, as recommended by Authorized Volvo Service Outlets

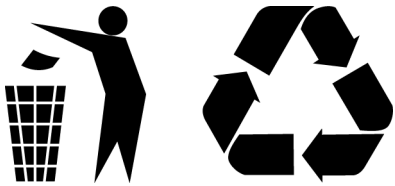
Using Permitted Chemical Agents

DANGER

Before using a chemical agent, read the instructions governing its use, as well as the instructions on how to proceed in a hazard situation (e.g. contact of the chemical agent with the skin or the eyes)! Care must be taken when using chemical agents - perform all operations in protective clothing and protective gloves. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or death.

Guidelines for Protection of the Environment

Note: The empty packages from chemical agents from washing, waxing or polishing, as well as fabric items used for cleaning and polishing, should be disposed of in an ecologically sound manner.



T1008770

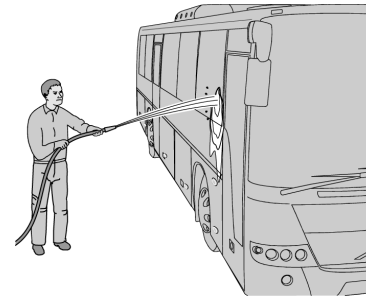
CAUTION

The vehicle may only be washed in a place intended for this purpose. Failure to do so may result in components getting damaged.

Hand Washing, Painted Finishes

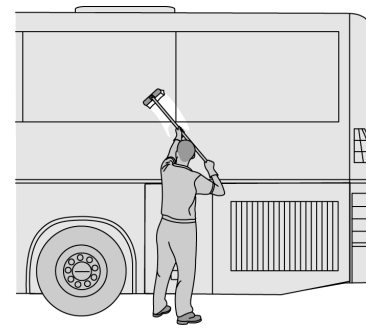
Note: Never wash the vehicle in full sunlight, as the surface is then too hot, and this causes the washed surface to suddenly dry out.

- Mix a painted surface washing agent with hot water, in the correct proportions recommended by the manufacturer.
- Before washing, rinse the entire bus surface with water.



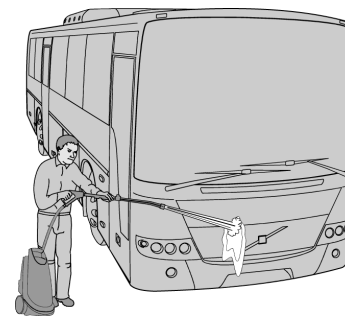
T1008816

- For washing, use the previously prepared solution of washing agent and a soft cloth or soft brush.



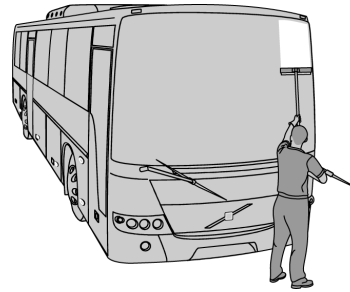
T1008817

- Immediately after washing, rinse the washed surface with clean water so that the used solution of washing agent does not dry on the vehicle surface. Rinse the vehicle with clean water from top to bottom, paying particular attention to depressions and joints. A pressure washer may be used to perform this.



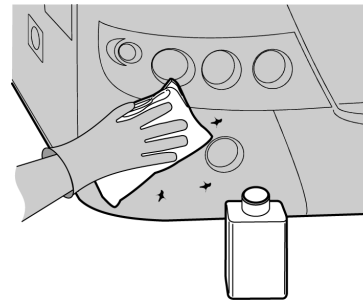
T1008818

- Wipe the water off the vehicle windows with a squeegee.



T1008819

- Dry the vehicles surface with a soft, dry, clean cloth (cleaning cloth).
- Leave the painted surfaces to dry out fully.



T1008821

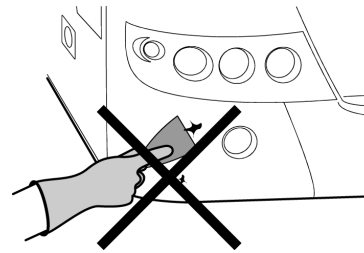
Note: Water used for washing the bus must have a pH from 6 to 8. The water used should be of the correct hardness – below 120ppm.

Note: Use a special cleaning cloth to wipe the vehicle down.

Note: Tar or asphalt can be removed from the painted surface using a special agent recommended by Authorized Volvo Service Outlets.

CAUTION

Do not use sharp metal instruments, such as a scraper or knife, to clean tar or asphalt from the painted surface! Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicles surfaces.



T1008822

Washing in a Car Wash

CAUTION

The bus should be washed in a car wash with vertical brushes that wash the vertical surfaces of the bus. Failure to do so may result in damage to exterior items such as; ventilation holes, hatches and roof antennas and the climate control modules.

When washing the vehicle in a car wash you should read the instructions for use and act in accordance with them.

Washing and Waxing

Note: Some washing agents contain wax. In such cases, the vehicle should be washed in accordance with the instructions for hand washing and left to dry. In such cases, no additional waxing should be carried out.

After waxing, the windows should be de-greased using a cloth and screen washing agent.

T1008824

Waxing

T1008820

Note: Do not wax the vehicle within 90 days of its being supplied, as the finish may still be curing.

Waxing of the bodywork is regarded as a servicing item for the vehicle.

Note: Before waxing the paint finish, you should first wash the vehicle thoroughly.

- Do not put wax on a surface that cannot be easily buffed up.
- The optimum ambient temperature for waxing is 15-25°C (59–77°F).
- Apply the wax in thin layers.
- Rub out the wax coat you have applied with a soft cotton cloth to obtain a sheen.

Note: Never wax the vehicle in full sunlight as the surface will be too hot. The wax will be difficult to remove and may result in spots.

Polishing

Note: Polishing can be carried out after proper washing of the painted surface has not removed dirt or, if small scratches exist on the painted surface resulting in reduced sheen and dulling.

- Before beginning polishing, you should thoroughly wash the vehicle surface.
- For polishing, only use pastes and polishing agents recommended by Authorized Volvo Service Outlets. Always perform the work in accordance with the instructions provided with the agents being used.
- Small fragments of the painted surface can be buffed up by hand using a soft cloth.
- Polishing of larger elements can be done using an angle grinder and suitable polishing discs.

Note: Polishing is the ultimate way of removing scratches in the painted surface, but always remember that polishing causes a reduction in the thickness of the paint layer.

T1008825

8 Renovation of the Paint Finish

Renovation

If the paint finish has been damaged, uncovering the paint primer or the panel (metal), the paint finish must be repaired.

To carry out small repairs:

- Wash the surface with a degreasing agent, an agent for removing wax, or white spirit.
- Remove the corroded surface using a fine-grade abrasive, and then collect up the dust and again degrease the surface.
- If the primer has been removed it should be reapplied.
- Protect the remaining surfaces - those that are not to be painted.
- Before painting, check that the surface is properly dried off.
- Apply paint to a small area to make sure that the color is well-matched.
- Apply a thin layer of paint, and if a second layer is needed, wait until the first has fully dried.
- After painting, buff up the surface.

Professional Renovation

If deeper scratches and grazes to the paints finish surface cannot be removed using these methods described above, consult an Authorized Volvo Service Facility for further information.

Stickers

No laminate-based decorative items and stickers should be attached to the painted surfaces for a minimum of 7 days after painting of the vehicle. The procedure for applying laminates to the surface should be in accordance with their instructions.

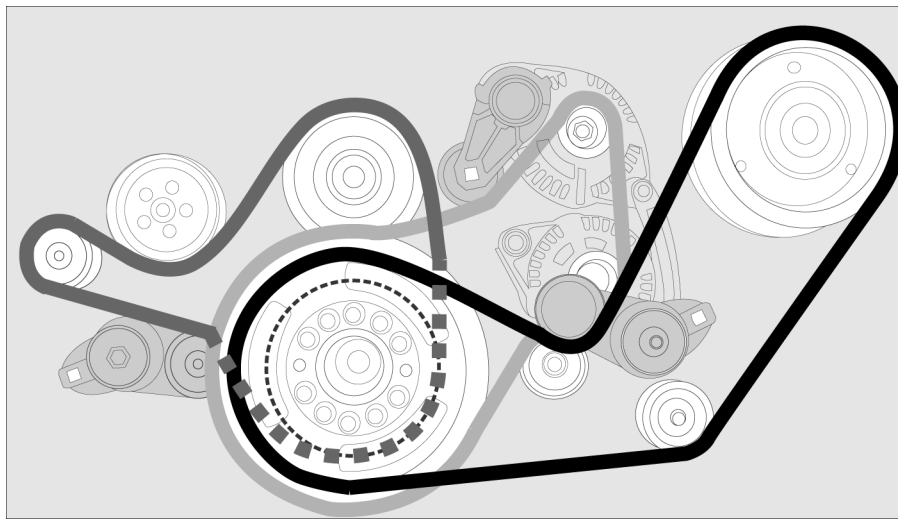
Volvo Bus Corporation

Göteborg, Sweden

PV776-20196937 English .01.2009

Driver’s Handbook

Replacing Belts
B13R



T0015452

VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information intended to help the driver in replacing the engine's belts (compressor, coolantpump, alternators), when one of them is broken or damaged. The information in this manual applies to vehicles built January 2009 and later. Please keep this manual in the vehicle at all times.

Note: Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: PV776-20198553

© 2009 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Replacing Belts 1
Introduction 1
Compressor Belt, Removal 1
Water Pump Belt, Removal 3
Alternators Belt, Removal 4
Engine Belts, Installation 5
Alternators Belt, Installation 6
Water Pump Belt, Installation 8
Compressor Belt, Installation 9

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

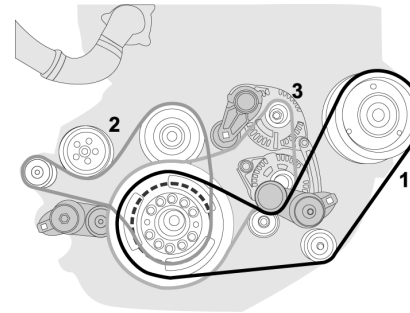
CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

Introduction

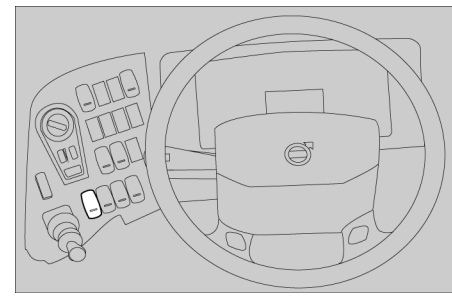
This manual contains information intended to help the driver in replacing the engine's belts (compressor, coolant pump, alternators), when one of them is broken or damaged. To change the alternators belt (3), it is necessary to remove the compressor belt (1) and the water pump belt (2). To change the water pump belt (2), first remove the compressor belt (1).



T0015453

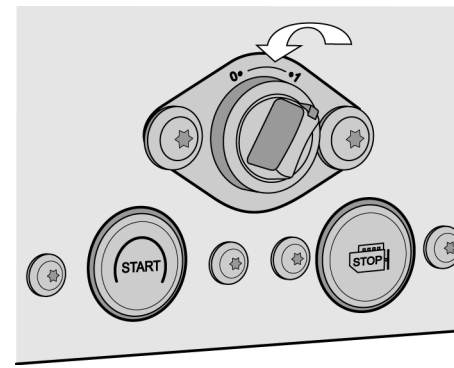
Compressor Belt, Removal

Turn off the power supply using the main switch



T0015454

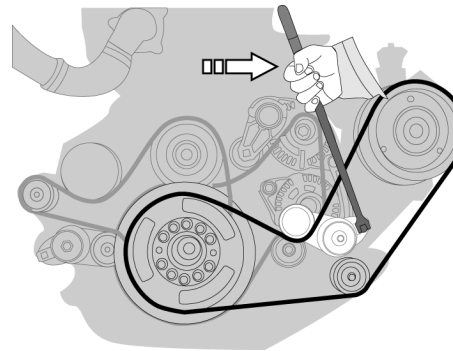
Place the "Start Enable Switch" to the 0 position.



T0015455

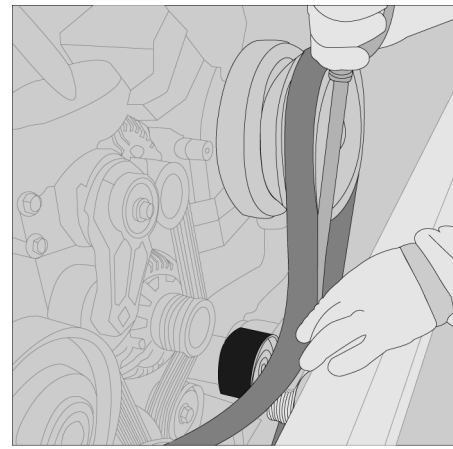
2 Replacing Belts

Place the breaker bar inside the hole of the belt tensioner and pull clockwise to release the belt.



T0015457

Pull outward to unhook the belt.



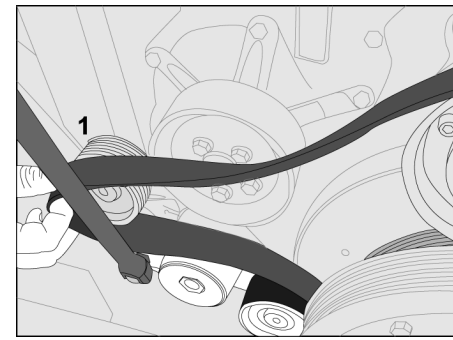
T0015456

Water Pump Belt, Removal

Place the breaker bar inside the hole of the belt tensioner, pull clockwise to release the belt.

T0015458

Pull outward to free the belt from the pulley (1).

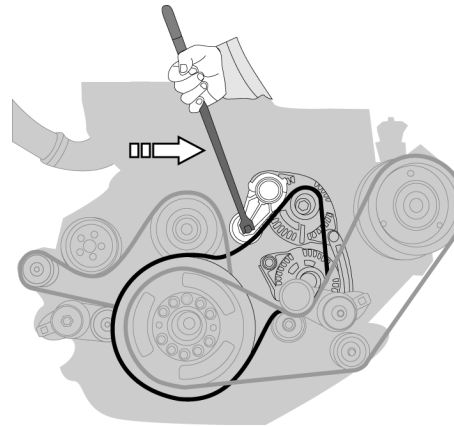


T0015459

Unhook the belt from the others pulleys and remove.

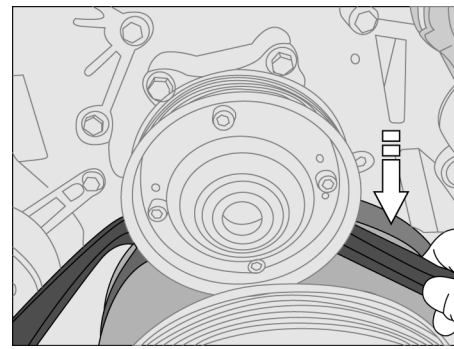
Alternators Belt, Removal

Place the breaker bar inside the hole of the belt tensioner, pull clockwise to release the belt. Pull the belt out from the upper and lower pulley's.



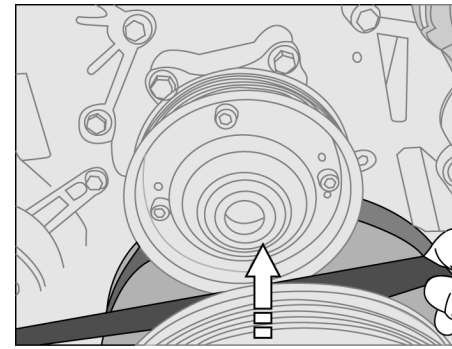
T0015460

Turn the belt and pass it through the damper and intermediate pulley, and pull down.



T0015461

Again, turn the belt and pass it through the intermediate and the crankshaft pulley and remove the belt.



T0015462

Engine Belts, Installation

To install the belts, perform the following sequence:

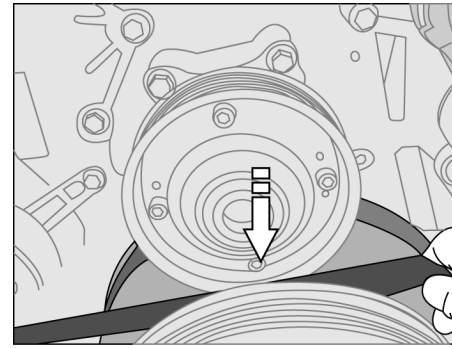
1 Alternators belt,

2 Water pump belt,

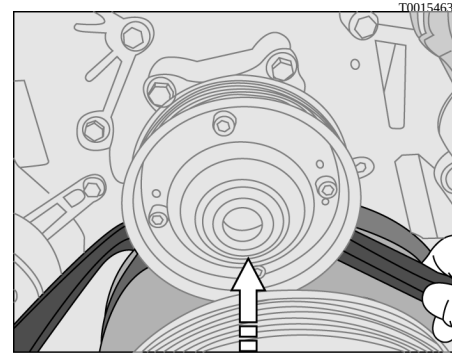
3 Compressor belt.

Alternators Belt, Installation

Pass the belt through the damper and intermediate pulley. Move inwards and pull the belt up to go through the intermediate and crankshaft pulley. Position the belt into the damper pulley groove.



T0015463

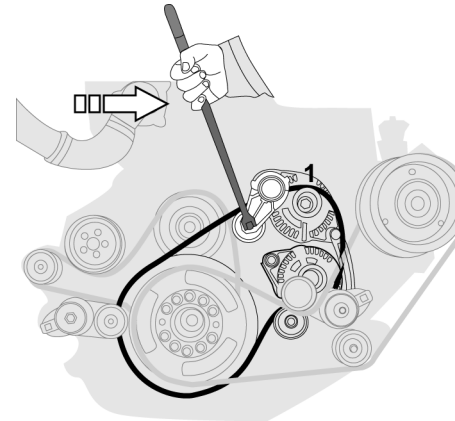


T0015464

Pull the belt towards the idler pulley (1) and position it over the pulley.

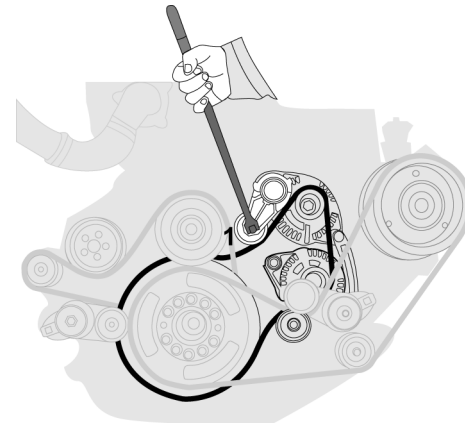
T0015465

Place the breaker bar inside the hole of the belt tensioner and pull clockwise. Position the belt over the upper alternator pulley (1).



T0015466

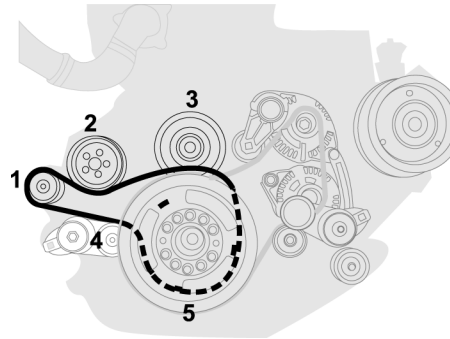
Check and verify that the belt is under the belt tensioner (1).



T0015467

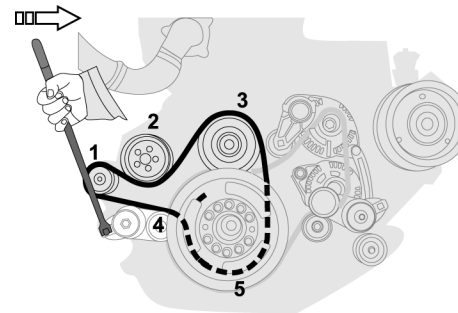
Water Pump Belt, Installation

Position the belt on the crankshaft pulley (1).



T0015468

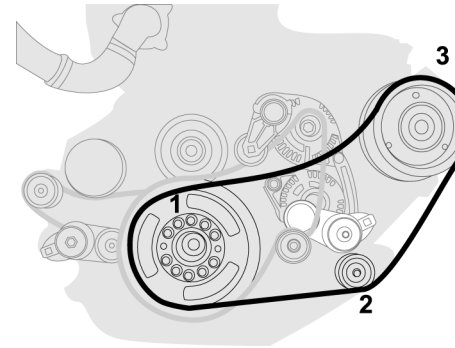
Pass the belt under the water pump pulley (2). Place the breaker bar into the hole of the tensioner belt (4) and pull the belt up to position it over the intermediate pulley (3).



T0015469

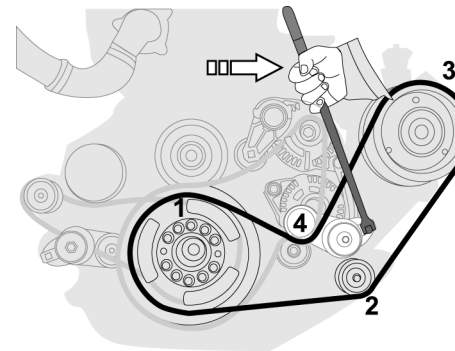
Compressor Belt, Installation

Position the belt over the crankshaft pulley (1), under the idler pulley (2) and place it around the compressor pulley (3).



T0015470

Place the breaker bar inside of the hole of the belt tensioner, pull clockwise and push the belt in to the belt tensioner (4).



T0015471

Volvo Bus Corporation

Göteborg, Sweden

PV776-20198553 English USA.02.2009

Driver's Handbook

Replacement of Wheel and Air Springs

B13R

VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the replacement of the wheels and bellows. The information in this manual applies to vehicles built January 2009 and later. Please keep this manual in the vehicle at all times.

Note: Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Volvo Trucks North America should be informed immediately if you believe that the vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death.

Contact NHTSA by calling the Auto Safety Hotline at 1 (888) 327-4236, by writing to NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590, by TTY at 1 (800) 424-9153, or visit their website at www.nhtsa.dot.gov.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 88993880

©2010 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Replacement of Wheels **1**
Introduction 1
Wheel Replacement 1
Before Lifting the Vehicle 1
Lifting Point s 1
Lifting Point for Wheel Change 2
Lowering the Spare Wheel 4
Lifting with the Jack 8
Install the Spare Wheel 9
Install the Spare Wheel in the Mount Position 11

Replacement of Air Springs **14**
Air Springs Replacement 14
Before Lifting the Vehicle 14
Lifting Point Decal 14
Lifting Point, Air Springs Replacement 15
Air Spring Replacement 16

Recovery and Towing **17**
Towing 17
Release the Parking Brake with Air from the Bus Tires 19

Tire Chains **20**
Tire chains 20

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

Introduction

This booklet is intended to help the driver about how to replace wheels and air springs properly

Wheel Replacement

Before Lifting the Vehicle

Make sure the bus is parked on a flat even surface that is not too soft. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. Place the warning triangle out.

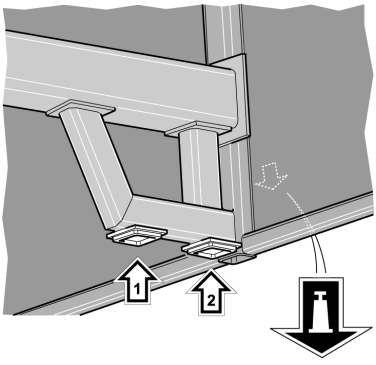
Ask the passengers to leave the bus.

Verify that the parking brake is applied.

Lifting Point s

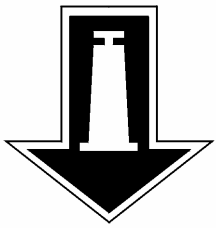
The bus has special jack lifting points.

These jack lifting points are marked with decals.



T0011284

Example of lifting points.



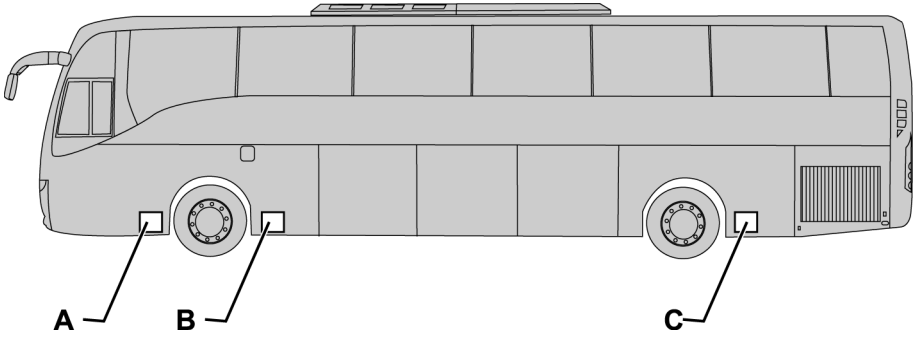
T0008922

Jack lifting point decal

2 Replacement of Wheels

Lifting Point for Wheel Change

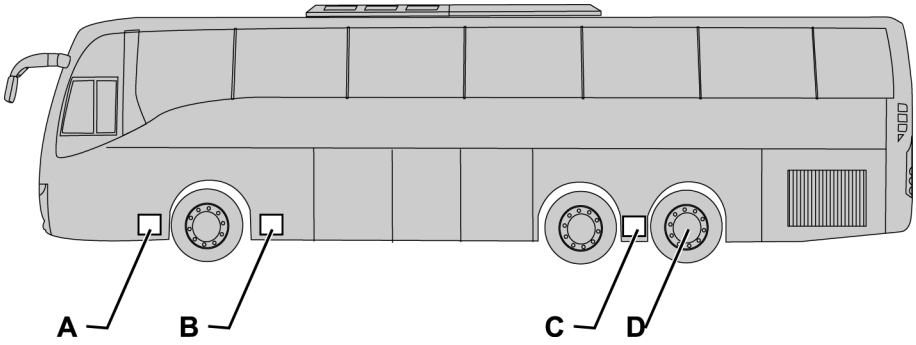
Two Axle Bus



T0015373

Bus model	Chassis	Lifting point for front axle	Lifting point for rear axle
9700	B12B,B13	B	C

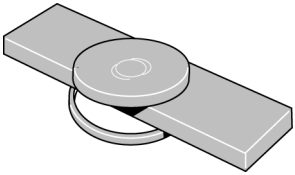
Three Axle Bus



T0015374

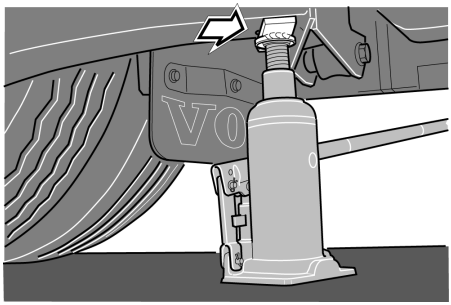
Bus model	Chassis	Lifting point for front axle	Lifting point for driving axle	Lifting point for trailing axle
9700	B12B,B13	B	C	D Lift under the axle

Lifting Point C



T0011285

Adapter for lifting air suspension beam



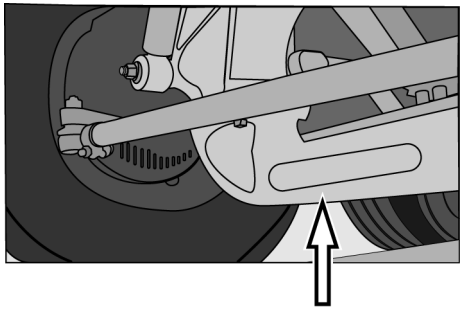
T0011286

Jack with adapter at lifting point C

Lifting Point D

⚠ DANGER

Exercise the greatest care when the trailing axle is raised. Be sure to position the jack properly so that the bus does not slide off the jack. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or death.



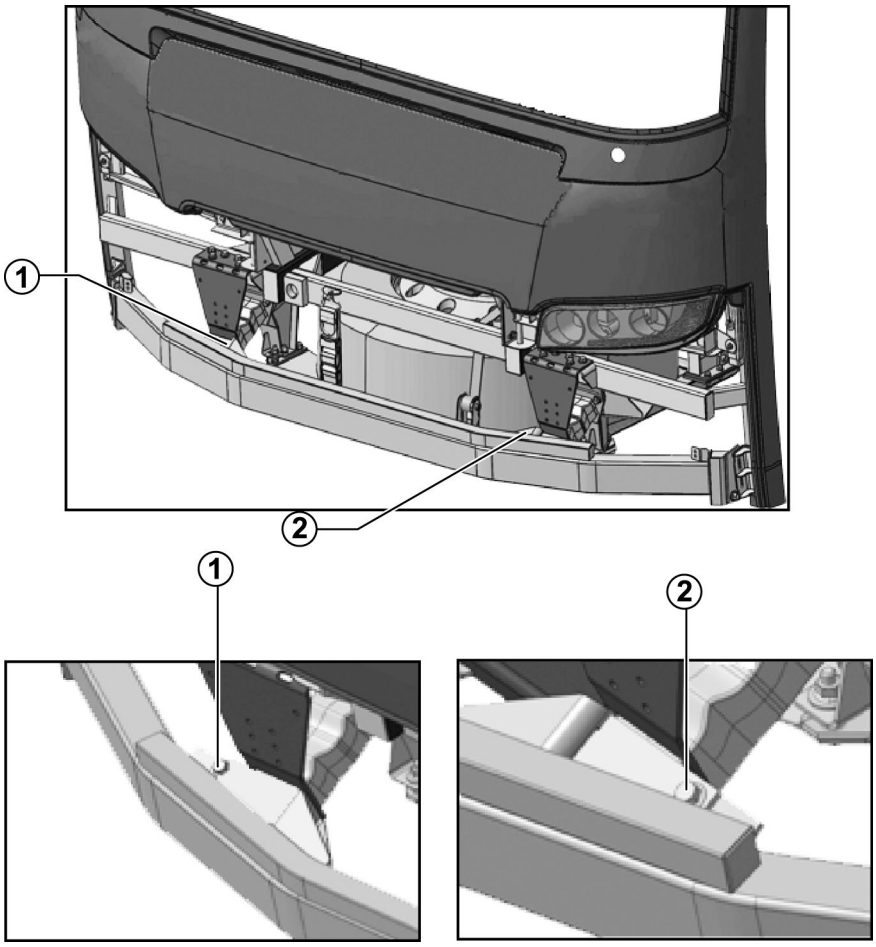
T0015389

4 Replacement of Wheels

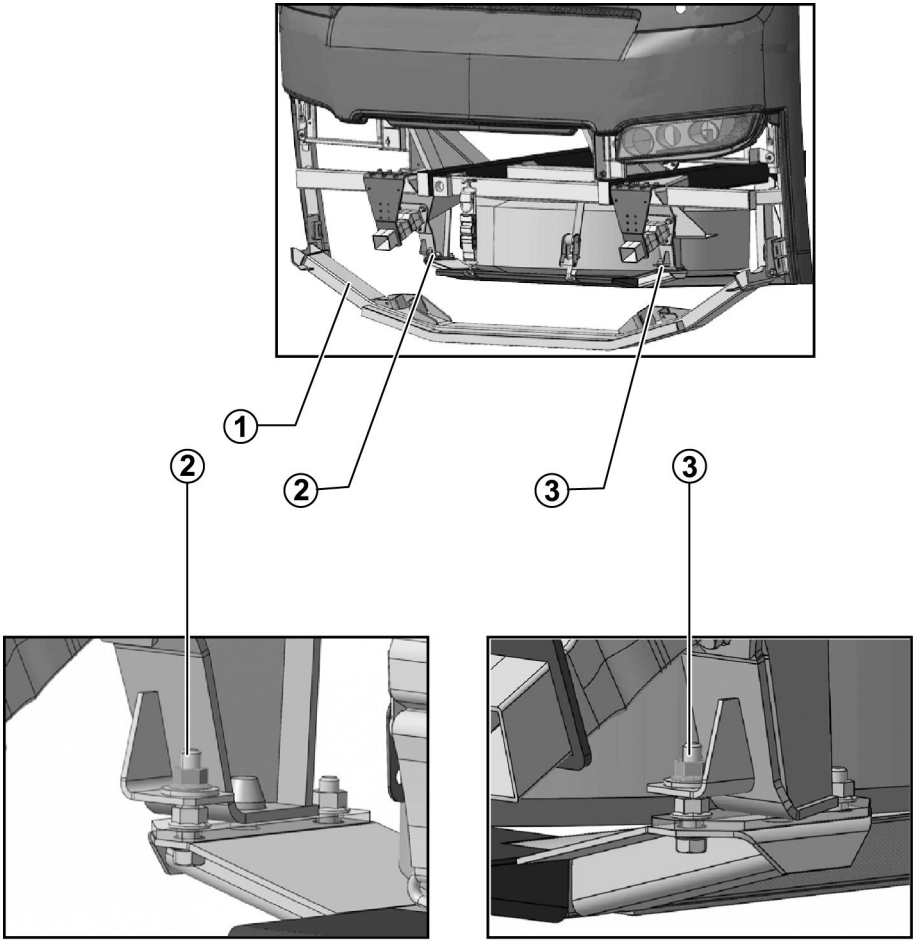
Lowering the Spare Wheel

The Volvo 9700 is equipped with a spare wheel located behind the front bumper. To remove the spare wheel, proceed as follows:

- Unscrew and remove the two support brackets (1,2) for the front under run protection brace.



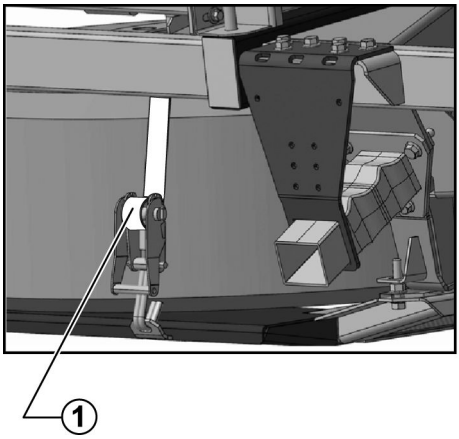
- Turn the front under run protection brace (1) downward.
- Check that the belts are tighten.
- Unscrew the security nuts (2,3)



T0015376

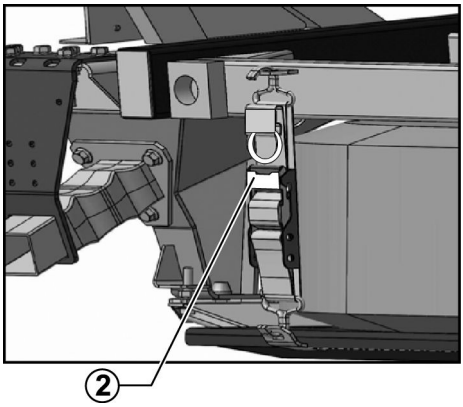
6 Replacement of Wheels

- Release and loosen the sling (1)



T0015377

- Loose sling slowly to down the spare wheel (2).



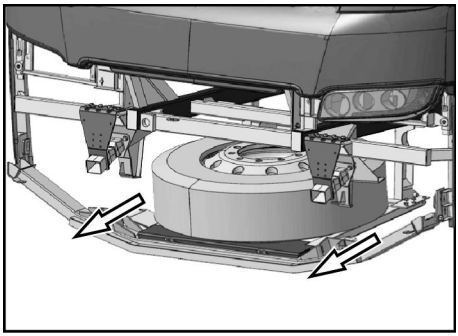
T0015378

⚠ DANGER

Keep hands clear from the underside of the tire while removing it as they may get trapped between the tire and the front under run protection brace. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury.

- Remove the spare wheel from the support frame.

Note: The sling may be used to pull out the spare wheel.



T0015379

8 Replacement of Wheels

Lifting with the Jack

⚠ DANGER

Always ensure that the bus **cannot** move. Always place stop chocks behind and in front of the wheels. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or death.

⚠ DANGER

Place the jack so that you do not have your arm or other body part beneath the bus when lifting is performed. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or death.

⚠ DANGER

Never get under a vehicle that is lifted with only a jack. Support the vehicle with jack stands or other suitable equipment if it is necessary to get under it. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or death.

1 Establish where the lifting points are. Refer to “Lifting Point for Wheel Change”, page 2.

2 Place the jack directly beneath the jacking point. Assure that the jack is placed on a hard even surface.

Note: For the rear wheels, the jacking point can be a fixture on the chassis or sometimes an air suspension beam. Use the adapter if the bus is to be lifted on an air suspension beam.

3 Loosen the wheel nuts about two turns.

4 Make sure that the bus cannot slide off the jack during the lift.

5 Lift the bus sufficiently for the wheel to leave the ground.

6 Remove the wheel nuts completely and then the wheel.

Install the Spare Wheel

Before Installation

Clean the hub and spare wheel. Perform a check of the wheel contact surface with dual wheels. Check that the wheel nut threads and nut thrust washers are not damaged. Grease them lightly if possible.

Single Wheel

1 Lift the wheel up onto the hub so that it is centered. Install two diagonally opposite wheel nuts.

2 Install the remainder of the wheel nuts and tighten lightly.

3 Lower the bus and perform the final tightening of all nuts.

Dual Wheels

Use two guide sleeves, **9996833**.

1 Install the guide sleeves. Lift the inner wheel onto the hub so that it is centered.

2 Lift up and install the outer wheel. Make sure the valve is placed on the opposite side to the inner wheel.

3 Remove the guide sleeves. Install two diagonally opposite wheel nuts and tighten lightly. Install the remainder of the wheel nuts and tighten them.

4 Lower the bus and perform the final tightening of all nuts.

10 Replacement of Wheels

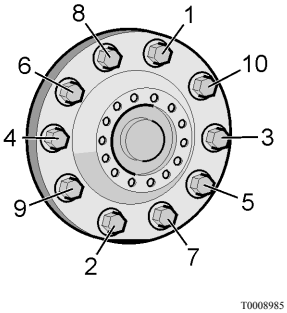
Tightening

Torque the nuts in the correct sequence, according to the tightening diagram.

Start by torquing them to **200 ± 8 Nm (148 ± 6 lb-ft)**. After that, angle torque in sequence to **90° ± 10°**.

Note: Re-torque the wheel nuts after about 200 km (124 mi).

Note: Check the tire pressure at the first service station along the road.



Check Tightening at a Workshop

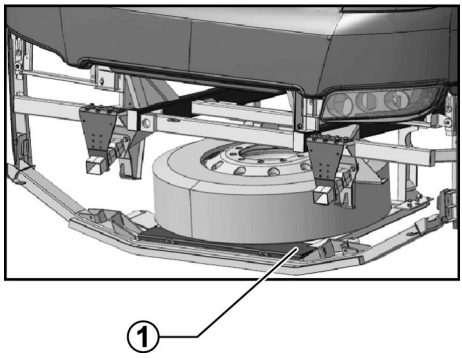
The torque check should not be less than **670 ± 30 Nm (494 ± 22 lb-ft)** for any wheel nut.

Note: Re-torque the wheel nuts every sixth month whether the wheel has been removed or not.

Install the Spare Wheel in the Mount Position

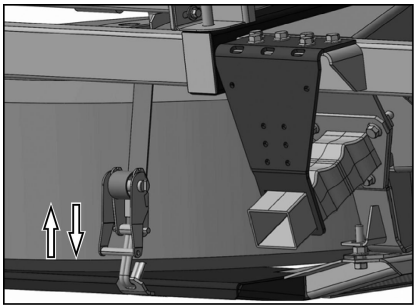
To install the spare wheel in the mount position proceed as follows:

- Put the spare wheel on the support frame (1).



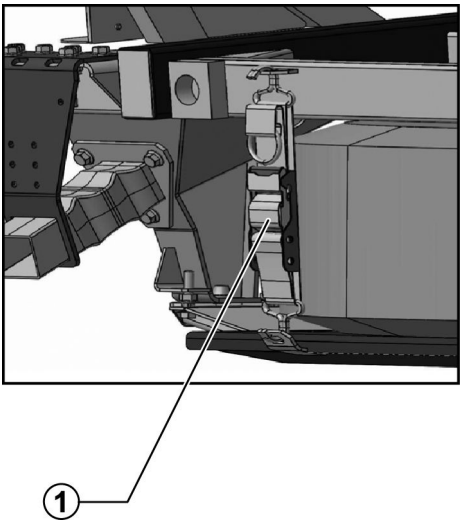
T0015380

- Install the sling on the left side and use the sling mechanism to lift the spare wheel up to its raised position.



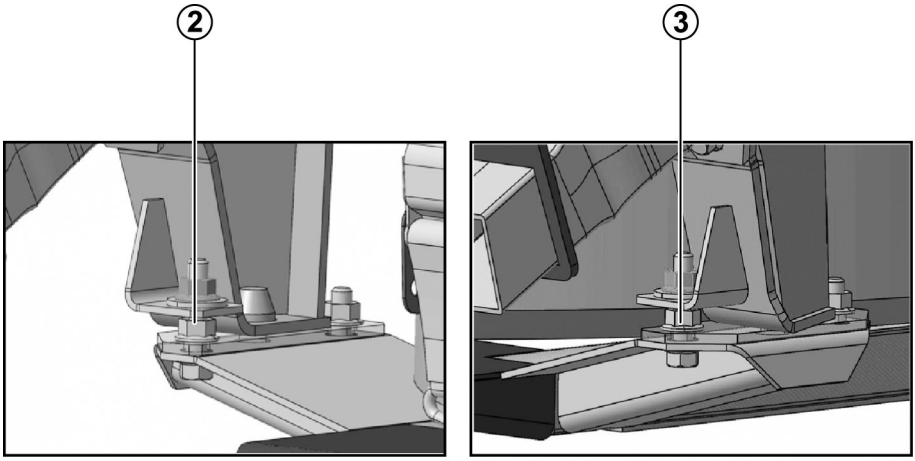
T0015381

- Install the belt on the right side and tighten the sling mechanism (1).



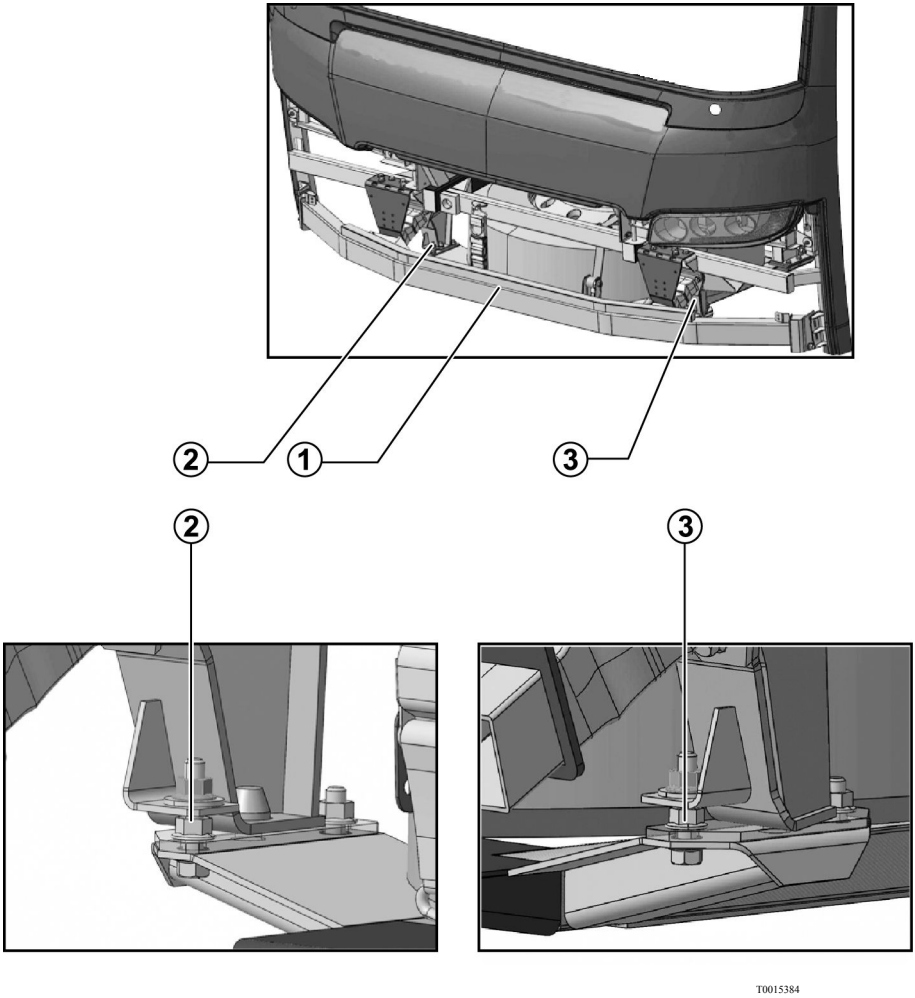
T0015382

- Install the two nuts and tighten them (2,3).



T0015383

- Rotate the front under run protection brace upward (1) and install the brackets with the screws (2,3).



T0015384

14 Replacement of Air Springs

Air Springs Replacement

Before Lifting the Vehicle

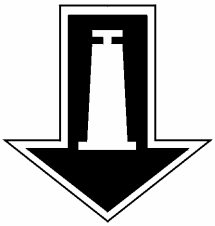
Make sure the bus is parked on a flat even surface that is not too soft. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. Place the warning triangle out.

Ask the passengers to leave the bus.

Verify that the parking brake is applied.

Lifting Point Decal

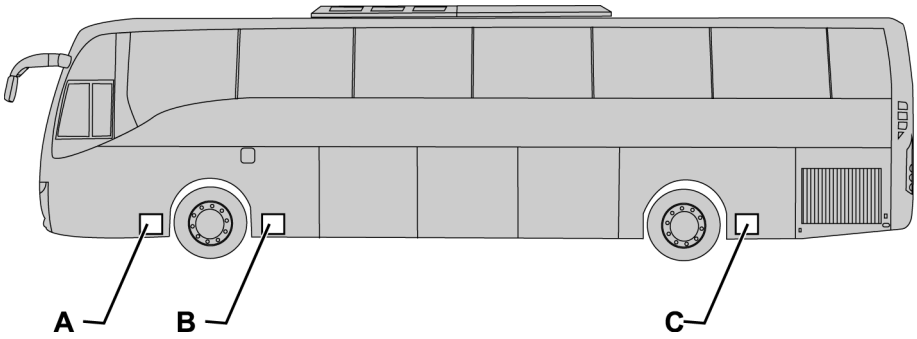
The bus has special jack lifting points. These jack lifting points are marked with decals.



T0008922

Lifting Point, Air Springs Replacement

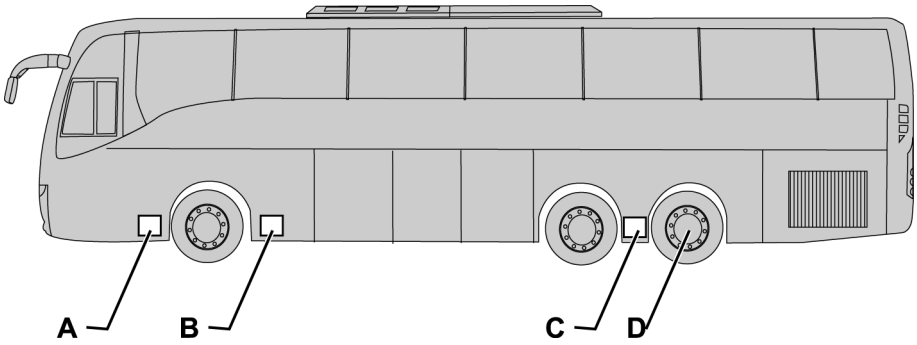
Two Axle Bus



T0015373

Bus model	Chassis	Front lifting point	Rear lifting point
9700	B12B,B13	B	C

Three-axle Bus



T0015374

Bus model	Chassis	Lifting point for front axle	Lifting point for driving axle	Lifting point for trailing axle
9700	B12B,B13	B	D	D

16 Replacement of Air Springs

Air Spring Replacement

⚠ DANGER

Always ensure that the bus **cannot** move. Always place stop chocks behind and in front of the wheels. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or death.

⚠ DANGER

Place the jack so that you do not have your arm or other body part beneath the bus when lifting is performed. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or death.

⚠ DANGER

Never get under a vehicle that is lifted with only a jack. Support the vehicle with jack stands or other suitable equipment if it is necessary to get under it. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or death.

1 Establish where the lifting points are. Refer to “Lifting Point, Air Springs Replacement”, page 15.

2 Place the jack directly beneath the jacking point. Assure that the jack is placed on a hard even surface.

Note: For the rear wheels: The jacking point can be a fixture on the chassis or sometimes an air suspension beam. Use the adapter if the bus is to be lifted on an air suspension beam.

3 Make sure that the bus cannot slide off the jack during the lift.

4 Lift the bus sufficiently to remove the air bellows.

5 Install a new air bellow and lower the bus.

Towing

CAUTION

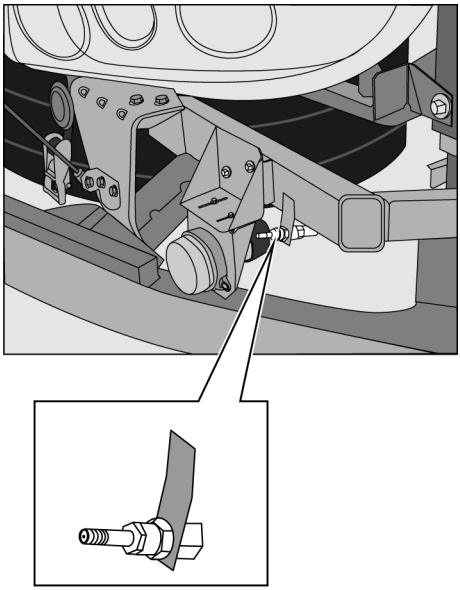
Failure to disconnect the driveshaft, remove the drive axle shaft(s) or lift the drive wheels off the ground before towing or pushing the vehicle, can cause serious transmission damage and void the transmission warranty.

CAUTION

Do not run the engine while towing as this may result in transmission damaged.

The power steering will not function with the engine off. Keep in mind that this will make the bus steering very heavy.

If towing is over a longer distance, checks should be performed to verify the bus parking brake does not gradually become applied, due to the air pressure in the system dropping. If the bus's engine cannot be started to supply sufficient pressure to the braking circuit, pressurization from an external source can be used. Behind the front hatch there is a valve to wich an external air supply can be connected. If it is not possible to arrange external air pressure, the parking brake can be disengaged mechanically. For more information refer to the vehicle "Operators Manual".



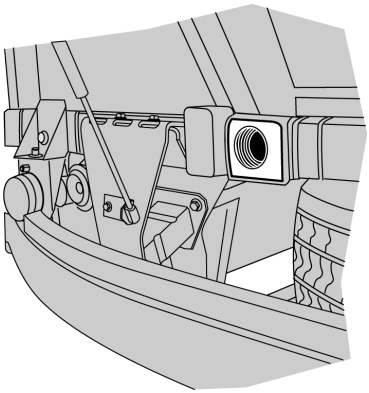
T0015390

18 Recovery and Towing

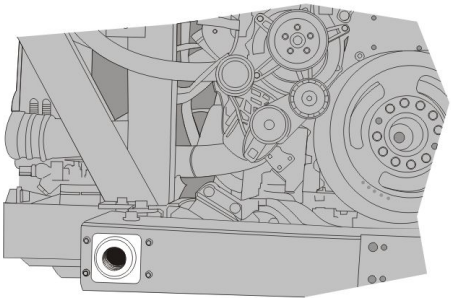
A tow bar connection should never be used for recovery (lifting), only when towing.

For more information about the connection points, refer to the vehicle “Operators Manual”.

- Use a tow bar, **NOT** a chain or rope. Install the tow bar to the correct attaching points on the vehicle.
- Ensure that the bus is attached to the towing vehicle before releasing the parking brake or removing the stop chocks from the wheels.



T8012390



T8059309

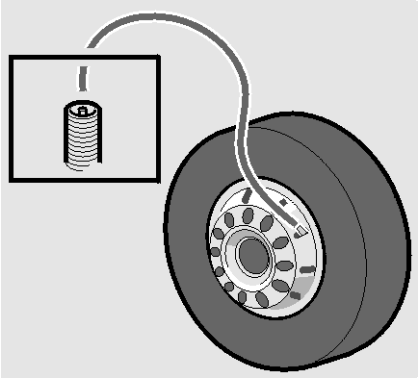
Release the Parking Brake with Air from the Bus Tires

⚠ DANGER

Always ensure that the bus **cannot** move. Always place stop chocks behind and in front of the wheels. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or death.

Note: Instead of using the air pressure from tires, you can use an external supply of air compressed with at least 4 bars (58 psi).

- To prevent the bus from moving, chock the wheels.
- Connect the clamp end of the tire inflation hose to the valve of one of the tires.
- Move the parking brake control to the drive position.
- While pressing the other end of the tire inflation hose against the pump nipple, press in the blocking valve. Now the brake system is filled with the air from the tire. Filling can stop as soon as the air flow stops.



T0009182

Tire chains

Some jurisdictions may require their use in certain weather conditions or during certain months of the year.

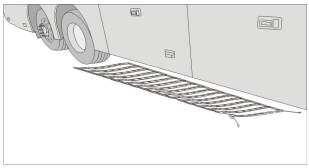
To install the tire chains please follow the instructions from the tire chains manufacturer.

Following a small procedure to install the tire chains on a bus tire, just as general explanation.

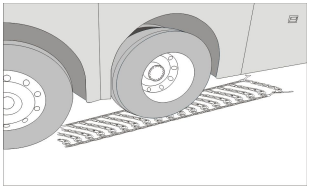
- Laid Chains in front of Drive Axle Tire
- Make sure that the chain links are spread out
- Drive forward onto 1/3 of the chain distance.
- Loop one side of the chains over the tires then loop the opposite side and link them together.

Note: Keep the chains as tight as possible in order to avoid damage to the coachwork

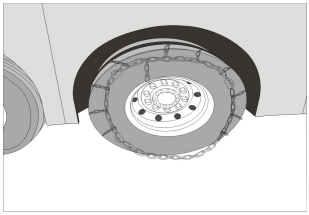
Note: Refer to laws of each State for more information related to dates an areas were the tire chains should be used, and on what axle(s) must be installed.



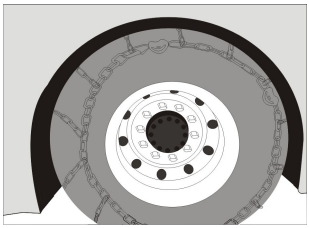
T8061480



T8061481



T8061482



T8061483

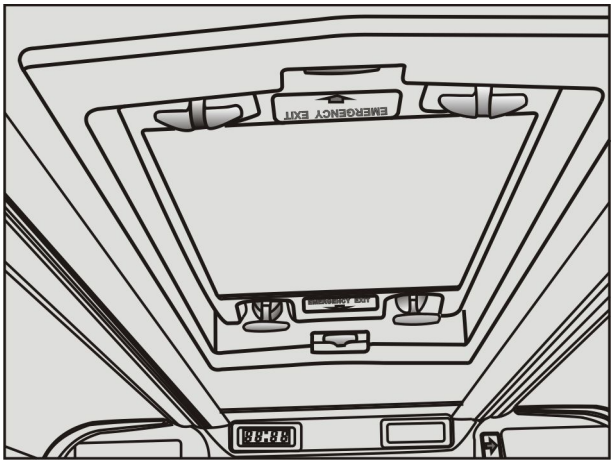
Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

88993880 English 10.2010

Operating Instructions

Manual Roof Hatch, Operation

9700 Bus



T8061505

VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the operation and function of the Manual Roof Hatches ounted on the 9700 US/CAN.

Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Prevost should be informed immediately if you believe that the vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death.

Contact NHTSA by calling the Auto Safety Hotline at 1(888) 327–4236, by writing to NHTSA, U.S Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590, by TTY at 1 (800) 424–9153, or visit their web site at www.nhtsa.dot.gov.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 88994761

©2010 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Introduction 1
Introduction 1

Manual Roof Hatches 2
Normal operation 2
Opening the Roof Hatch for an emergency 3
Reassembling the Roof Hatch 5

Index 9

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

It is important that the following information be read, understood and always followed.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a black background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

Introduction

This booklet is intended to help the driver about how to operate properly and take care of the manual roof hatches.

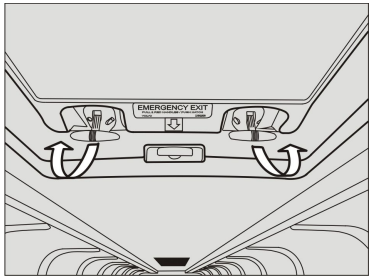
2 Manual Roof Hatches

Normal operation

Openning the hatch

When fresh air intake is required, e.g., when the Air Conditioning system is not working, it is possible to open the roof hatches from inside. To open the hatch procedure as follows:

- To unlock the roof hatch pull the two black handles towards center of the hatch
- Push up the roof hatch on the side were was unlocked
- Do the same for opposite end.



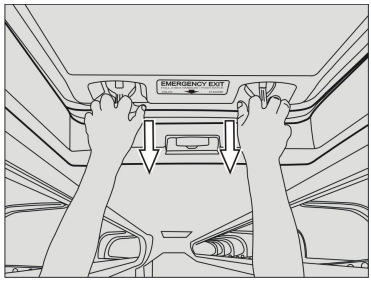
T8061506

Note: Do not open the roof hatch when the Air Conditioning System is working.

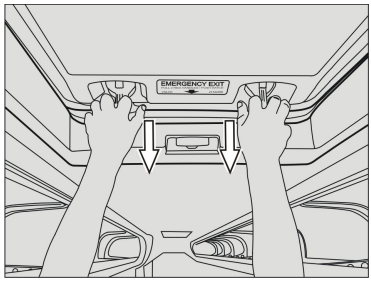
Closing the hatch.

To close the hatch proceed as follows

- Take the two black handles and pull down
- Pull down again the roof hatch up to red tab appears, this means that the hatch is properly closed
- Do the same for the opposite end.



T8061507



T8061507

Opening the Roof Hatch for an emergency

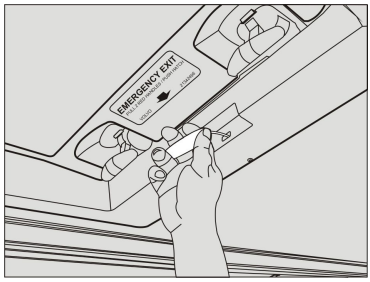
Interior

In case of an emergency, to open the hatch from the inside, perform the following steps:

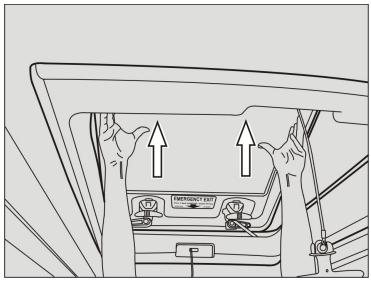
1 Pull out the red emergency handle at both ends of the hatch.

2 Push out the roof hatch.

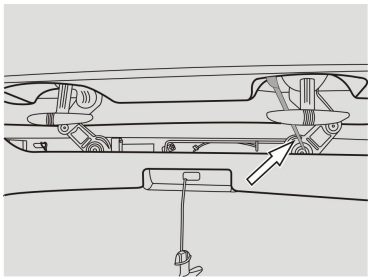
Note: When the roof hatch is opened because an emergency, a strip fixed at one end avoids that the hatch gets miss.



T8061509



T8061510



T8061511

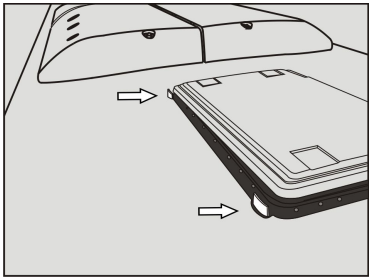
4 Manual Roof Hatches

Exterior

In case of an emergency, to open the hatch from the outside, perform the following steps:

1 Pull out both red emergency handles, located at the right side of the frame of the roof hatch

2 Pull out the roof hatch.



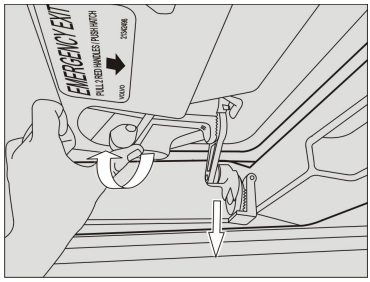
T8061298

Reassembling the Roof Hatch

To reassembly the roof hatch after it was opened for an emergency, proceed as follows:

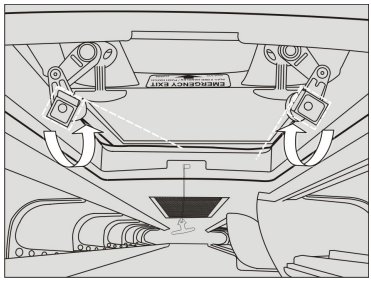
Put the roof hatch in a position were it will possible to have access to the mechanisms.

Pull up the black handle and pull down the mechanism, do it for each mechanism

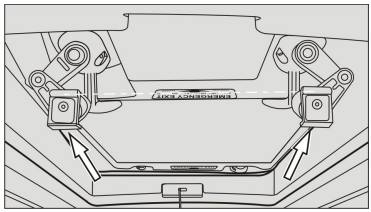


T8061512

Turn the lugs until the holes are horizontally

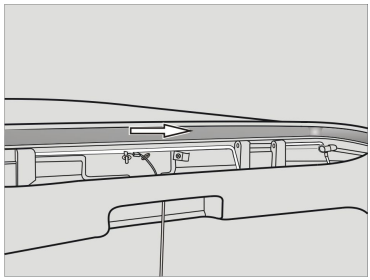


T8061513



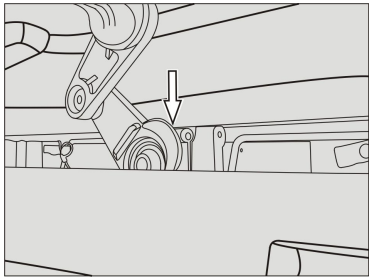
T8061514

Move the rod to allow to insert the roof hatch mechanisms in their position, do it for each end



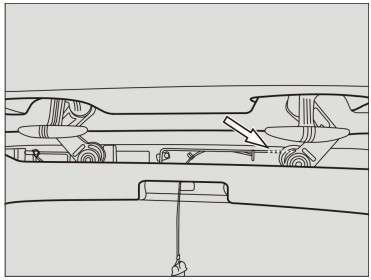
T8061515

Place the mechanism into their positions (two by each end)



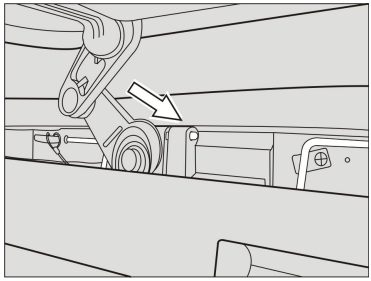
T8061516

Insert the larger end of the rod in the middle of the lug to use like a guide, do the same for the other end of the roof hatch



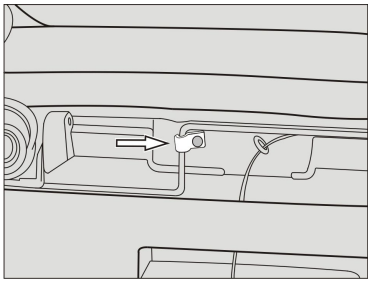
T8061517

Now, carefully insert both ends of the rod inside the holes of the frame and mechanisms



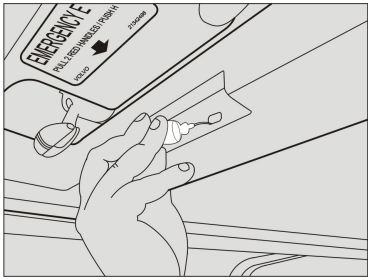
T8061568

When the rod is completely inserted in its position, secure it with the plastic bracket



T8061518

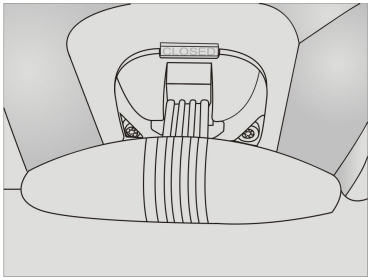
Place the emergency red handles in their original positions



T8061519

Close the hatch as the normal closing procedure

Note: Always check that the roof hatch is close properly by checking the red tabs are visible.



T8061520

Index

I

Introduction 1

M

Manual Roof Hatches 2

N

Normal operation 2

O

Opening the Roof Hatch for an emergency. 3

R

Reassembling the Roof Hatch 5

S

Safety Information 5

VOLVO

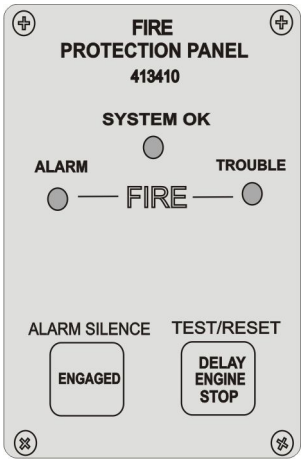
Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

88994761 English 25.02.10

Operating Instructions

Automatic Fire Supression System

9700 Bus



VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the operation and function of the Anti Fire Supression System mounted on the 9700 US/CAN.

Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Prevost should be informed immediately if you believe that the vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death.

Contact NHTSA by calling the Auto Safety Hotline at 1(888) 327–4236, by writing to NHTSA, U.S Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590, by TTY at 1 (800) 424–9153, or visit their web site at www.nhtsa.dot.gov.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 88996731

©2010 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Introduction 1
Introduction 1
General Information 1

System Operation 2
Protection Panel 2
Normal 3
Trouble 4
Fire Detector Activated 5
Delay AFSS button 5
Manual Activation switch 6

Pre-Trip Inspection 7
Pre-Trip Inspection 7

Index 9

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

It is important that the following information be read, understood and always followed.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a black background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

Introduction

This booklet is intended to help the driver about how to operate properly and take care of the Automatic Fire Supression System (AFSS).

General Information

Automatic Fire Suppression System (AFSS) provides continuous monitoring of a vehicle's hazard areas. It responds to fires fueled by diesel, gasoline, oil, lubricants and other flammable liquids. If a fire is detected, the system will alert the driver with both audible and visual alarms while immediately shutting down the ventilation system to prevent smoke from entering the passenger area. A time delay allows the driver the capability to bring the vehicle to a safe stop prior to the activation of the fire extinguisher and engine shutdown. The system can also be manually activated immediately by the driver.

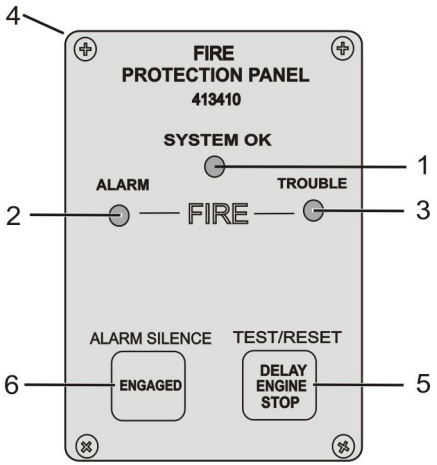
Automatic Fire Suppression System consists of three elements: Operator Controls, Detection, and Suppression.

Hazards Protected

Engine Compartment

2 System Operation

Protection Panel



T8061693

The protection panel displays the current system status. The protection panel contains:

1 SYSTEM OK lamp

2 Fire ALARM lamp

3 TROUBLE lamp

4 Audio Alarm

5 TEST/RESET switch

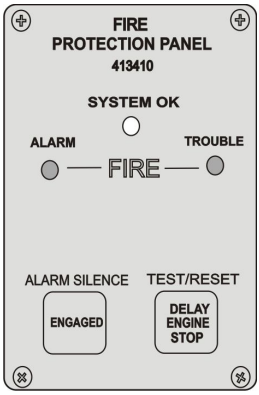
6 ALARM SILENCE switch

Normal

The “SYSTEM OK” lamp indicates power is on the system and that there are no trouble conditions present.

Note: If battery power to the system is low, the “SYSTEM OK” lamp will blink

Depressing the “TEST/RESET” switch tests the protection panel lamps and audio alarm. The “ALARM SILENCE ”switch will disable the audio alarm.



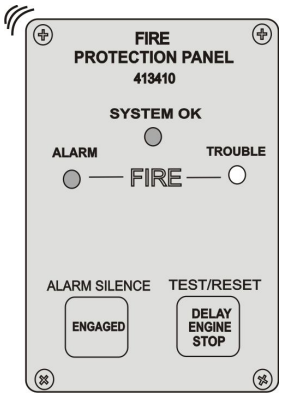
T8061694

4 System Operation

Trouble

The “TROUBLE” lamp blinks if there is a fault in the Detection Circuit due to wiring problem or sensor problem. If the fault is in the extinguisher circuitry the will illuminates solid and means that are a wiring problem or the extinguisher is discharged..

When the “TROUBLE” lamp is on, the “SYSTEM OK” lamp will be off and the audible alarm will sound intermittently.

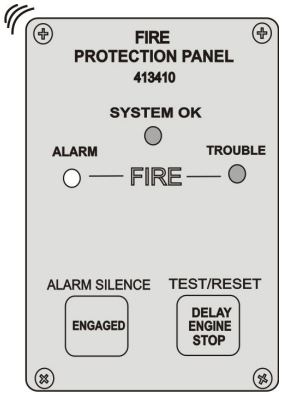


T8061695

Fire Detector Activated

When a fire detector automatically detects a fire, the audio alarm activate and the fire “ALARM” lamp illuminates solid

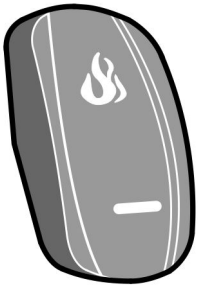
Note: If the vehicle is not safe to stop (i.e. on railtracks, in intersection) depress the DELAY ENGINE STOP button to delay 15 seconds that engine shutdowns and the extinguisher discharges; if is needed more time you need to deprees the button again and before the previous 15 seconds of delay finished.



T8061696

Delay AFSS button

If it is not possible to find quickly a safe place to stop the bus, use delay AFSS button instead of the Delay Engine Stop button (described above), then, depress the delay AFSS button to stop the activation of the system up to find a safe place to stop the bus, then press to the original position the Delay AFSS button to allow that engine stops and extinguisher discharges.



T8062854

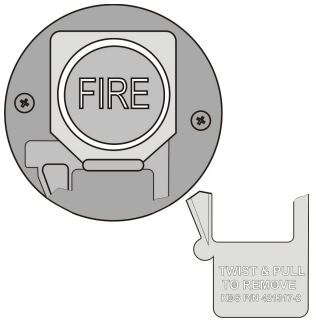
6 System Operation

Manual Activation switch

The manual activation switch allows immediate system activation (extinguisher discharge and engine shutdown) by the operator at any time.

Activation of the switch is accomplished by twisting and pulling the tamper seal to remove, lifting the cover and pressing and holding the red “FIRE” button for more than half a second.

After the manual activation switch has been activated, the fire “ALARM” lamp blinks and the audio alarm activates. The lamp will remain blinking until power is cycled to the system.



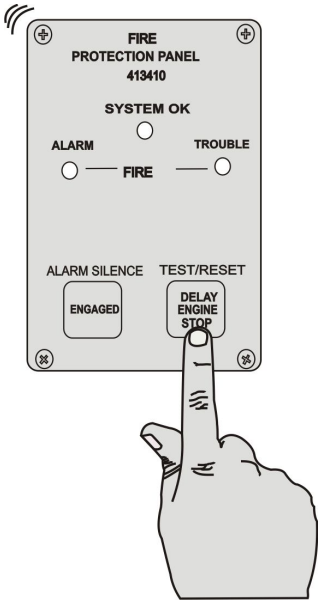
T8061697

Pre-Trip Inspection

Before starting a trip, first check the Control Panel by pressing the “TEST/RESET ”switch, and the following should occur:

- All lamps and switches should be illuminated.
- Audible Alarm should sound

As a second step, verify the tamper seal on the manual discharge switch is intact and access to the switch is unobstructed.



T8061698

Index

D

Delay AFSS button. 5

F

Fire Detector Activated..... 5

G

General Information..... 1

H

Hazards Protected..... 1

I

Introduction 1

M

Manual Activation Switch..... 6

N

Normal..... 3

P

Pre-Trip Inspection 7
Protection Panel..... 2

S

Safety Information 5
System Operation 2

T

Trouble 4

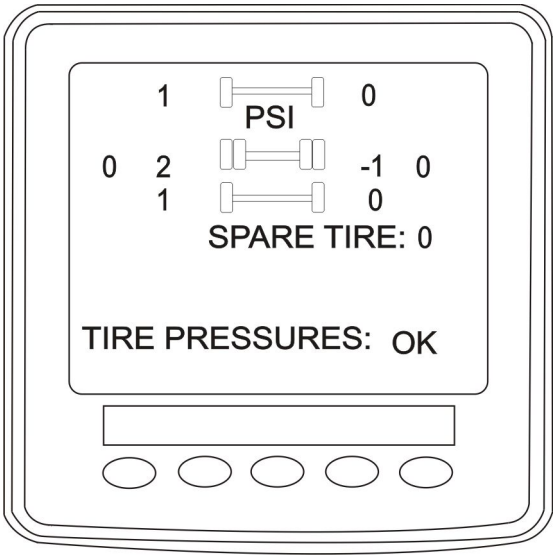
Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

88996731 English 25.02.10

Operating Instructions

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

9700 Bus



VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the operation and function of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System mounted on the 9700 US/CAN.

Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Prevost should be informed immediately if you believe that the vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death.

Contact NHTSA by calling the Auto Safety Hotline at 1(888) 327–4236, by writing to NHTSA, U.S Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590, by TTY at 1 (800) 424–9153, or visit their web site at www.nhtsa.dot.gov.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 88998506

©2010 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Introduction 1
Introduction 1
General Information 1

System Operation 2
TPMS Display 2
Operation 3
Start-up 3
Pre-Trip Check 4
Spare tire 7
Post Trip Operation 8

Index 11

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

It is important that the following information be read, understood and always followed.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a black background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

Introduction

This booklet is intended to help the driver about how to operate properly and take care of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).

General Information

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is a sensing device designed to identify and display tire operating data and activate an alert or warning when pressure or temperature irregularities are detected.

Note: It is the responsibility of the driver to react promptly and with discretion to alerts and warnings. Abnormal tire inflation pressures should be corrected at the earliest opportunity.

2 System Operation

TPMS Display

The TPMS display knows where the sensors are located. It receives the raw temperature and pressure readings from the TPMS receiver, it reads several signals from the vehicle and does the calculation required to generate the various screens.

When no readings have been received for a tire location or when the received data correspond to a parameter range defined as unavailable, then the reading is considered as not available and appears as two dash lines "– –"

The TPMS display is initially configured for current bus 9700.

The TPMS display is also configured with several other parameters, including threshold levels for the alarms.

The TPMS display power supply turns OFF when the ignition key is switched OFF.

Operation

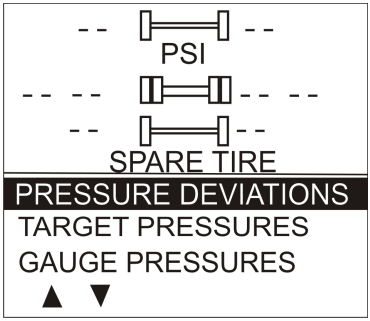
The system will monitor all vehicle tires plus the spare tire when a spare is supplied. And is configured for 8 tires total: two tires in front axle, 4 tires on drive axle and 2 tires on tag axle

Start-up

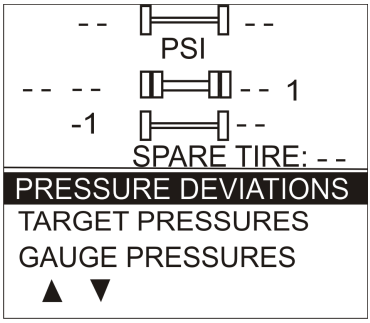
When turning the ignition switch to ON, two screen appears on the TPMS Display. Dash lines are displayed meaning that no pressure data have been received by the display..

As illustrated, the pressure readings will appear replacing the dash lines as the TPMS display starts to receive pressure data from the TPMS receiver. It can take 1 minute to get all pressure readings updated since the sensors transmit at a one minute interval.

The user can flip through the menus.



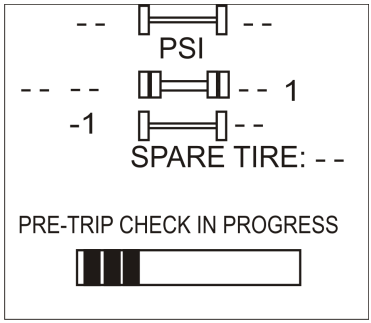
T8061960



T8061961

Pre-Trip Check

When one of the preconditions defined to start the pre-trip check is met, the TPM display enters into a pre-trip check routine and the screen shown below appears. The preconditions to initiate the pre-trip are: Park brake removed Or No activity on the display menu keys for a defined time (Key pressed timeout).



T8061962

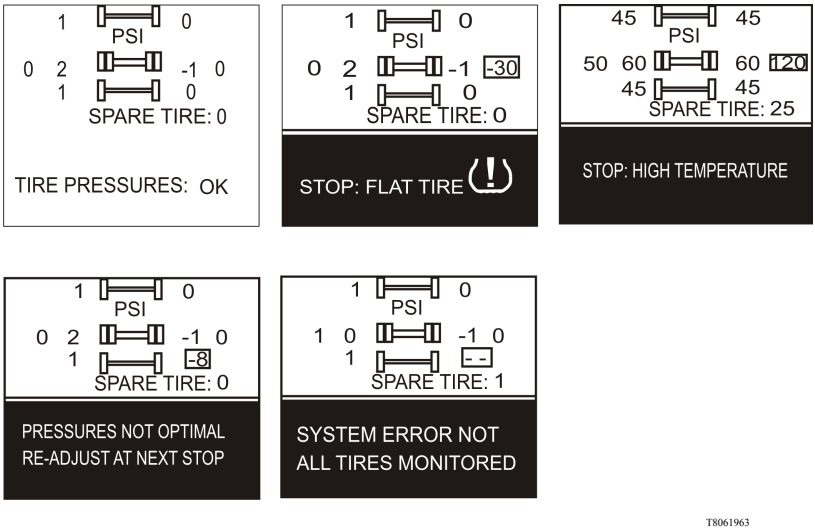
After a pretrip, the display is in a “drive” mode with bottom menu replaced by the alarm status. The display remains in this mode until one of the following occurs: A menu key is touched while the park brake is applied, or the park brake does a transition from released to park brake applied.

During the pre-trip check, the pressure readings for the different wheels become all available.

The pre-trip check ends, either when: the pressure readings have been received for all running wheels or the pre-trip check maximum time has elapsed. It was selected to provide sufficient time for all wheel sensors to wake-up and send a first reading.

The pre-trip check is aborted and the bottom menu reappears if the park brake was active and the user press one of the menu keys.

Upon completion of the pre-trip check, the TPMS display will come up with one of the following screens:



T8061963

A rectangle around each pressure/temperature reading of the tires that have an issue is blinking to draw the attention to the defective tires.

In the case of multiple errors at the same time, the highest priority error is displayed at the bottom. “Flat Tire” has the highest priority followed by “High Temperature”, “Not all tires monitored” and “Tire pressure not Optimal”.

⚠ DANGER

Continuing to operate the bus with a flat tire or a tire with excessively high temperatures may result in a blowout or tire fire. This could result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle crash and serious personal injury or death.

To get the driver's attention to the alarms, the bottom section of the screen where the alarm message appears will blink to reverse contrast at the following rate: 0.5 sec normal contrast, 0.5 sec reverse contrast. Pressing any key will acknowledge the alarms that are considered as non critical and stop the blinking of these alarms message for the remaining of the trip. The non critical alarms are: "Pressure not optimal" and "Not all tires monitored". The "flat tires" and "high temperature" alarms are critical and will keep blinking even when a key is pressed. If a different alarm occurs, blinking will start again. The blinking rectangle around the pressure/temperature readings is not impacted by the acknowledgement and keeps blinking until the error condition disappears.

The spare tire does not contribute to alarms and so never blinks.

On the road, the TPMS display shows one of the 5 previous screens.

In the event of a temperature alarm, the display switches automatically to temperature readings.

The driver can also press any of the menu keys to momentary switch the display to temperature readings. In this case, the temperature reading appears for 15 seconds and the display returns to pressure.

The switching to temperature by pressing a key does not take place if there is an acknowledgeable alarm active, since in this case pressing the key does acknowledge the alarm.

The switching to temperature does not take place either if there is an alarm of Temperature or Flat Tire.

The switching to temperature works when the bottom message indicates either: Tire Pressure OK, Pressure Not Optimal non flashing or not all tires monitored non flashing. When the switch is done to temperature readings, the bottom portion of the screen is not affected and still shows the status message.

Note: High temperature is not likely to occur during the pre-trip.

The pressure and temperature readings are continuously updated with the displayed readings of the wheel having issues blinking. The bottom line message is automatically updated to the highest priority alarm prevailing. There is a hysteresis on the alarm levels to assure that the error conditions do not flicker ON and OFF.

On the occurrence of an alarm, a beep will sound. The alarm beep could be turned OFF in the alarm settings menu.

Spare tire

The spare tire is monitored but it is not taken into account when setting the bottom alarm messages. This is to prevent unnecessary alarms that would otherwise occur, if for example, the spare tire is removed from a vehicle.

The user will have the possibility to check the pressure of the spare tire by accessing the TPMS display menu. For vehicles that have no spare tires, the title “spare tire:“ will still appear on the screens but the pressure will remain with two dash lines at all time.

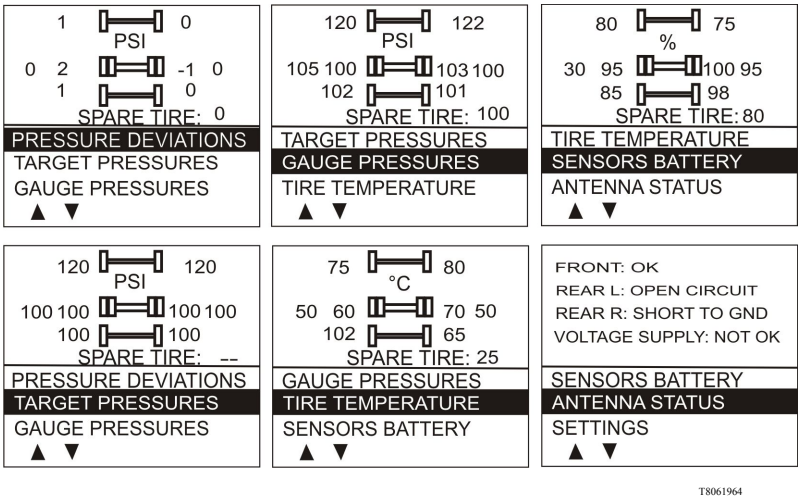
After the manual activation switch has been activated, the fire “ALARM” lamp blinks and the audio alarm activates. The lamp will remain blinking until power is cycled to the system. until power has been cycled to the system.

Post Trip Operation

When parking the vehicle (park brake applied), the TPMS display keep the drive mode display active. The driver can press any keys to get the bottom lines showing the status information replaced with the menus.

The pressure readings are still displayed and updated as new readings are received and the readings are blinking if not within the optimum pressure range.

From this point the user can scroll through the menus to get more detailed information and inflate/deflate the tires to bring them back to their optimum target pressures. Scrolling through these menus is also available prior to departure.

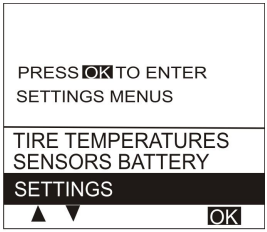


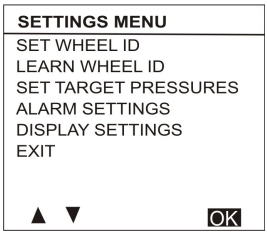
T8061964

The display remains in this mode with the menus appearing at the bottom until the pre-trip check sequence starts again.

Scrolling down below the Battery life menu will show the Settings menu. Highlighting the Settings and pressing OK allows entering the settings menu.

Highlighting the Exit menu and pressing OK exits the settings and come back to the pressure display mode.





T8061965

Index

G

General Information..... 1

I

Introduction 1

O

Operation..... 3

P

Post Trip Operation 8
Pre-Trip Check..... 4

S

Safety Information 5
Spare tire 7
Start-up 3
System Operation 2

T

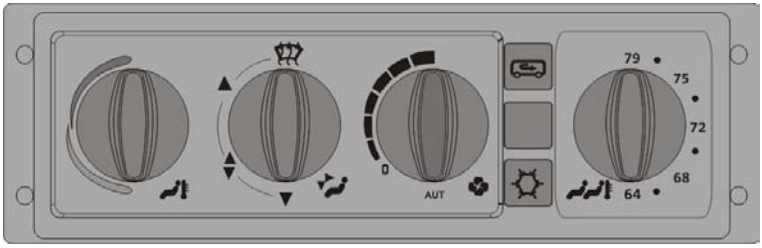
TPMS Display..... 2

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

88998506 English 29.10.10

Driver's Handbook

A/C Controller



T8061140

VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the operation and function A/C controls. The information in this manual applies to vehicles built January 2010 and later. Please keep this manual in the vehicle at all times.

Note: Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 88999203

©2009 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

…… 1
Introduction…… 1
General View…… 1
Controller Functions …… 2

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

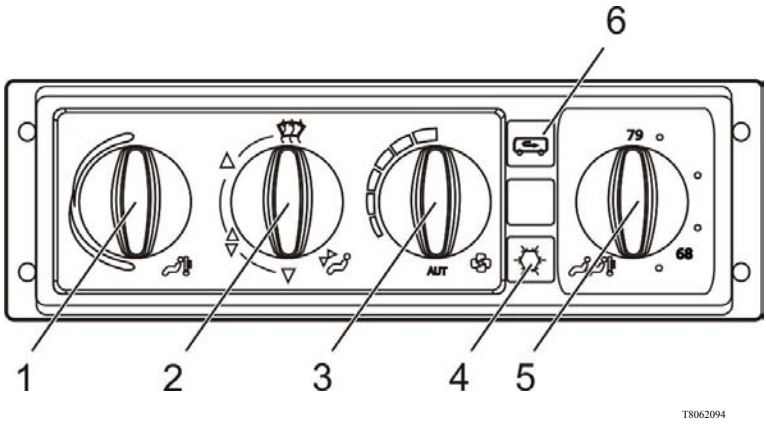
Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

Introduction

This booklet is intended to help the driver about how to operate properly and take care of the A/C controller.

The A/C controller allows control of the temperature inside the bus as well as, control of additional equipment (such as the recirculation air damper and air conditioning).

General View



1 Temperature, driver's compartment.

2 Direction of air flow, driver's compartment.

3 Defroster fan speed.

4 Air conduitioning.

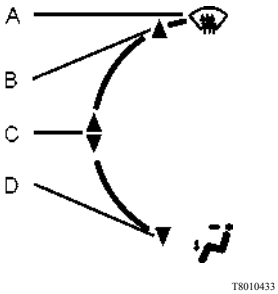
5 Temperature, passengers' compartment

6 Fresh Air/ Recirculation

Controller Functions

1 Sets desired temperature in driver's compartment to a value between 64°F (18°C) and 79°F (26°C).

2 Sets the direction of the air flow into the driver's compartment.
A) to the windscreen (defroster mode)
B) to the windscreen
C) to the driver and floor
D) to the floor.

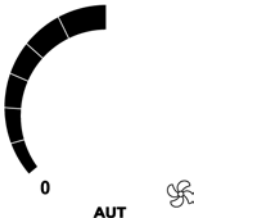


T8010433

Note: While the defroster mode is active, warm air is blowed, no matter position of knob 1.

3 Sets the desired fan speed

Note: In "AUT "position the fan speed is controlled automatically.



T8028666

4 Switches on the air conditioning. A backlit button indicates the air conditioning is on.

T3028692

5 Sets the desired temperature in the passengers' compartment to a value between 64°F 184°C) and 79°F (26°C).

6 Switches on the recirculation. A backlit button indicates the recirculation is switched on.

T3028690

VOLVO

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

88999203 English 11.2010

Printed in Sweden

Driver’s Handbook

Driver’s seat

B13R

VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the operation and function of the driver's seat. The information in this manual applies to vehicles built January 2009 and later. Please keep this manual in the vehicle at all times.

Note: Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Volvo Trucks North America should be informed immediately if you believe that the vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death.

Contact NHTSA by calling the Auto Safety Hotline at 1 (888) 327-4236, by writing to NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590, by TTY at 1 (800) 424-9153, or visit their website at www.nhtsa.dot.gov.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89008116

©2009 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Introduction 1
Important Notes 1

Adjusting the Seat Settings 2
Raising and Lowering the Seat 2
Adjusting the Cushion's, Rear Section 2
Setting the Distance from the Steering Wheel 3
Adjusting the Seat Backrest Position 3
Adjusting the Armrests 4
Adjusting the Lumbar Backrest 4
Safety Belt 5

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

Important Notes

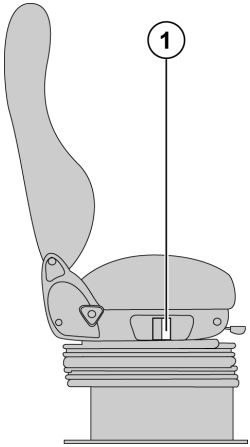
Do not use the seat before you have read these instructions on how to use it. Keep this manual in the vehicle at all times. With road traffic and passengers safety in mind, only perform adjustments to the seat when the bus is at a standstill.

2 Adjusting the Seat Settings

The National 60848 seat is designed with a wide range of adjustment options. The seat controls for adjusting the seat may be located on the left or right-hand side of the seat.

Raising and Lowering the Seat

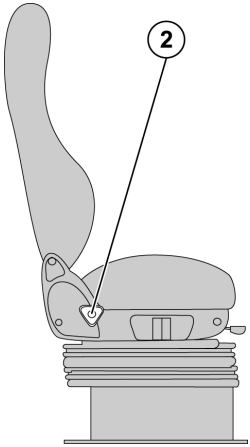
To make getting up, down or getting out from the drivers position easier the seat has a quick-lowering function. If control **(1)** is pressed downwards, the seat lowers making it easier to get up, down and out of the drivers position. If control **(1)** is pressed upwards, the seat rises to the drivers preferred position.



T0015365

Adjusting the Cushion's, Rear Section

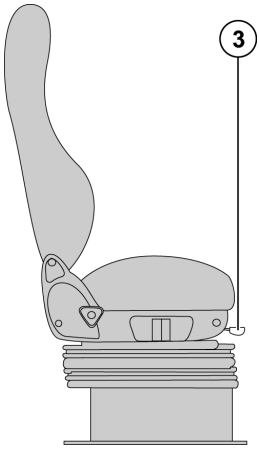
If the knob **(2)** is turned in either direction, the cushion's rear section raises up or moves downs.



T0015366

Setting the Distance from the Steering Wheel

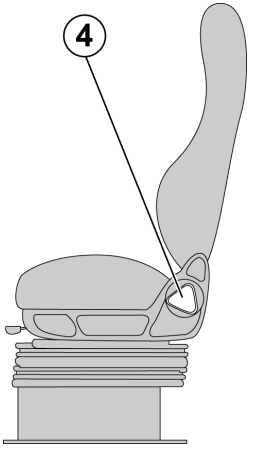
To move the whole seat forward or backward, push the lever **(3)** to the left then move the seat up to the desire position and release the lever to lock the seat again.



T0015367

Adjusting the Seat Backrest Position

Twist the knob **(4)** counterclockwise to move the backrest forward or turn the knob clockwise to move the backrest backward.

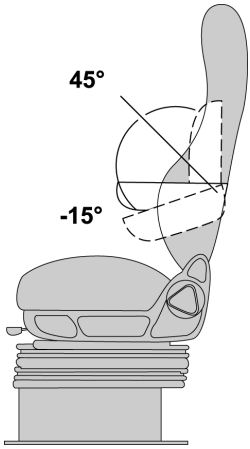


T0015368

4 Adjusting the Seat Settings

Adjusting the Armrests

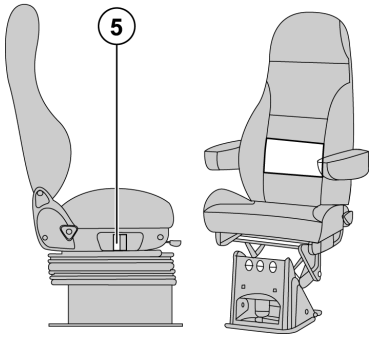
The seat has two armrests, one attached on either sides. To make sitting down or getting up easier, the armrest can be tilted fully vertical. The armrests have an adjust range from 15° to 45 °. To adjust the armrest angle, pull it up to the top position then down to its bottom position. From the down position, lift the armrest up to the desire position.



T0015369

Adjusting the Lumbar Backrest

By pulling the control **(5)** upward, the lumbar pressure increases while pushing down decreases pressure. When the control is released, the lumbar backrest is set.



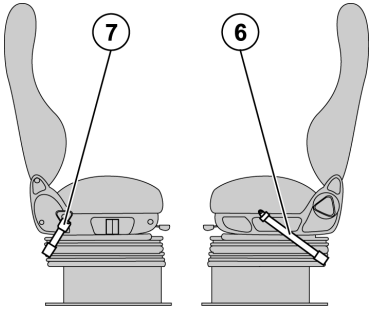
T0015370

Safety Belt

For security, always use the safety belt.

Two points safety belt

Cross the belt from the right **(7)** side to the left side **(6)** and insert the latch into the buckle on the left side an audible click is heard, verify proper lock of the latch by pulling on the latch. Safety belt should be worn low across the pelvic region (hip bone) and adjusted snugly.



T0015371

⚠ DANGER

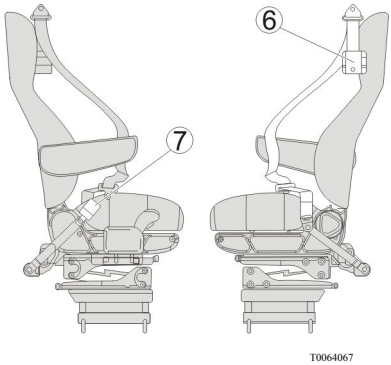
Never place the shoulder belt behind your back or under your arm.

A push button on the buckle is used to release the safety latch, by pushing in the button release the on the buckle

6 Adjusting the Seat Settings

Three point safety belt

To fasten the safety belt, pull the belt out from the retractor **(6)** and insert the latch into the buckle **(7)** an audible click is heard, verify proper lock of the latch by pulling on the latch. Adjust the slack by pulling on the top part of the belt until the lower part that crosses the lap, is snugly adjusted, release the top part and let the retractor pull the belt in. One lap portion of the safety belt should be worn low across the pelvic region (hip bone) and adjusted snugly, the other part of the safety belt should be worn over the shoulder and cross the chest, away from the neck.



⚠ DANGER

Never place the shoulder belt behind your back or under your arm.

A push button on the buckle is used to release the safety latch, by pushing in the button release the on the buckle

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

89008116 English 02.2009

Driver's Handbook

Prevost Liaison 2.0 Communication System

H3, X3

VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the operation and function of the Telematics System. The information in this manual applies to vehicles built January 2012 and later. Please keep this manual in the vehicle at all times.

Note: Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89038570

©2011 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

General Information **1**
System Information 1
Switch Control Buttons 2
Using the Display 3
Read Message 4
Send Message 6
Other Info 11
Compass Gauge 13
Location 13
Directional Arrow 13

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

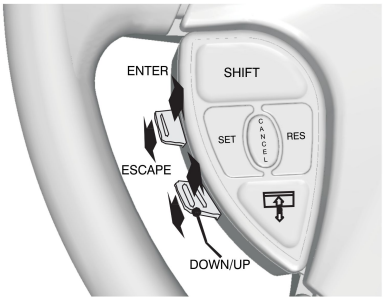
Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

System Information

The Telematics System is a cell phone GSM communication and GPS communication from GPS satellites to the vehicle. It includes a GPS communication ECU, a combined GPS/GSM antenna and wiring harnesses. This system allows communication between web-based software on the Customer Portal and the vehicle. The driver can send and receive short text messages, which are visible through the Driver Information Display (DID) in the vehicle instrument cluster. The fleet operator can communicate with the driver through web-based software on the Customer Portal. The Telematics System also provides GPS data in the DID Gauges menu. This data indicates the location and direction the vehicle is travelling to the driver and fleet operator.

Switch Control Buttons

The controls for the Driver Information Display (DID) in the instrument cluster are two buttons on the left hand side of the steering wheel..



W3071911

Upper one

- **ENTER** Selects message.
- **ESCAPE**Takes you back to previous menu .

Lower one

- **UP** Arrow scrolls up through menus, text, messages or alphabet.
- **DOWN**Arrow scrolls down through menus, text, messages or alphabet.

Using the Display

1 The Telematics System is seen as Prevost Liaison in system menu is in the DID. Press **ESCAPE** to display the main menus in the DID.

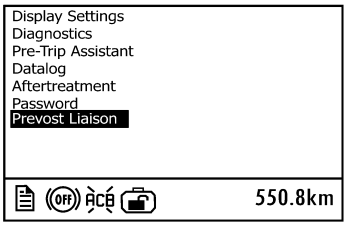
2 Use the up and down button on the left hand side of steering wheel switch to scroll to the Prevost Liaison menu.

3 Press **ENTER** to select the Prevost Liaison menu.

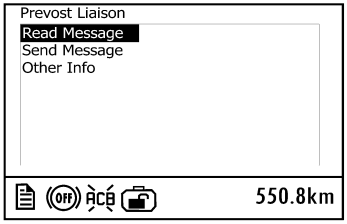
4 After selecting Prevost Liaison, another screen pops up, offering the choice to read messages, send messages, or view other information.

5 For instructions on reading and sending messages, or other information, refer to:

- “Read Message”, page 4
- “Send Message”, page 6
- “Other Info”, page 11



W3071907



W3071908

The following menus are available:

1 Read message
- Quick Response (Only available if there is a message available.)

2 Send message
- Driver & Equipment
- Dispatch Messages
- Free Text

3 Other Info
- Comm Link Info
- Mailbox Info
- GPS Info
- INI Info
- Configuration Info

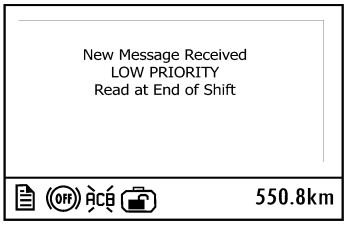
Read Message

Incoming Message Notification

The fleet operator can send messages to the driver. When a message is received by the Telematics ECU, the driver is notified by the INFO lamp in the instrument cluster :

W3005150

and a message in the DID. One of the following two messages will appear:



W3071909

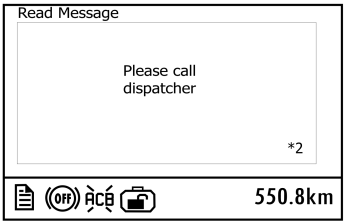
W3071910

Press **ESCAPE** on the left hand side of steering wheel switch when the message appears to turn off the INFO lamp and message.

Viewing Messages

To view all stored messages, select Prevost Liaison, then **Read message** in the DID.

Note: Messages **can be sent (or read)** only when the vehicle is stopped.

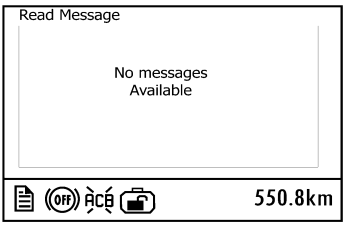


W3072069

*2 indicates there are two unread messages in the queue.

When there are no stored messages, the following screen is displayed.

This will be seen once in life of vehicle.



W3072070

WARNING

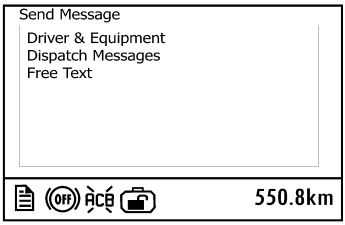
For safety reasons do not attempt to use the messaging feature if the vehicle is not parked, failure to do so could result in personal injury or vehicle damage.

Send Message

Sending Messages from the Vehicle

The driver can send messages to the fleet operator. Messages **can be sent (or read)** only when the vehicle is stopped .

The driver can send three types of messages: Driver & Equipment, Dispatch Messages, and Free text. Scroll to **Send message** in the Prevost Liaison menu and press **ENTER**.



W3072076

The Driver & Equipment and Dispatch Messages menus contain standard messages.

Driver & Equipment

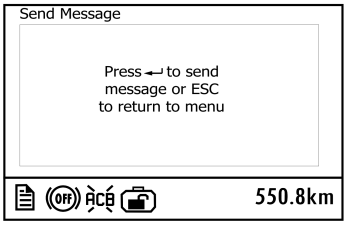
H3 and X3 Models
• Driver1:Start/Resume • Off Duty For the Day • Pre-Trip Check OK • Stopped: On Duty • Stopped: Off Duty • Please Call Me ASAP • Instructions Needed • Breakdown: Stranded • Breakdown: Driveable

Note: Message “Breackdown: Stranded”, open a case with PASS. PASS will take action to contact the people they have in reference for this vehicle help. Only this message is alerting PASS.

Dispatch Messages

H3 and X3 Models
• Trip/Leg: Started • Trip/Leg: Completed • Status: Loaded • Status: Empty • Not Fueled/ Cleanedl • Picked up Group • Dropped Group • Stop-Off • On Time Arrival • Late: More Than 1 h • Send Dispatch Info

To select a message, scroll to the message and press **ENTER**. To send the message, press **ENTER**. Press **ESCAPE** to return to the menu.



W3072073

Free Text

Free text messages are sent as follows:

Use the switch button to scroll the cursor (see 1 in illustration) through the available characters. Press the UP arrow to move to the left and the DOWN arrow to move to the right. Once the cursor has highlighted the correct character, press **ENTER**. Repeat for each character.

Hold the UP or DOWN arrow to quickly move the cursor through the available characters.

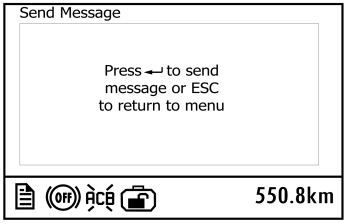
Use the message movement arrows (see 5 in illustration) to move the cursor (see 4 in illustration) in the message area.

When finished with the message select X (see 6 in illustration), or press **ENTER** and hold for 3 seconds, to send the message.

W3072077

1 Selection Cursor
2 Space
3 Message Area
4 Message Cursor
5 Message Movement Arrows
6 Send Icon

Note: Press **ESCAPE** to go back to the previous character. To cancel sending a typed message, press **ESCAPE** until the message is cleared from the screen.



W3072073

After Message is Sent

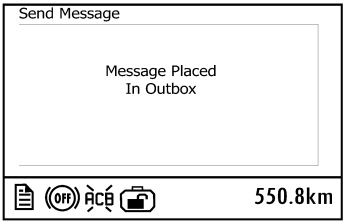
After a message is sent, one of the following confirmations will appear on screen:

If **Message Placed In Outbox** is displayed, the message was received by the Telematics ECU and will be sent during the next GPS transmission.

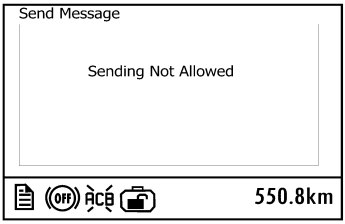
If **Sending Not Allowed** is displayed, the message was **NOT** sent. The reason for this failure may be the system is busy or the output queue is full. Wait briefly and try sending the message again. If the error message persists, please contact your fleet operator.

Note: Sending Not Allowed is displayed if the Outbox is full or there is an antenna problem. Scroll to Mailbox Info and Comm Link Info screens for additional information.

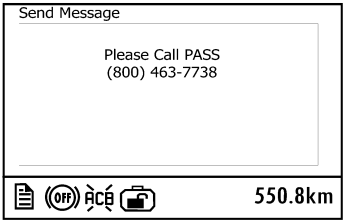
If **Please CALL PASS (800) 463–7738** is displayed, the message was **NOT** sent. This indicates that messaging capabilities have not been activated or they have been disabled by the fleet. Please contact your fleet operator.



W3072080



W3072081



W3072082

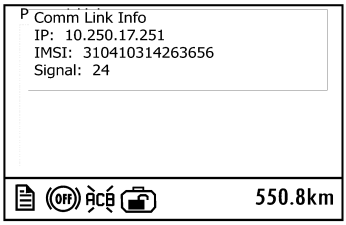
Other Info

The **Other Info** menu displays general operational information about the Telematics System. Information includes:

- Comm Link Info
- Mailbox Info
- GPS Info
- INI Info
- Configuration Info

Use the switch buttons to scroll through each screen. To update the information in each screen, scroll to the next screen then return to the previous screen.

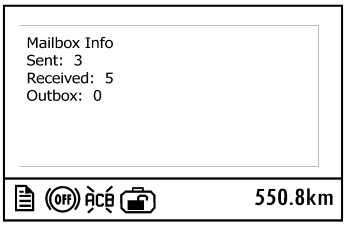
The **Comm Link Info** screens provide information about the Internet Protocol and International Mobile Subscriber Identity. Signal is a scale of 0 to 30, indicates quality of cell reception.



W3072078

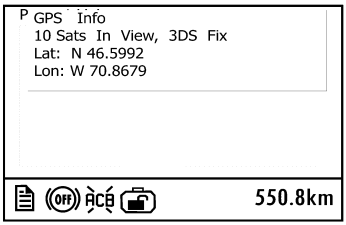
The **Mailbox Info** screen indicates the total number of messages sent and received. Also indicated is the number of messages currently in the outbox waiting to be transmitted and whether or not the outbox is full.

0in Outbox means all messages where processed and sent. If in a zone where no cell coverage, and message is sent by driver, Outbox could indicate something different than 0, where is a message pending. This could be a check for driver if he want to confirm his message have gone through.



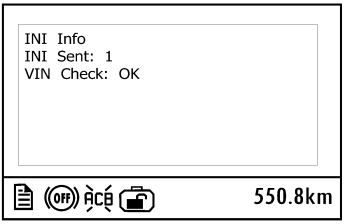
W3072083

The **GPS Info** screen provides information about the GPS signal. It displays how many satellites are in view and the type of **Fix** (3D, 2D or No Fix). **Lat** is the current latitude. **Lon** is the current longitude.



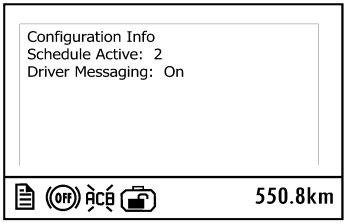
W3072079

The **INI Info** screen displays the current state of the ECU initialization (start-up) and the VIN Check status.



W3072084

The **Configuration Info** screen indicates the status of active schedules and driver messaging. When schedules are enabled, the number of active schedules is also displayed.

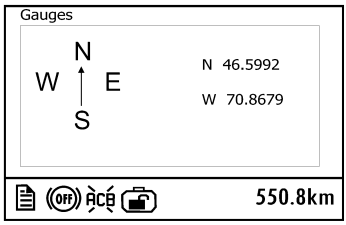


W3072085

Compass Gauge

Select **Gauges** in the DID main menu and scroll UP or DOWN to display the compass gauge.

If a GPS fix is not available, the gauge may or may not display the compass arrow, a latitude and longitude reading, a 0.0 or dashes latitude and longitude reading. Scroll to the **GPS Info** screen to check the GPS signal status.



Location

The location of the vehicle is displayed in degrees latitude and longitude. The top value shows the latitude. The bottom value shows the longitude.

Directional Arrow

The compass arrow shows the direction the vehicle is travelling. After the vehicle is stopped, the arrow stays pointed in the last direction of travel.

Volvo Bus Corporation

Göteborg, Sweden

89038570 English 11.2011

Driver's Handbook

Passenger, Seat Side Electrical Outlet

B13R

VOLVO

Foreword

This information provides the service information about the operation and function of the Passenger, Seat Side Electrical Outlet in Volvo buses.

Note: Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89070632

©2012 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Passenger, Seat Side Electrical Outlet 1
System Overview 1
Network System Description 2
Electric Network Operation 3
Resetting Electric Network 127 V 4

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

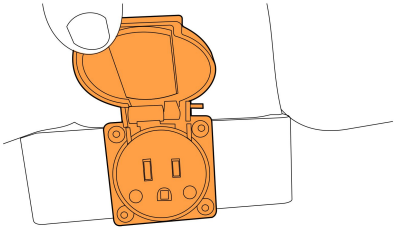
⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

System Overview

Some vehicles can be equipped with 127 V AC passenger, seat side electrical outlets. The circuit may have up to twenty four(24) outlets.



W3076818

As standard, one electrical outlet, is located in front of each pair of passenger seats.

CAUTION

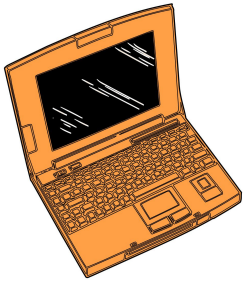
Only laptop computer may be connected to the electrical network.
Connecting any other electrical device may cause a malfunction of the electrical network.

2 Passenger, Seat Side Electrical Outlet

Network System Description

Passengers can use the electrical outlets to connect their laptop computer.

A maximum of sixteen (16) laptop computers can be connected at same time.



W0074155

Electric Network Operation

The following conditions must be satisfied before the electrical network can be used.

1. Engine Speed must be greater than 1000 RPM.

2. Wheel Chair Lift (WCL) must be inactive.

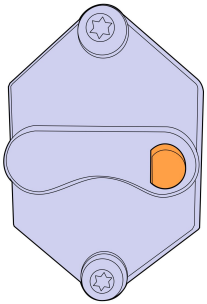
Note: If this required condition is not met, the operation relay will not activate and electrical network will not function.

Note: If the vehicle does not have a WCL condition 2 does not apply.

4 Passenger, Seat Side Electrical Outlet

Resetting Electric Network 127 V.

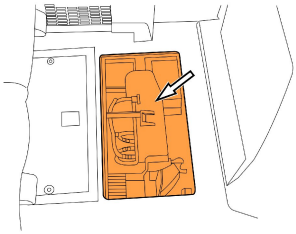
To protect the vehicle, the electrical network has a thermal circuit breaker to disconnect the power supply if the load exceeds 25A.



W3074156

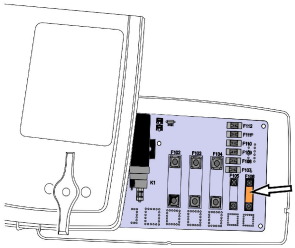
In the event of a circuit interruption the passengers must disconnect their laptop computer prior to resetting the circuit breaker. Leaving devises connected to the electrical network may damage the devises or cause a repeat circuit interruption.

There is an 50A fuse protecting the electric network. This fuse is located in the fuse and relay box in the interior bus floor behind the operators seat.



W3076819

If the fuse fails, it should be replaced by an 50A fuse. Never insert a fuse of a higher amperage rate.
Replacement of this fuse should be performed **by a properly trained technician**.



W3076817

WARNING

Failure to use proper circuit protection devices in the vehicle can result in damage to the vehicle and its components. Replace blown fuses only with fuses of the same rating. Replace fusible links only with proper replacement parts of the exact gauge and length. Failure to use proper circuit protection could overload the circuit, causing damage to the vehicle and a possible fire, and personal injury

Volvo Bus Corporation

Göteborg, Sweden

89070632 English 10.2012

Driver's Handbook

Exhaust Aftertreatment System

B13R, 9700

VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the operation and function of the Exhaust Aftertreatment System. The information in this manual applies to vehicles complying with US10 Emissions Standard Please keep this manual in the vehicle at all times.

Note: Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Prevost should be informed immediately if you believe that the vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death.

Contact NHTSA by calling the Auto Safety Hotline at 1 (888) 327-4236, by writing to NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590, by TTY at 1 (800) 424-9153, or visit their website at www.nhtsa.dot.gov.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89090868

©2013 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Exhaust Aftertreatment System 1
General 1
System Overview 2
Exhaust Aftertreatment System Description 3
Filtration and Regeneration Unit 3
Passive regeneration 3
Stationary (parked) regeneration 4
Safety Information 5
Selective Catalytic Reduction 6
Instrument Cluster Icons 8
Operation 9
Aftertreatment Menu 10
DPF Regeneration 11
Aftertreatment DEF Tank Level — Driver Warning & Inducement 16
Aftertreatment DEF Quality — Driver Warning & Inducement 17
Exit conditions for DEF Quality “8Km/h (5 mph) road speed limit” Inducement: 18
Aftertreatment Tampering — Driver Warning & Inducement 19
Misfilling Diesel or Aftertreatment DEF Tanks 21
Results of misfilling DEF in Diesel Tank 21
Results of misfilling diesel en Aftertreatment DEF Tank 21
Aftertreatment System Maintenance 21
Aftertreatment System Conditions 22
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) 23
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Handling 23
About spilled Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) 24
Warranty and Maintenance 25
Exhaust Aftertreatment System Maintenance 25
Emissions Maintenance 25
Engine Gaseous Emission Control Systems 26
Emissions Control System Warranty 27
Engine Gaseous Emissions Control System Warranty 28
Federal Emission Requirements 28
Emission Control System Warranty — California 29
Emissions Control System Warranty 32
Engine Components, Service Schedules 34

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

General

USA

Emissions Control Compliance: The Federal Clean Air Act, Section 203 (a) (3), states the following concerning the removal of air pollution control devices or modification of a certified engine to a non-certified configuration:

“The following acts and the causing thereof are prohibited:

(3) For any person to remove or render inoperative any device or element of design installed on or in a motor vehicle engine in compliance with regulations under this part prior to its sale and delivery to the ultimate purchaser, or for any manufacturer or dealer knowingly to remove or render inoperative any such design after sale and delivery to the ultimate purchaser”

Specifically, please note that no person may make such changes prior to the sale and delivery of the vehicle to the ultimate purchaser, and, in addition, no manufacturer or dealer may take such action after sale and delivery of the vehicle to the ultimate purchaser. The law provides a penalty of up to $10,000 for each violation.

Modifications, such as reprogramming of the fuel system so the engine will exceed the certified horsepower or torque, or removing the mufflers are examples of illegal changes.

Changes should not be made to a certified engine that would result in an engine that does not match the configuration of an engine model that is currently certified to meet Federal Standards

Canada

The same conditions that apply in the USA apply to Canada, with one exception. After the vehicle is sold to a retail customer, that is, the end user, the jurisdiction controlling the emissions control devices becomes the province in which the vehicle is licensed. No changes should be made that render any or all of the devices inoperative.

Should the owner/ operator wish to make any changes to the emissions control devices, check with the provincial authority before making any such changes

Mexico

The same conditions that apply in the USA apply to Mexico. Refer to Mexican Federal Law for Emissions Control which adheres to EPA regulations. No changes Should be made that render any or all of the emissions control devices inoperative.

If the owner/operator wishes to make changes to the emission control devices, check with state authority before changes are made.

2 Exhaust Aftertreatment System

System Overview

EPA 2010 requires 83% reduction in NOx and 0% reduction in particulate relative to EPA 2007; then is retained the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) and is added another aftertreatment device called Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) catalyst.
The process for reducing NOx via aftertreatment is called Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR). It requires a catalytic converter into which is injected Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF). The primary component of DEF is water; the active component is urea. Urea is a nitrogen compound that turns to ammonia when heated. When a urea-and-water solution is injected into the exhaust stream and passed over a catalyst, the urea reacts with the NOx to form nitrogen and water vapor – two clean and harmless components of the air we breathe. The aftertreatment system primary function is to capture and oxidize (regenerate) the particulate matter (soot) in the engine exhaust gases and to reduce NOx. To achieve this goal, the exhaust aftertreatment system is split into two main sections: the exhaust gases first enter the Diesel Oxidation Catalyst (DOC) and Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) assembly to capture and regenerate the soot on a regular or passive basis, then the exhaust gases flow through the catalytic converter to reduce NOx to minimum level.
Vehicles equipped with a DPF require the use of EO-O Premium Plus (or VDS-4) specification high performance diesel engine oil and Ultra Low Sulfur Diesel (ULSD) fuel.

CAUTION

The use of Diesel fuel other than ULSD and engine oils other than EO-O Premium Plus (or VDS-4), will adversely affect performance, efficiency and durability of DPF system and the engine, to the point where the engine may not run at all. Manufacturer's warranties can also be rendered void due usage of improper fuel. None approved fuel additives (including engine oil) are NOT permitted. Blends of No. 1D and No. 2D grades of ULSD are recommended and allowable for cold weather operations.

Exhaust Aftertreatment System Description

The exhaust aftertreatment system consists of two units, the filtration and regeneration unit and the selective catalytic reduction SCR unit.

Filtration and Regeneration Unit

The main purpose of the filtration and regeneration unit is to capture and oxidize (regenerate) the particulate matter (soot) in the engine exhaust gas. The exhaust gas first enters the Diesel Oxidation Catalyst (DOC) and then flow through the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF); together they capture and regenerate the soot on a regular or passive basis. Through constant monitoring of the exhaust gas temperature and the system back pressure, the engine control module is able to manage regeneration.

Passive regeneration

Passive regeneration is the process by which the particulate matter is oxidized due to the heat generated by the engine internal combustion process. During normal highway operation, exhaust temperatures alone are usually high enough to oxidize accumulating soot.

Stationary (parked) regeneration

In a small number of specific engine duty cycles, engine control module may not be capable of completing an active regeneration. In these situations, the operator will be notified that a stationary or parked regeneration may be required. A DPF telltale light will illuminate indicating the need for user interaction. The lamp gives the operator a grace period to allow this process to take place at a time when most convenient for the operator. This process requires the vehicle to be parked while a driver or maintenance technician initiates the regeneration process using the DID menus. Once initiated, the stationary regeneration process will be complete in about 45 minutes. The driver will be notified of the need for a stationary regeneration (parked) by illumination of the DPF REGENERATION telltale light.

Safety Information

The exhaust aftertreatment system utilizes technology that oxidizes trapped particles of unburned hydrocarbons thereby reducing emissions. This oxidation occurs during the regeneration process. While regeneration is occurring, very high exhaust gas temperatures will occur when the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

Always ensure that the vehicle is in a safe and suitable location to withstand the high temperatures that occur during the generation process. Equipment damage or personal injury may occur if combustibles are too close to the exhaust pipe or outlet.

WARNING

The temperature of the exhaust system components during the regeneration process can exceed 500 degrees C (1000 degrees F). Various factors including ambient temperature and duration of the regeneration process, determine when these components will return to normal operating temperature after regeneration has completed. Be extremely careful around these hot components. Contact with these components can result in personal injury.

6 Exhaust Aftertreatment System

Selective Catalytic Reduction

Selective Catalytic Reduction is an emissions-reduction technology with the ability to deliver near-zero emissions of nitrogen oxides (NOx), a smog-causing pollutant and greenhouse gas. SCR´s performance has been proved in millions of miles of real-world operation in other countries, as well as in long-term field tests in U.S.

SCR reduces NOx emissions to very low levels, while at the same time delivering excellent fuel economy and reliability. The system doesn´t change the design or operation of the basic engine. Rather, SCR is an aftertreatment system which converts NOx in exhaust stream into harmless gases. Modern diesels already use exhaust aftertreatment systems, called diesel particulate filters, to control emissions of another pollutant, soot (also known as particulate matter or PM).

SCR works by injecting Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) into the exhaust steam, after the DPF. DEF is a safe, simple solution of water and urea. DEF works with the heat of the exhaust and catalyst to convert NOx into nitrogen and water vapor — two harmless and natural components of the air we breathe. The end result is cleaner air, excellent fuel efficiency and a reliable emissions control system for today's modern diesel engine.

The VOLVO SCR system is simple and effective, with few components. It consists of a Aftertreatment DEF tank plus a Aftertreatment DEF pump, Aftertreatment DEF dosing unit and SCR catalyst. The advantage of using DEF is that it enables the engine to use less EGR —and higher oxygen levels- for better combustion, while meeting EPA near-zero NOx emissions requirement of 0.2 g/hp-hr NOx. By using DEF, we avoid the disadvantages of increasing EGR to massive levels. This results in better fuel economy from your VOLVO engine.

W2055491

CAUTION

Do not put diesel fuel in the aftertreatment DEF tank. Diesel fuel, if sprayed into the hot exhaust along with the DEF, could ignite explosively causing a fire resulting in personal injury or damage to the exhaust system.

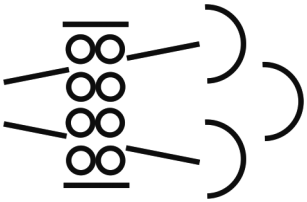
Instrument Cluster Icons

Aftertreatment icons are displayed on the instrument cluster. There are two aftertreatment icons.

- DPF Regeneration Required
- High Exhaust System Temperature (HEST)

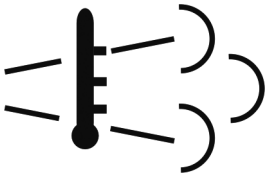
The DPF Regeneration Required icon illuminates when the diesel particulate filter is becoming full and regeneration is needed.

The icon flashes when the filter is full or overfull.



T0015346

The high Exhaust System Temperature icon illuminates when a parked regeneration is initiated. When the HEST icon is illuminated, do not park or operate the vehicle near people or any flammable materials, vapors and structures.



T0015347

Operation

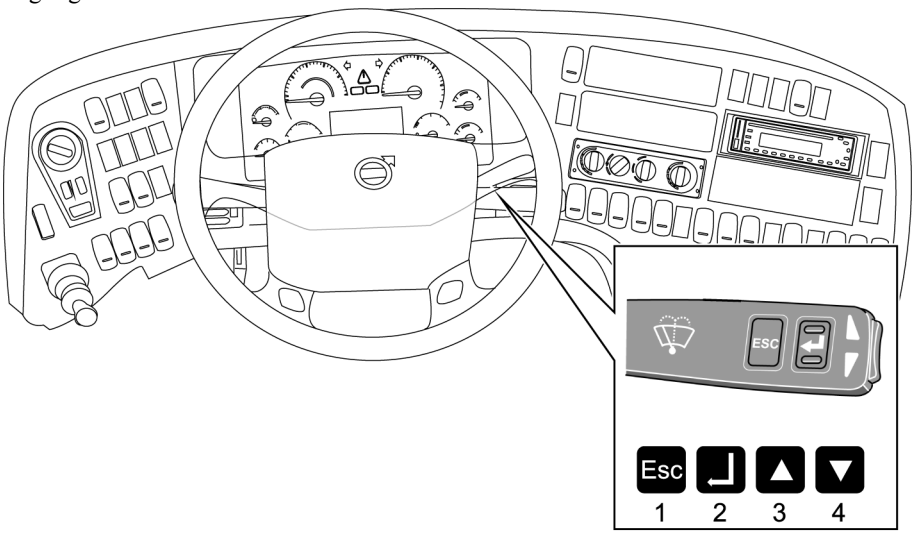
The stalk switch control lever is used to interact with the Driver Information Display (DID) in the center of the instrument cluster. The lever is located on the right-hand side of the steering wheel.

1 Esc or Escape button is used to return to the previous menu or display

2 ↵ or Enter button is used to display a list of menus, open a menu or select the highlighted area.

3 Up arrow button is used to scroll up through a menu

4 Down arrow button is used to scroll down through a menu.



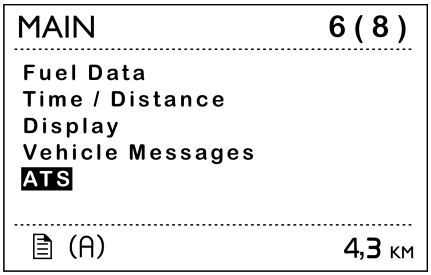
T0015395

Aftertreatment Menu

1 The aftertreatment system (ATS) menu is in the DID.

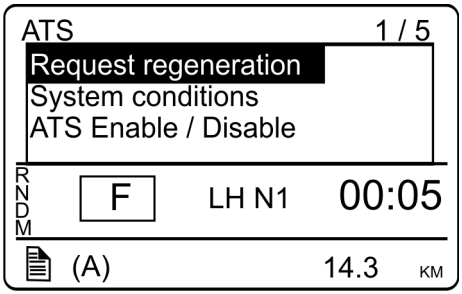
2 Use the up and down buttons on the stalk switch to scroll to the Aftertreatment menu.

3 Press the ↵ button to select the ATS menu



W2080635

The ATS menu has three submenus: Request regeneration, System status and ATS enable/ disable.



W2075117

DPF Regeneration

⚠ WARNING

Always ensure that the vehicle is in a safe and suitable location to withstand the high temperatures that occur during the generation process. Equipment damage or personal injury may occur if combustibles are too close to the exhaust pipe or outlet.

Note: If the vehicle is in a location that may be hazardous when regeneration begins, the regeneration should be stopped. If the regeneration is stopped by vehicle operator, it should be initiated at a later time when the vehicle is in a safer location. Regenerations that are stopped and never restarted at a later time however, will require that the vehicle be taken to an authorized Volvo workshop (or for Prevost supported vehicles, a Prevost service center/provider) to have the regeneration manually started.

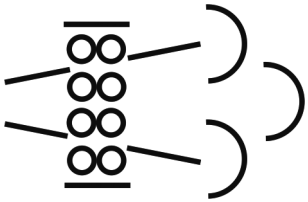
⚠ CAUTION

If the regeneration is cancelled by vehicle operator, it must be completed as soon as possible to avoid exhaust aftertreatment system damage.

There are two types of regeneration:

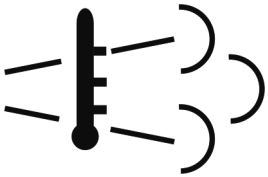
- Passived, and
- Parked

Passive regeneration only occurs when the vehicle is moving at uninterrupted highway speed. Parked regeneration is manually initiated when the vehicle is stationary. This is the standard configuration. Other configurations are available.



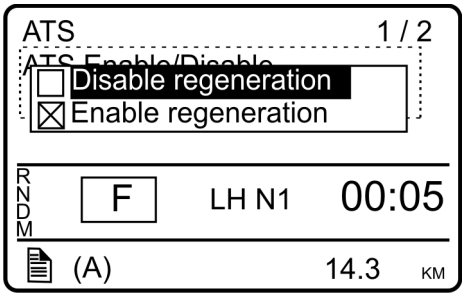
T0015346

If the regeneration process is not delayed, the regeneration process starts. The DPF Regeneration Required icon turns off and the High Exhaust System Temperature (HEST) icon may illuminate.



T0015347

To temporarily disable regeneration, scroll to the Aftertreatment menu in the DID, select “ATS Enable/Disable”. When regeneration is disabled, the letters ATS with X through them will be displayed in the DID. Enable regeneration by scrolling to the Aftertreatment menu, selecting “ATS enable/disable” and selecting “Enable regeneration”.



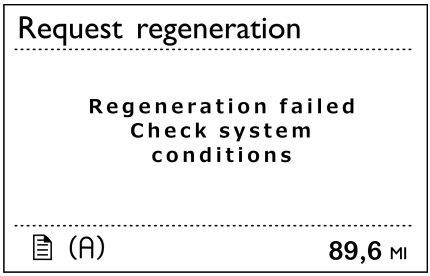
W2075110

Note: It is important to enable regeneration as soon as possible to avoid engine problems. Long-term engine operation with regeneration disabled will result in a loss of engine performance including horsepower, torque and speed derates. Also, the DPF filter will become overloaded with soot and require service.

The regeneration process can be stopped at any time by turning the ignition key to OFF, scrolling to the Aftertreatment menu in the Driver Information Display (DID) and selecting “ATS enable/disable”, or by pressing the ↵ button on the stalk switch. Regeneration cannot be initiated if it is not required. The following conditions must be met to perform a parked regeneration:

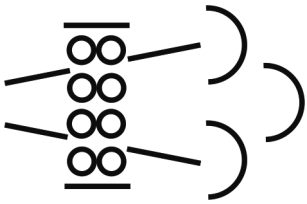
- Parking brake on and transmission in neutral
- Minimum 10 volts battery charge
- Engine running
- Accelerator and clutch pedal released
- PTO not active

If a request for parked regeneration fails, “Regeneration failed. Check system conditions” is displayed. Scroll to the Aftertreatment menu in the Driver Information Display (DID) and select “System conditions” to determine why the regeneration failed.



W2080636

If the DPF Regeneration icon is flashing, the diesel particulate filter is full. Maintain uninterrupted highway speed for an passive or move the vehicle to a safe location and initiate a parked regeneration.



T0015346

If the Regeneration Required icon is flashing and the CHECK light illuminates, the diesel particulate filter is overfull. Engine performance will be limited. To avoid further engine derate, immediately move the vehicle to a safe location and initiate a parked regeneration, or take the vehicle to an authorized Volvo dealership (or for Prevost support vehicles, to a Prevost service center/ provider).

T3014365

If the DPF Regeneration Required icon is flashing and the STOP light illuminates, a serious engine problem has occurred. The diesel particulate filter may be over its maximum capacity and the engine may shut down. The vehicle must be taken immediately to an authorized Volvo dealership (or for Prevost supported vehicles, to a Prevost service center/ provider) for service.

T3014364

Aftertreatment DEF Tank Level — Driver Warning & Inducement

Aftertreatment DEF tanks are sized to have no less than two times the diesel fuel tank mileage.

The vehicle instrument cluster has an aftertreatment DEF tank level gauge.

Triggers	Aftertreatment DEF Tank Low Level Indicator	Driver Information Display Screen
100% to 12% Aftertreatment DEF Tank Level Gauge	None	None
<=12% Aftertreatment DEF Tank Level Gauge	 W2029416 Solid indicator	Low DEF level Refill to avoid Engine derate
0% Aftertreatment DEF Tank Level Gauge (~1% DEF Remaining)	 W2029415 Blinking indicator	DEF Tank Empty Engine in derate Refill to avoid 5 Mph
0% Aftertreatment DEF Tank Level Gauge AND either: 1 Vehicle stationary for 20 minutes, or 2 Diesel fuel Refueling > 15% with parking brake engaged.	 W2029415 .	DEF tank empty Speed limited to 5 Mph

Aftertreatment DEF Quality — Driver Warning & Inducement

Triggers	Lamp Status	Driver Information Display Screen
Good DEF Quality	None	None
Poor DEF Quality DTC Initially Detected	W2029417	SCR performace low Engine derate in < xxx mins
Poor DEF Quality DTC Initially Detected + 1 hour of operation	W2029417	SCR performance low Engine derate in < xxx mins
Poor DEF Quality DTC Initially Detected +4 hours of operation	W2029417	SCR perfomance low Engine in derate 5 Mph in < xxx mins
Poor DEF quality DTC initially detected + 4 hours of operation AND either: 1 Vehicle stationary for 20 minutes, or 2 Diesel Fuel Refueling > 15% with parking brake engaged	W2029417	SCR Performance low Engine in derate 5 Mph at next stop
By means of 1 engine start or use of a service tool temporary exit from 8 Km/h (5 Mph) Inducement	W2029417	SCR performance low Speed limited to 5 Mph
Ignition Key Cycle before DEF Quality Evaluation has been completed	W2029417	SCR perf. check Engine in derate 5 Mph Limit removed

Exit conditions for DEF Quality “8Km/h (5 mph) road speed limit” Inducement:

Next 1 Engine Starts: Return to 25% torque reduction until there is a proper DEF quality evaluation. If poor DEF quality is detected during the next monitoring cycle then 8 Km/h (5 mph) is resumed after the vehicle is stationary for 20 minutes. After one engine start has been exhausted then a Tech Tool is required to exit the 8 Km/h (5 mph) road speed limit.

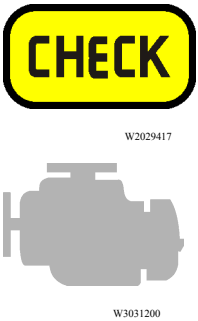
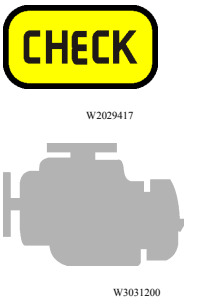
With Tech Tool DTC Clearing: Invoke 25% torque reduction until there is a proper DEF quality evaluation. If poor DEF Quality is detected during the next monitoring cycle then 8 Km/h (5 mph) is resumed after de vehicle is stationary for 20 minutes.

Aftertreatment Tampering — Driver Warning & Inducement

When the SCR tampering fault is active for one or more hours a new Driver Information Display screen appears. The text changes for the Driver Information Display (DID) screen associated with this fault are listed in the table below.

Note: Repeated acts of tampering will result in more severe inducement.

Triggers	Lamp Status	Driver Information Display Screen
No fault	None	None
Tampering Fault Detect **Note:** For examples of various SCR sensor tampering types refer to the “SCR Tampering ” table below	 W2029417	SCR system fault Engine derate in < xxx mins
Second Drive Cycle with Active DTC.	 W2029417 W3031200	SCR System Fault Engine in derate 5Mph in <xxx mins
Driving with Active Fault for + 1 hour.	 W2029417 W3031200	SCR system fault Engine in derate 5 Mph in < mins

Driving with Active Fault for + 4 hours		SCR system fault Engine in derate 5 Mph at next stop
Active tampering DTC iniatilly detected + 4 hours of operation AND eitrher: 1 Vehicle stationary for 20 minutes, or 2 Diesel Fuel Refueling> 15% with parking brake engage		SCR system fault Speed limited to 5 Mph.

SCR Tampering
Aftertreatment Control Module (ACM) Disconnected
Aftertreatment Inlet NOx Sensor Disconnected
Aftertreatment Outlet NOx Sensor Disconnected
DEF Pump Disconnected
DEF Dosing Valve Disconnected
DEF Tank Lever Sensor Disconnected
DEF Dosing valve or line blocked
DEF Pump pressure build up failure
DEF Return Line Blocked or Plugged

Note: For additional DID information refer to the Driver Information Display Manual.

Misfilling Diesel or Aftertreatment DEF Tanks

Although diesel fuel and Aftertreatment DEF caps are clearly labeled and filler necks and nozzles are different accidents can happen.

Contamination of fluids by- misfilling of diesel or DEF in the wrong tank may result in vehicle malfunction

Results of misfilling DEF in Diesel Tank

- Engine may run poorly or not at all
- Injectors may be damaged
- Exhaust system corrosion may occur between turbocharger and Aftertreatment DPF
- On Board Diagnostic (OBD) Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTC)
- Costly repair

Results of misfilling diesel en Aftertreatment DEF Tank

- Aftertreatment SCR system may be damaged by Diesel
- SCR Catalyst may be damage by diesel (chemical damage)
- Emissions may be non-compliant
- On Board Diagnostic (OBD) Diagnostic Trouble Codes (DTC)
- Costly repairs

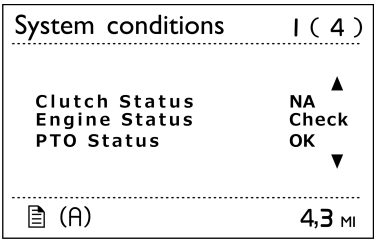
Aftertreatment System Maintenance

The vehicle must be taken to an authorized Volvo workshop (or for Prevost supported vehicles, to a Prevost service center/provider) to remove the ash from the diesel particulate filter and clean the aftertreatment fuel injector.

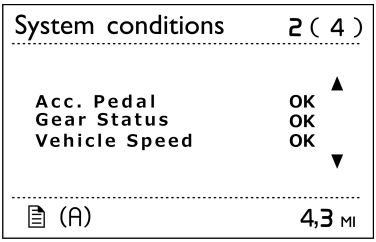
- The ash cleaning interval is 400 000 km (250,000 miles) or 4,500 hours, which ever occurs first.
- The aftertreatment fuel injector cleaning interval is 240 000 km (150,000 miles) or 4500 hours, which ever occurs first.

Aftertreatment System Conditions

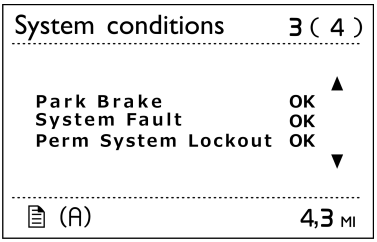
When ATS System conditions is selected, the following submenus are available:



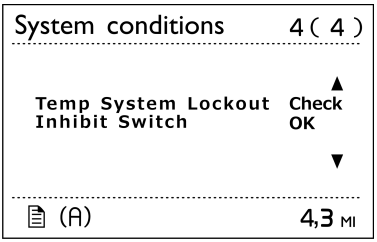
W3079741



W3079742



W3079743



W3079744

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is a reactant that´s key to the SCR process. It´s nontoxic, aqueous solution of 32.5% urea and 67.5% water. Urea is a compound of nitrogen that turns to ammonia when heated. It is used in a variety of industries, perhaps most commonly as fertilizer in agriculture. The fluid is not flammable, nor is it dangerous when handled normally. However, it is corrosive to metal, particularly copper an aluminium. Read the separate section concerning the handling of DEF solution.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Handling

When handling DEF solution, it is important that electrical connectors to be connected or well encapsulated. Otherwise there is a risk that the DEF will cause oxidation that cannot be removed. Water or compressed air do not help, since DEF quickly oxidizes metal. If a connector comes into contact with the DEF solution it must be replaced immediately to prevent the DEF solution from creeping further into the copper wiring, which takes lace at a speed of about 60 mm (2.4 in) per hour.

CAUTION

When detaching hoses and components, do not spill DEF on disconnected connectors. If DEF is spilled on a connector, the connector must be replaced immediately.

About spilled Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)

Things to know about spilled Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)

- If urea solution comes into contact with the skin, rinse with plenty of water and remove contaminated clothing.
- If urea solution comes into contact with eyes rinse for several minutes and call for medical help if necessary
- If inhaled breathe fresh air and call for medical help if necessary
- Do not allow the DEF solution to come into contact with other chemicals
- The DEF solution is not flammable. If the DEF solution is exposed to high temperatures for long periods of time, it breaks down into ammonia and carbon dioxide
- The DEF solution is corrosive to certain metals, including copper and aluminium. This is similar to the corrosion caused by salt water
- If the DEF solution is spilled onto the vehicle, wipe off the excess and rinse with water. Spilled DEF solution can form concentrated white crystals on the vehicle. Rinse off these crystals with water.

Note: Do not flush DEF into the normal drain system.

WARNING

DEF split onto hot components will quickly vaporize. Turn your face away!

Warranty and Maintenance

Exhaust Aftertreatment System Maintenance

The vehicle must be taken to an authorized Prevost Service Center to remove the ash from the Aftertreatment Diesel Particulate Filter and clean the Aftertreatment Doser.

Emissions Maintenance

1. If owner's manual recommends Aftertreatment DPF replacement within useful life, the manufacturer must pay for the replacement; however, a random failure within the useful life is covered only per the above warranty provisions.

2. First maintenance interval in life of the engine is allowed at 160 000 kilometers (100,000 miles), 3000 hours.

Engine Gaseous Emission Control Systems

WARRANTY MAINTENANCE

GASEOUS EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS WARRANTY

Prevost warrants the Emission Control Systems on each new VOLVO diesel engine in a new Prevost coach to comply with all United States Federal and Canadian emissions regulations applicable at the time of manufacture of the engine, and to be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service up to 60 months, or 100,000 miles, whichever occurs first, provided all Prevost, maintenance requirements are followed as described in this manual. All warranty periods are calculated from the date-in-service of the new vehicle. The repair or replacement of defective parts will be made without charge for the cost of parts and, if repairs are made at an authorized Prevost Service Center, there will be no charge for labor. Prevost's obligation under this warranty is limited to the repair or replacement, at Prevost's option, of any part(s) of the Emission Control Systems of such engine and/or vehicle found to be defective upon examination by Prevost and provided that such part(s) were returned to Prevost or its nearest authorized Service Center within a reasonable period of time.

Qualifications and Limitations:

Note: Not covered by the Emissions Control Systems Warranty:

- Malfunctions caused by misuse, improper adjustments, modification, alteration, tampering, disconnection, improper or inadequate maintenance and use of improper diesel fuel or DEF.
- Damage resulting from accident, acts of nature or other events beyond the control of Prevost.
- Inconvenience, loss of use of the vehicle, commercial loss of any kind including, but not limited to, consequential or incidental damages
- Any vehicle in which the odometer has been altered or damaged so that mileage cannot be readily determined.

THIS WARRANTY IS EXPRESSLY IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND REPRESENTATIONS OR CONDITIONS, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Emissions Control System Warranty

The following engine components are covered by the supplemental emissions control system warranty policy as required by the Federal code of emission regulations.

1 Engine Turbocharger Assembly
- Engine VGT Actuator

2 Engine Charge Air Cooler (CAC)
- CAC Pipes (Air inlet to/from CAC)
- CAC Hoses

3 Engine Control Module (ECM)

4 Engine Injectors

5 Engine and Vehicle Wire harness (repair to circuits related to Emissions Warrantable Components)

6 Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Mixer Tube

7 EGR Cooler

8 EGR Valve and EGR Valve Control

9 EGR Pipes - Engine Exhaust Manifold to EGR Cooler

10 EGR Pipes - EGR Cooler to Inlet Manifold

11 Crankcase Breather (CCB)

12 Crankcase Breather Oil Separator

13 Crankcase Tubing and Hoses before CCB Oil Separator

14 Aftertreatment Wiring Harness

15 Aftertreatment Control Module (ACM)

16 Aftertreatment Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Assembly

A. Aftertreatment DPF Assembly with Aftertreatment Diesel Oxidation Catalyst (DOC)
- Aftertreatment Hydrocarbon Doser (HCD)
- Diffuser Pipe (Aftertreatment Hydrocarbon Doser Mounting)
- Fuel lines to Aftertreatment Hydrocarbon Doser
- Aftertreatment Fuel Shutoff Valve
- Aftertreatment Fuel Pressure Sensor
- Discharge Recirculation Valve (DRV) (Heat Mode)
- Discharge Recirculation Valve (DRV) Solenoid
- Engine Turbocharger Compressor Bypass Actuator (Heat Mode)
- Engine Turbocharger Compressor Bypass Actuator Solenoid
- Engine Exhaust Gas Temperature (EGT) Sensor
- Aftertreatment DPF Intake Temperature Sensor
- Aftertreatment DPF Outlet Temperature Sensor
- Aftertreatment DPF Differential Pressure Sensor
- Aftertreatment Hydrocarbon Doser Air Supply Regulator (if applicable), Supply Lines, and Fittings

17 Sensors:
- Crankshaft Position (CKP) Sensor
- Camshaft Position (CMP) Sensor
- Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Sensor
- Intake Manifold Air Temperature/Pressure Sensor
- EGR Temperature Sensor
- Aftertreatment Outlet NOx Sensor
- Aftertreatment Intake NOx Sensor
- EGR Differential Pressure
- Ambient Air Temperature (AAT)

18 SCR

- Aftertreatment Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) Catalyst
- Aftertreatment Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Pump
  - Aftertreatment DEF Dosing Absolute Pressure Sensor
  - Aftertreatment DEF Return Valve
- Aftertreatment DEF Dosing Valve
- Aftertreatment DEF Tank
- Aftertreatment DEF Tank Heater/Sender
- Aftertreatment DEF Tank Heater
- Aftertreatment DEF Tank Heater Valve
- Aftertreatment DEF Tank Temperature Sensor
- Aftertreatment DEF Level Sensor
- Aftertreatment DEF Heated Lines

19. Instrument Cluster (Repair of microprocessor , OBD MIL, Real Time Clock, Aftertreatment DEF Tank Gauge and, Aftertreatment DEF Tank Low Level Indicator)

20. Exhaust Gas Piping (from Turbocharger to Aftertreatment System)

21. Data Link Connector (DLC)

Engine Gaseous Emissions Control System Warranty

The emission warranty for the diesel particulate filter and SCR Systems covers defects in workmanship only. Normal maintenance, such as cleaning ash from the filter at regular maintenance intervals and cleaning the Aftertreatment fuel injector on Diesel Oxidation Catalyst (DOC) DPF systems, is not covered by the emission warranty. With the Thermal Regeneration DPF system, cleaning the ignition electrodes and fuel injection nozzle at the regular maintenance intervals is considered normal maintenance and not covered by the emission warranty.

Federal Emission Requirements

This section covers the requirement of the United States Clean Air Act which states: “The manufacturer shall furnish with each new motor vehicle or motor vehicle engine such written instructions for the maintenance and use of the vehicle or engine by the ultimate purchaser as may be reasonable and necessary to assure the proper functioning of emission control devices and systems. ”This section also covers the requirements of the emissions regulations promulgated under the Motor Vehicle Safety Act in Canada.

TAMPERING WITH GASEOUS EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS PROHIBITED

The Federal Clean Air Act prohibits the removal or rendering inoperative of any device or element of design installed on or in a motor vehicle or motor vehicle engine in compliance with Federal Emission Regulations by:

1 Any person prior to its sale and delivery to the ultimate purchaser, or

2 Any manufacturer or distributor after its sale and delivery to the ultimate purchaser, or

3 Any person engaged in the business of repairing, servicing, selling, leasing, or trading motor vehicles or motor vehicle engines following its sale and delivery to the ultimate purchaser, or

4 Any person who operates a fleet of motor vehicles following its sale and delivery to the ultimate purchaser.

Emission Control System Warranty — California

The California Air Resources Board and Prevost. are pleased to explain the California emission control system warranty on your new motor vehicle engine. In California, new motor vehicle engines must be designed, built and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Prevost. must warrant the emission control system on your engine for the period of time listed below provided there has been no abuse, neglect, or improper maintenance of your engine. Your emission control system may include parts such as the fuel-injection system, turbocharger assembly, electronic control module and other emission-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exists, Prevost will repair your engine at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts, and labor. **MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY COVERAGE:** If an emission-related part of your engine is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Prevost. This is your emission control system DEFECTS WARRANTY.

30 Exhaust Aftertreatment System

OWNER'S WARRANTY RESPONSIBILITIES:

As the motor vehicle engine owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in this manual. Prevost recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance of your vehicle, but Prevost cannot deny warranty solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance listed in other manuals which were supplied with your vehicle. You are responsible for presenting your motor vehicle engine to a Prevost Service Center as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days. As the motor vehicle engine owner, you should also be aware that Prevost may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance, or unapproved modifications. If you have any questions regarding your warranty rights and responsibilities, you should contact the Prevost Department 850 Chemin Olivier, St-Nicolas, Qc, G7A 2N1, Canada, Fax 418–831–9301, or the California Air Resources Board at 9480 Telstar Avenue, El Monte, California 91731. **(Applicable only to vehicles and/or engines certified for sale and registered in the State of California)** Prevost warrants the Emission Control Systems on each new VOLVO diesel engine in a new Prevost coach to comply with all State of California emissions regulations applicable at the time of manufacture of the engine, and to be free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service up to 60 months or 160 000 km (100,000 miles), whichever occurs first, provided all Prevost maintenance requirements are followed as described in this manual. All warranty periods are calculated from the date-in-service of the new vehicle. The repair or replacement of defective parts will be made without charge for the cost of parts and, if repairs are made at an authorized Prevost Service Center, there will be no charge for labor. Prevost's obligation under this warranty is limited to the repair or replacement, at Prevost's option, of any part(s) of Emission Control Systems of such engine and/or vehicle found to be defective upon examination by Prevost and provided that such part(s) were returned to Prevost or its nearest authorized Dealer within a reasonable period of time.

Qualifications and Limitations:

Not covered by the Emissions Control Systems Warranty:

- Malfunctions caused by misuse, improper adjustments, modification, alteration, tampering, disconnection, improper or inadequate maintenance and use of improper diesel fuel or DEF.
- Damage resulting from accident, acts of nature or other events beyond the control of Prevost
- Inconvenience, loss of use of the vehicle, commercial loss of any kind including, but not limited to, consequential or incidental damages.
- Any vehicle in which the odometer has been altered or damaged so that mileage cannot be readily determined.

THIS WARRANTY IS EXPRESSLY IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND REPRESENTATIONS OR CONDITIONS, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Emissions Control System Warranty

The following engine components are covered by the supplemental emissions control system warranty policy as required by the California code of regulations.

1 Engine Turbocharger Assembly
- Engine VGT Actuator

2 Engine Charge Air Cooler (CAC)
- CAC Pipes (Air inlet to/from CAC)
- CAC Hoses

3 Engine Control Module (ECM)

4 Engine Injectors

5 Engine and Vehicle Wire harness (repair to circuits related to Emissions Warrantable Components)

6 Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) Mixer Tube

7 EGR Cooler

8 EGR Valve and EGR Valve Control

9 EGR Pipes - Engine Exhaust Manifold to EGR Cooler

10 EGR Pipes - EGR Cooler to Inlet Manifold

11 Crankcase Breather

12 Engine Crankcase Breather Oil Separator

13 Crankcase Tubing and Hoses before Separator

14 Aftertreatment Wiring Harness

15 Aftertreatment Control Module (ACM)

16 Aftertreatment Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Assembly

A. Aftertreatment DPF Assembly with Aftertreatment Diesel Oxidation Catalyst (DOC)
- Aftertreatment Hydrocarbon Doser (HCD)
- Diffuser Pipe (Aftertreatment Hydrocarbon Doser Mounting)
- Fuel lines to Aftertreatment Hydrocarbon Doser
- Aftertreatment Fuel Shutoff Valve
- Aftertreatment Fuel Pressure Sensor
- Discharge Recirculation Valve (DRV) (Heat Mode)
- Discharge Recirculation Valve (DRV) Solenoid
- Engine Turbocharger Compressor Bypass Actuator (Heat Mode)
- Engine Turbocharger Compressor Bypass Actuator Solenoid
- Engine Exhaust Gas Temperature (EGT) Sensor
- Aftertreatment DPF Intake Temperature Sensor
- Aftertreatment DPF Outlet Temperature Sensor
- Aftertreatment DPF Differential Pressure Sensor
- Aftertreatment Hydrocarbon Doser Air Supply Regulator (if applicable), Supply Lines and Fittings

17 Sensors:

- Crankshaft Position (CKP) Sensor
- Camshaft Position (CMP) Sensor
- Engine Coolant Temperature (ECT) Sensor
- Intake Manifold Air Temperature/Pressure Sensor
- EGR Temperature Sensor
- Aftertreatment Outlet NOx Sensor
- Aftertreatment Intake NOx Sensor
- EGR Differential Pressure Sensor
- Ambient Air Temperature (AAT) Sensor

18 SCR

- Aftertreatment Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) Catalyst
- Aftertreatment Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Pump
  - Aftertreatment DEF Dosing Absolute Pressure Sensor
  - Aftertreatment DEF Return Valve
- Aftertreatment DEF Dosing Valve
- Aftertreatment DEF Tank
- Aftertreatment DEF Tank Heater/Sender
- Aftertreatment DEF Tank Heater
- Aftertreatment DEF Tank Heater Valve
- Aftertreatment DEF Tank Temperature Sensor
- Aftertreatment DEF Level Sensor
- Aftertreatment DEF Heated Lines

19. Instrument Cluster (Repair of microprocessor , OBD MIL, Real Time Clock, Aftertreatment DEF Tank Gauge and, Aftertreatment DEF Tank Low Level Indicator)

20. Exhaust Gas Piping (from Turbocharger to Aftertreatment System)

21. Data Link Connector (DLC)

Engine Components, Service Schedules

Component	Operation	Km (Miles)/Maximum Months/Hours
Engine Fuel Filter	Change	Each oil change *
Water Separator	Filter change	Each oil change *
Air Filter US 2010	Change	160 000 (100,000) or 12 months, whichever comes first
Engine Coolant	Change	500 000 (300, 000) or 24 months, whichever comes first
Engine Coolant (ELC)	Change	1 000 000 (600,000) or 48 months, whichever comes first
Coolant Filter US 2010	Change	80 000 (50,000) or 6 months, whichever comes first
Engine Coolant Filter (ELC) US 2010	Change	240 000 (150,000) or 12 months, whichever comes first
Valves/Engine Injectors **	Initial Adjust	200 000 (125,000) or 12 months, whichever comes first
Valves/Engine Injectors **	Adjust	400 000 (250,000) or 24 months, whichever comes first
Catalyzed DPF Filter (If equipped)	Change	400 000 (250,000) or 4,500 hours, whichever comes first.
Aftertreatment Diesel Exhaust Fluid Dosing Valve	Clean	240 000 (150,000) or 4,500 hours, whichever comes first.
Aftertreatment Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Pump Filter	Change	First Change; 161 000 (100,000), 3200 hours or three (3) years. Then every 241 000 (150,000) 4800 hours or three (3) years, whichever comes first.
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Tank Filler Neck Filter Cleaning	Clean	280 000 (175,000) or 12 months, whichever comes first.
*Under certain conditions (for example, irregular fuel quality), the fuel/water separator filters may require more frequent replacement.		
**Valves must be adjusted whenever the rocker shaft has been removed and reinstalled for any reason.		

Volvo Bus Corporation

Göteborg, Sweden

89090868 English 5.2013

Operating Instructions

WHEEL CHAIR LIFT

9700 Bus

VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the operation and function of the Wheel Chair Lifter mounted on the 9700 US/CAN.

Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Prevost should be informed immediately if you believe that the vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death.

Contact NHTSA by calling the Auto Safety Hotline at 1(888) 327–4236, by writing to NHTSA, U.S Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590, by TTY at 1 (800) 424–9153, or visit their web site at www.nhtsa.dot.gov.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89146318

©2014 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Introduction 1
Introduction 1
General Safety Precautions 3
Major Lift Components 4

Operating Instructions 7
Operating Instructions 7
Daily Safety Check 10
Platform Motions 11
Controls and Indicators 12
Normal Lift Operation 19
Manual Lift Operation 32

Maintenance 38
Cleaning 38
Maintenance Schedule 38

Index 41

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

It is important that the following information be read, understood and always followed.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a black background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

Introduction

The bus Volvo 9700 US/CAN could be equipped with a Wheel Chair Lifter, intended to provide wheelchair access to the vehicle.

The mechanical linkages provide smooth movement to the platform, which has a rated load capacity of 600 pounds (273 kilograms). Five hydraulic cylinders are employed to move the lift components. Two cylinders are mounted within the scissors assembly to extend and retract the platform assembly. A third cylinder raises and lowers the inner barrier.

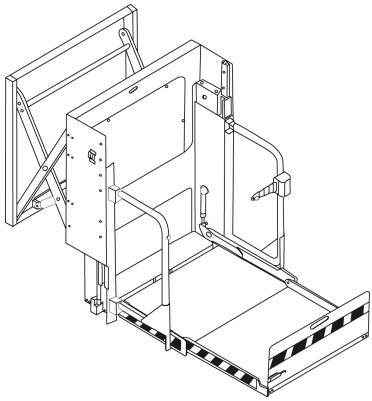
The remaining two cylinders raise and lower the platform assembly. The movement of these cylinders is multiplied by a chain lift connected between the intermediate frame (rear portion of platform assembly) and the platform itself. As the cylinders lift the intermediate frame the chain lift doubles the movement of the platform assembly.

The lift contains an electro-hydraulic pump with a built-in manual backup pump. If the lift loses electrical power, it can be raised or lowered manually. The cylinders are controlled by solenoid valves that are operated manually if there is an electrical failure.

2 Introduction

Platform movement is controlled with buttons on the hand held pendant. By using the buttons, the lift is extracted from the vehicle storage compartment and lowered to the ground level. The passenger boards the large non-skid platform and the operator uses the buttons to raise the platform to vehicle floor level. After the passengers departs, the platform is raised and retracted back into the vehicle. A similar procedure is used to exit.

This manual contains information about safety precautions, operating instructions, and maintenance. It is important to user safety that the lift operator be completely familiar with the operating instructions. Once the lift is installed, it is very important that the lift be properly maintained by following the Volvo recommended maintenance and inspection instructions.



T8053922

General Safety Precautions

The following general safety precautions must be followed during operation and maintenance:

- To avoid injury, always exercise caution when operating lift and be certain that hands, feet, legs, and clothing are not in the path of product movement.
- Read and thoroughly understand the operating instructions.
- Inspect the product before each use for unsafe conditions, and unusual noises or movements. Do not use lift until any problems are corrected.
- Stand clear of doors and platform and keep others clear during operation.
- The product requires regular periodic maintenance. A thorough inspections is recommended at least once every six months. The product should be maintained at the highest level of performance.

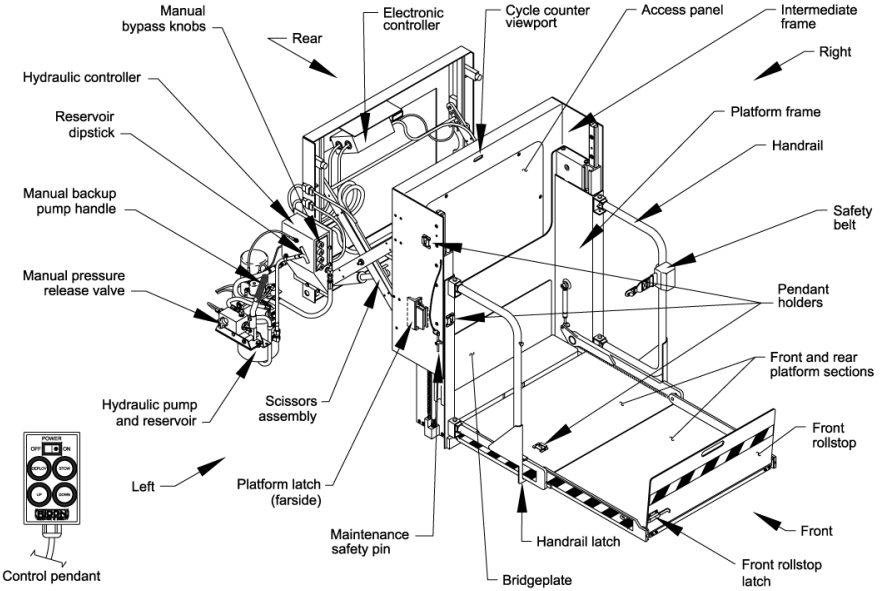
Major Lift Components

The terms used throughout are illustrated in the picture and defined in the table.

BAYLIFT TERM DEFINITIONS	
TERM	**DESCRIPTION**
Left, right, front, rear	Position references when installed lift is viewed from outside of vehicle.
Access panel	Provides easy access to components located behind intermediate.
Audible alarm	(not shown) Announces that something has passed through doorway threshold area and platform. Is 71" from vehicle floor level and is activated by threshold warning system (TWS). Refer to "Threshold Warning System" in chapter "Operating Instructions".
Bridgeplate	Plate bridges gap between platform and vehicle floor when platform is at floor level. Acts as rear barrier during up and down platform motions to prevent wheelchair from rolling off of platform.
Control pendant	Hand-held device controls platform motions.
Cycle counter viewport	When platform is stowed the counter can be see here. It records number of times platform has moved from floor to ground and back to floor.
Electronic controller	Receives input signals from pendant and lift sensors and sends control signals to pump motor and hydraulic controller.
Front and rear platform sections	Lift components where wheelchair and occupant are situated during UP and DOWN platform motions. Folds and stows into platform frame.
Front rollstop	Front barrier prevents the wheelchair from inadvertently rolling off platform during platform movements.
Front rollstop latch	Manually operated latch locks front rollstop in stowed position. Rollstop is locked in upright position by dropping into slots.
Handrail	(left and right) Provides a handhold for standing passenger (standee).

Handrail latch	(left and right) Manually operated latch locks handrail in outward or inward position. Push handrail downward to release latch.
Hydraulic controller	Electro-hydraulic, solenoid valve system controls distribution of hydraulic fluid to cylinders. Receives input signals from electronic controller.
Hydraulic pump and reservoir	Hydraulic pump is driven by electric motor and procedures pressure to extend and raise platform and to raise bridgeplate.
Intermediate frame	Rigid structure suspended on outer ends of scissor assembly. Platform frame is attached to front face.
Maintenance safety pin	(left and right) Maintenance item that is employed to lock platform in position on intermediate frame. Must be removed for normal operation.
Manual backup pump handle	Use to operate manual backup pump when electrical power is not available.
Manual bypass knobs	Four knobs are employed during manual operation to control distribution of hydraulic fluid to preferred lift cylinders.
Manual pressure release valve	Opening valve bleeds pressure from hydraulic system, allowing platform or bridgeplate to lower.
Pendant holders	(up to three each, depending on application) Storage clips for pendant. One clip is attached to bottom of platform.
Platform frame	Structure that platform and handrails attach to. Moves up and down on sliders fastened to intermediate frame.
Platform latch	Magnetic catch that holds folded platform sections in upright position.
Reservoir dipstick	Use to determine fluid level in reservoir.
Safety belt	Safety restraint belt that spans between handrails to confine passenger.

Scissors assembly	(left and right) Telescoping components that support intermediate frame and platform, and allow horizontal movement.
Visual alarm	(not shown) Flashing red light makes it know that something has passed through doorway threshold area. Activated by threshold warning system (TWS). Refer to “Threshold Warning System”.

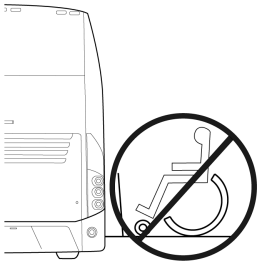


Operating Instructions

The following safety precautions must be complied with when operating lift.

- Deploying the lift when vehicle is on sloped ground is hazardous. Operate lift with vehicle parked on level ground.
- Vehicle must be safely parked with parking brake set before using lift.
- Inspect lift before use. Do not use lift if an unsafe conditions exists, or unusual noises or movements are noticed, and contact a Volvo authorized service technician for repair.
- Read and comply with all warning labels affixed to wheel chair lift and vehicle.
- Wheelchair occupant should face outward on platform when entering or exiting vehicle to minimize the possibility of the large rear wheels rolling up and over the front rollstop.

T8053924



T8053925

- Do not load an oversize wheelchair into vehicle if it is too large to pivot freely inside vehicle.
- Do not place large equipment inside vehicle that can prevent pivoting of a wheelchair. Being able to pivot assures that a passenger can safely exit facing outward.
- Do not rely on a threshold-warning device (audible, or other) to confirm that is safe for a passenger to exit backwards. This device may be inoperative or unheard, and they might exit backwards when the platform is on the ground!
- When exiting vehicle, verify that platform is at same height as floor and front rollstop is upright and locked.

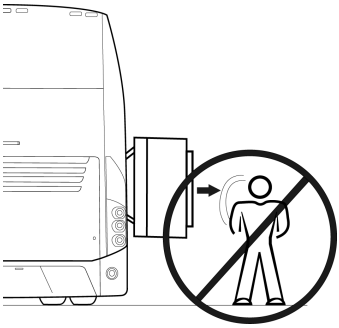
⚠ WARNING

Do not operate with a load in excess of 600 lbs (273 kgs).

- The upright front rollstop inhibits slow and unintentional rolling off the platform. It is not intended to stop a fast-moving wheelchair, which might tip forward if the small front wheels collide with the rollstop.
- Be certain wheelchair fits safely on platform; it must not extend beyond edges or interfere with rising and locking of front rollstop.
- Keep arms, legs, and clothing away from moving lift parts.
- The lift is intended for one wheelchair and occupant, or one standee. Do not overload lift.

- Do not stand in front of lift while deploying platform.
- Keep others clear while operating lift.
- Do not allow an untrained person to operate lift.
- Careful supervision is necessary if used near children.
- Lock wheelchair brakes when on platform (power chair users must turn off power and set brake).
- Use great care in wet conditions, because the wheelchair brakes are less effective if wheels or platform are wet.
- Never leave platform outside of vehicle. Return platform to stowed position after use.

Read and understand safety precautions. Review them periodically and ask other operators to read them.



T8053926

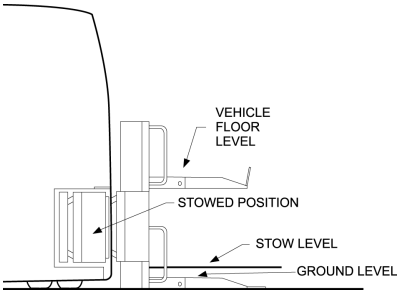
Daily Safety Check

Inspect the lift before each use and check that the following conditions are met before operating:

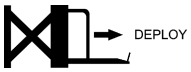
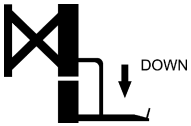
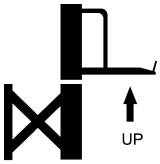
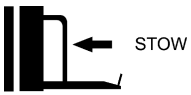
- All functions operate properly and there are no unusual noises or movements. If problems are present, contact a Volvo authorized workshop for repair or, a Prevost service center/provider.
- Vehicle interlock is operating properly.
- No objects that may interfere with operation are present.
- General appearance and lubrication are satisfactory, and fasteners are tight.

Platform Motions

Note: The platform is an assembly comprised of the intermediate frame, platform frame, handrails, front and rear platform sections, bridgeplate, and front rollstop. Note that up and down motions operate only when platform is fully extended.



T8053932

PLATFORM MOTIONS	
MOTION	**DESCRIPTION**
 T8053927	Platform moves outward from lift compartment.
 T8053928	Platform lowers towards ground level. Bridgeplate automatically rises when platform drops below floor level.
 T8053929	Platform rises towards vehicle floor level. Bridgeplate automatically lowers when platform arrives at floor level.
 T8053930	Platform moves downwards towards stow level and then retracts into lift compartment. If platform is below stow level, it must first be raised above stow level.

Controls and Indicators

WARNING

The lift is allowed to operate only when the lift and vehicle interlock circuitry requirements are met. Do not attempt to operate lift with interlock bypassed.

CAUTION

The pendant must be attached to the clip located on the bottom of the platform when the platform is stowed. The pendant can be severely damaged by the lift compartment doors if left stored on either of the other clips.

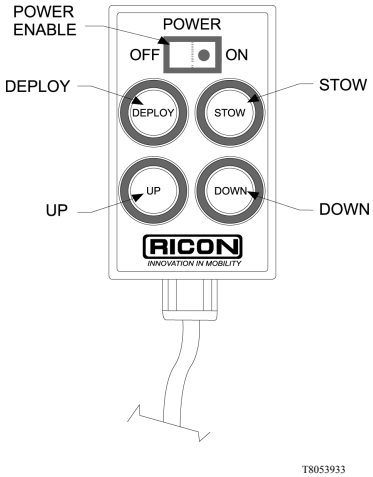
Control Pendant

The lift is operated with a hand-held, hard-wired remote-control pendant. Turn on the POWER ENABLE switch and then press an appropriate button to control each lift motion.

The POWER ENABLE switch provides power to the pendant and thereby enables the lift. When turned on, the power switch and each button illuminate.

Pressing the DEPLOY button extends the platform from the storage compartment, and pressing the STOW button retracts the platform back into the storage compartment. Pressing the DOWN button lowers the platform towards the ground, and pressing the UP button raises the platform towards the vehicle floor.A button must be held depressed until the motion is completed. Movement of the platform can be halted at any time by releasing the button.

Note: In addition to the four powered operations described above, there are several manual operations required to deploy, lower, and stow the platform. Refer to Manual Lift Operation section.

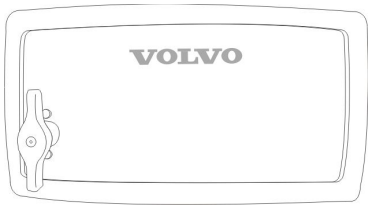


T8053933

Circuit Breakers

Main Circuit Breaker

The main circuit breaker is located in vehicle battery compartment and is used to interrupt electrical power to lift electrical system when a major short circuit occurs. If problems are present, contact a Volvo authorized workshop or, a Prevost service center, provider.



T8056323

Control System Circuit Breaker.

The control system circuit breaker is located on the PCB assembly, which is inside the electronic controller. The control system includes essentially all electrical components except the motor that drives the hydraulic pump

Vehicle Interlock System

The purpose of the vehicle interlock system is to prevent lift operation if it is unsafe to do so. Requirements are that the vehicle transmission be in neutral, the parking brake applied, and the passenger door be opened before power is supplied to the lift. Before the vehicle can depart, the lift must be stowed, and both the lift compartment door and passenger door must be closed.

Bridgeplate Load Sensor

A sensor switch is located in the hydraulic line connected to the bridgeplate hydraulic cylinder. When the sensor detects that an object is present on the bridgeplate it inhibits raising or lowering of the platform. This protects the passenger from possible injury when the cylinder raises the bridgeplate. It also protects the bridgeplate from damage, which could interfere later with proper operation of the lift.

Threshold Warning System

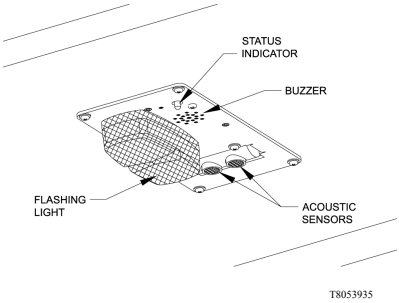
The threshold warning system is installed at the top of the doorway above the lift compartment. The module is powered on when the lift is powered, and the status indicator light then turns on. The acoustic sensors are enabled when the door is open and the lift-to-vehicle interlock system requirements are met.

Note: Installations provide a vehicle door closure signal to the module that will disable the sensors when the door is closed.

Acoustic sensors (transmitter and receiver) monitor the doorway threshold area for the presence of a passenger (or object, such as a wheelchair). If someone is detected in the threshold area when the platform is one inch, or more, below the floor an audible buzzer and flashing red light are actuated.

This system provides a margin of safety for lift passengers by warning them when the platform is below floor level. The platform must be at floor level when a passenger is boarding or exiting the platform.

Note: The buzzer and flashing light are disabled when the door is closed. In this case, the status indicator flashes when a passenger presence is detected.



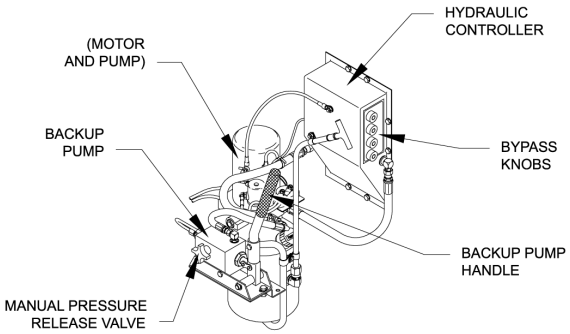
Lift Cycle Counter

The cycle counter (located near the electronic controller) is visible through a slot at the top center of the intermediate frame, just above the access panel. The platform must be fully stowed to view the counter. The counter advances each time the platform moves through a complete cycle, which consists of the platform moving from the vehicle floor to the ground and back to the floor. The number of cycles displayed is used to schedule maintenance operations.

Manual Backup Pump

The manual backup pump system can operate the lift if electrical power is not functional. The controls for the system consist of a pump handle (not removable) and pressure release valve, which are used in conjunction with four bypass knobs to extend, raise, lower, and retract the platform.

The four bypass knobs shown on the front face of the hydraulic controller are connected to four solenoid valves located inside the enclosure. The open or closed position of each solenoid valve determines how fluid is distributed to the five hydraulic cylinders. The knobs provide the ability open and close the valves manually.



Normal Lift Operation

T8055670

- Before operating lift, be certain vehicle is safely parked on a level area away from traffic. Provide space for lift operation and passenger boarding.
- The lift operator must take special care to ensure that area is clear before deploying platform. Be certain there are no obstacles beneath platform.
- When parked adjacent to a curb, the vehicle must be within 26 inches of curb. Rear section of platform must overlap curb a minimum of eight inches.
- Engage the parking brake and turn on the vehicle.
- Turn on lift power switch located on dashboard.
- Open lift compartment door (lower) completely and secure.
- Pull handle located rear to release door lock, insert key in door lock and turn front to open.
- Open the upper door 90°.

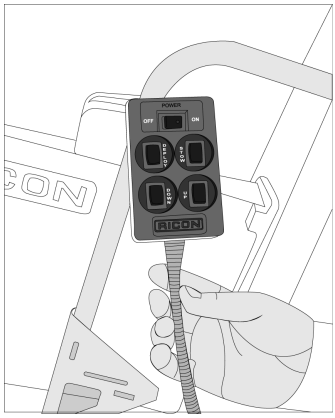
⚠ CAUTION

Before attempting to raise or lower the platform, verify the two maintenance safety pins are not inserted into intermediate frame and platform. Severe damage can occur if pins are inserted. The pins are normally stored on the side, as shown, and are for maintenance use only.

- Enable lift control pendant by turning on Power switch located on pendant.

Note: Attendant must remain near passenger to render immediate assistance when necessary.

Note: A person that uses the wheelchair lift while standing (does not require mobility aid equipment) is referred to in this manual as a Standee

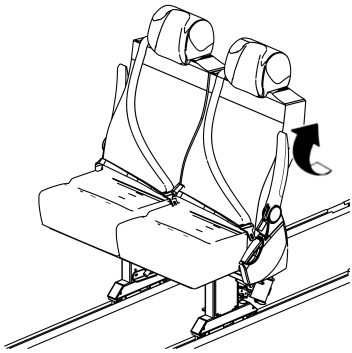


T8054862

Procedure to move the sliding seats.

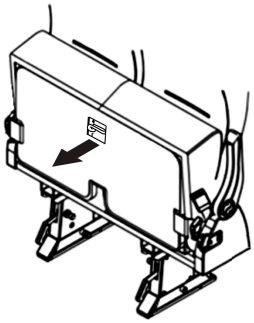
Follow the steps below in order to make room for WCL:

- Fold up the armrest.



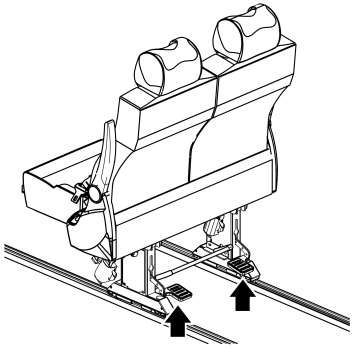
W8091806

- Pull the handle located under the cushion and lift it up.



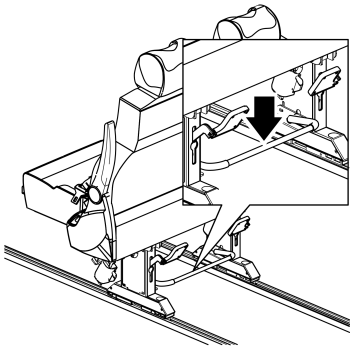
W8091808

- Lift the pedals up.



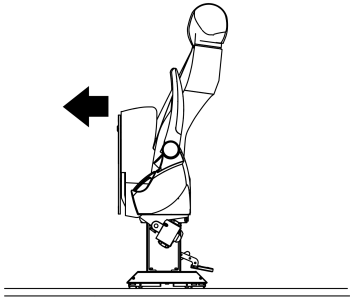
W8091807

- Press down the footbar until the seat is unlocked.



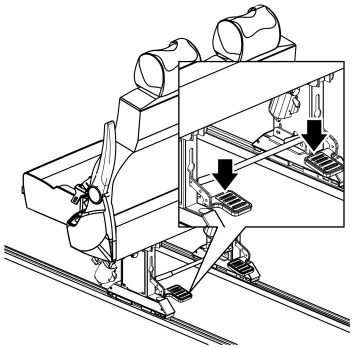
W8091809

- Push the seats. Place the hands on the backrest to move the seats forward. Slide until hear the lock sound.



W8092294

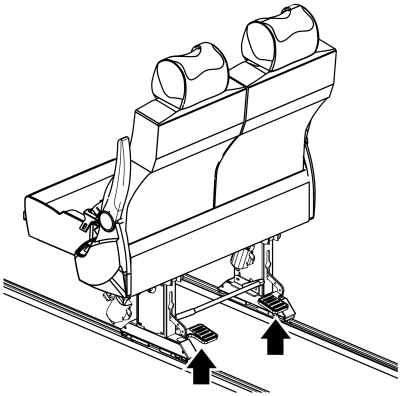
- Push the pedals down to lock the seats.



W8091812

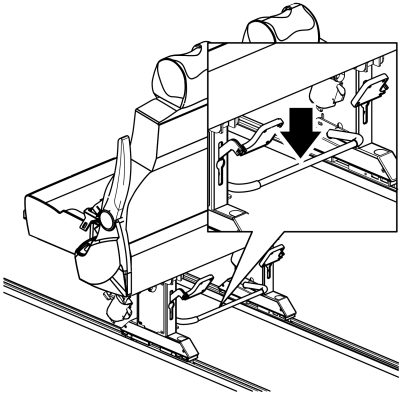
Follow the steps below in order to return to original position:

- Lift the pedals up.



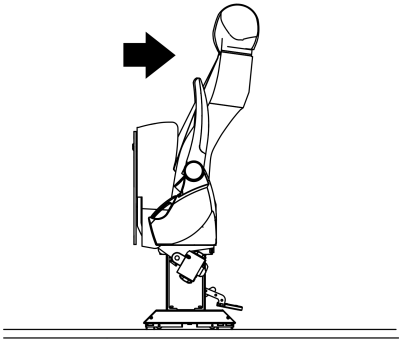
W8091807

- Push down the footbar .



W8091809

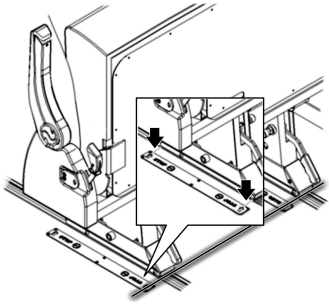
- Pull the seats. Place the hands on the backrest to move the seats backward. Slide until hear the lock sound.



W8091810

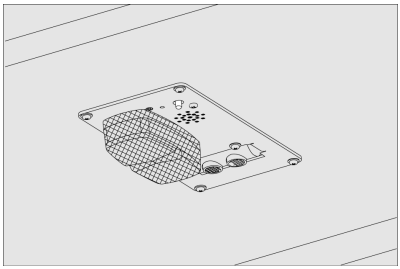
CAUTION

The edges of the pedestal need to be aligned with the lateral plate. Do not try to push the pedal down if the pedestal is not aligned with the arrows, if not followed this caution might cause a damage to the lever mechanism.



W0087929

Note: If any person is located under the sensor or near at door when the platform are in movement, an alarm and the red light will be activated.



T8054868

CAUTION

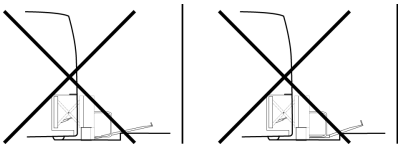
The platform does not automatically stop when being lowered onto a curb, therefore the operator must monitor the height of the platform. Do not allow platform to tilt as shown in left panel. Use the UP button to adjust the platform height, if necessary. Also, do not lower front portion of platform onto curb as shown in right panel.

- **DEPLOY PLATFORM**
  Press and hold DEPLOY button until platform is completely extended from lift compartment.

  Note: Platform cannot be moved up or down unless platform is fully extended.
- Unlatch each handrail by pushing downward and then and swinging outward by hand.
- Pull out on top edge of platform to release magnetic latch and lower platform sections to horizontal position; weight of platform is spring assisted.
- Unfold front platform section by grasping handle provided.
- Raise front rollstop to upright position and lock in place by allowing it to drop into the slots at rollstop pivot points.

- **LOWER PLATFORM**
  Press and hold DOWN button until platform contacts ground. Verify that bridgeplate is in upright position.
- Lift front rollstop out of slots and swing forward until it rests on ground.
- Carefully place wheelchair brakes. Pull safety belt from retractor on handrail and fasten to other handrail.

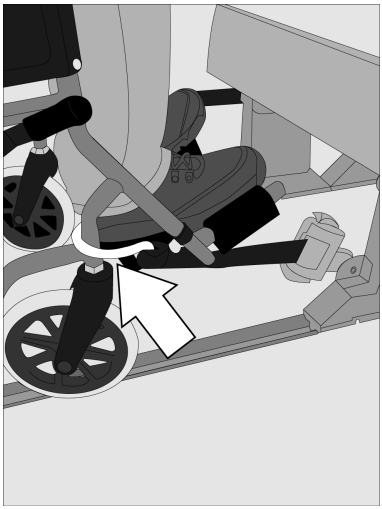
  Note: A standee must stand near the center of the platform, facing in the direction of travel (into vehicle), and firmly grasp handrails. Do not stand on bridgeplate.
- Raise front rollstop to upright position and lock in place by allowing it to drop into the slots at rollstop pivot points.



T8053936

- **RAISE PLATFORM**
  Press and hold UP button until platform rises and stops automatically at vehicle floor level. Verify that bridgeplate lowers to horizontal position and rests flat on vehicle floor.
- Release wheelchair brakes, and carefully board passenger into vehicle.
- Place wheelchair in position, place brakes and secure with the hooks (located at lower zone from passenger´s seats) placing at wheelchair frame.
- Always use the safety belt. Cross the belt from right side to left side and push it into the lock on the left side. After cross the upper belt and secure at lock from low belt.
  Make sure an audible click is heard from the clasp in the lock and tug on the belt to verify it has locked.

  Note: Lock could be stay at the aisle side.



T8055403

T8055400

Exit Vehicle

- To exit from vehicle, release:
  1 the safety belts
  2 the wheelchair from hooks
  3 brakes from wheelchair
  - **DEPLOY PLATFORM**
    Press and hold DEPLOY button until platform is completely extended from lift compartment.

    Note: Platform cannot be moved up or down unless platform is fully extended.
  - Unlatch each handrail by pushing downward and then swing outward by hand.
  - Pull out on top edge of platform to release magnetic latch and lower platform sections to horizontal position; weight of platform is spring assisted.
  - Unfold front platform section by grasping handle provided.
  - Raise front rollstop to upright position and lock in place by allowing it to drop into the slots at rollstop pivot points.

⚠ CAUTION

Be certain wheelchair is safely within platform perimeter and does not interfere with operation of rollstop or bridgeplate.

  - Carefully place wheelchair in center of platform, preferably facing outward (away from vehicle), and lock wheelchair brakes. Pull safety belt from retractor on haindrail and fasten to other handrail.

    Note: A standee must stand near the center of the platform, facing in the direction of travel (away from vehicle), and firmly grasp handrails. Do not stand on bridgeplate.

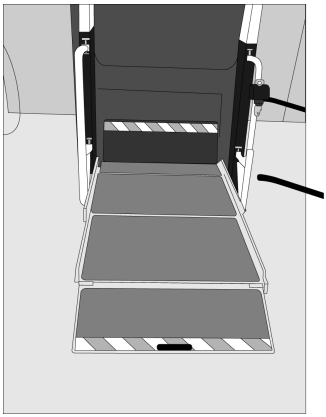
- **LOWER PLATFORM**
  Press and hold DOWN button until platform settles at ground level. Verify that bridgeplates is in upright position before platform begins to lower.

Note: The platform does not automatically stop when being lowered onto a curb, therefore the operator must monitor the height of the platform. Do not allow platform to tilt as shown in left panel. Use the UP button to adjust the platform height, if necessary

- Lift front rollstop out of slots and swing forward until it rests on ground.
- Unfasten safety belt, release wheelchair brakes, and carefully assist passenger off platform.

Stow Platform

- Lift front rollstop out of slots and swing to rear until it rests on platform. Latch in place.
- Grasp handle on lower side of front platform section and fold section back onto rear platform section.
- Raise platform sections by hand until they engage magnetic platform latch; weight of platform is spring assisted.
- Swing handrails inward and then push downward and latch handrails into square holes in bottom edge of platform frame.
- Stow platform:
  - If platform is at floor level (or anywhere above stow level) press and hold STOW button until platform lowers to stow level and fully retracts into lift compartment.
  - If platform is at ground level (or anywhere above stow level) press and hold UP button until platform lowers to stow level and fully retracts into lift compartment.



T8054866

CAUTION

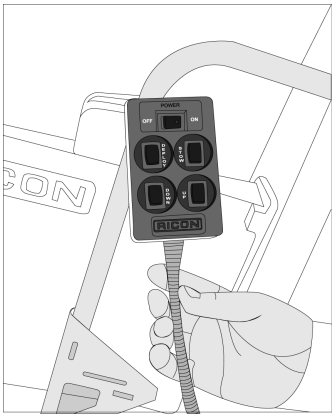
Be certain platform has retracted completely. To prevent damage to lift compartment doors, do not release button until lift pump motor has stopped automatically.

- Turn control pendant power switch off and stow pendant on clip located on bottom of platform.

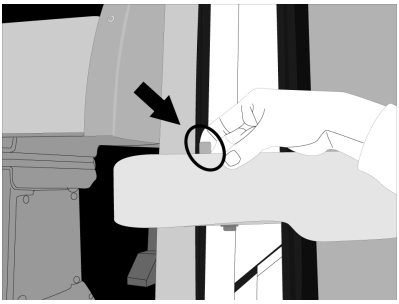
CAUTION

The pendant must be attached to the clip located on the bottom of the platform when the platform is stowed. The pendant can be severely damaged by the lift compartment doors if left stored on either of the other clips.

- Close lift compartment doors releasing the locks.
- Turn off lift power switch located on dashboard.



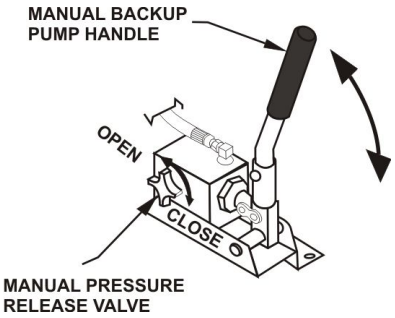
T8054862



T8054864

Manual Lift Operation

The lift can be operated manually if lift electrical power is not functioning. Its recommend that manual operation be used only to exit from bus, not to enter bus.



Preparation:

- Be certain bus is on a level area and away from traffic. Allow space for platform movement plus space to exit from platform.
- The driver must summon assistance to move bus to a safe area if a break down situation exists where vehicle cannot be moved under its own power.
- Open storage compartment doors.
- The threshold warning system is not active during manual operation and cannot be used to indicate that the platform is at floor height.

The manual backup pump handle and manual pressure release valve are both referred to frequently in the following procedures. Moving its handle back and forth operates the backup pump. The release valve is closed by rotating it clockwise and opened by rotating it counterclockwise. The valve must be kept closed during normal operation.

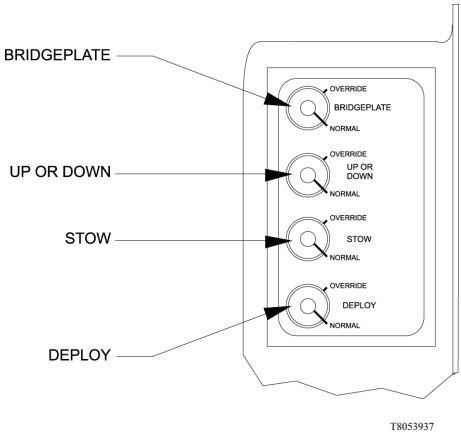
⚠ CAUTION

Open the pressure relief valve slowly and only far enough to result in a slow and steady movement of the platform. Avoid opening valve quickly because this will result in sudden and considerable platform movement.

The four bypass knobs shown are also referred to frequently in the following procedures. Push the destination knob inward and rotate to the setting directed in the procedure. Each knob must be in the normal position during normal operation.

⚠ CAUTION

Follow the procedure carefully. Do not open more than one valve at time.



1 **DEPLOY PLATFORM**

- Verify that pressure release valve is closed.
- Rotate DEPLOY knob to override position.
- Operate hand pump until platform assembly is fully extended from lift compartment.
- Rotate DEPLOY knob to normal position.
- Swing both handrails outward by hand.
- Pull out on top edge of platform to release magnetic latch and lower platform sections to horizontal position; weight of platform is spring assisted.
- Unfold front platform section by grasping handle provided.
- Raise front rollstop to upright position and lock in place by allowing it to drop into the slots at rollstop pivot points.

2 **RAISE PLATFORM**

- Verify that pressure release valve is closed.
- Rotate the UP or DOWN knob to override position.
- Operate hand pump until platform rises to vehicle floor height.
- Rotate the UP or DOWN knob to normal position.
- Rotate BRIDGEPLATE knob to override position.
- Open pressure release valve and allow bridgeplate to lower to floor. Close valve.
- Rotate BRIDGEPLATE knob to normal position.
- Load passenger by carefully placing wheelchair in center of platform, preferably facing outward (away from vehicle), and lock wheelchair brakes. Pull safety belt from retractor on handrail and fasten to other handrail.

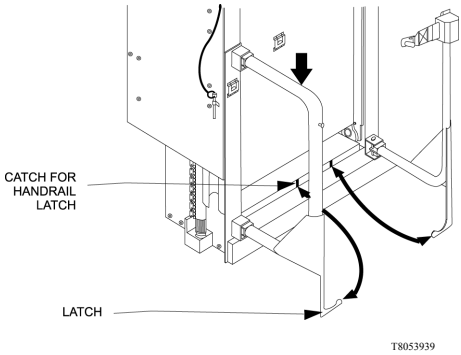
3 **LOWER PLATFORM**

- Verify that pressure release valve is closed.
- Rotate BRIDGEPLATE knob to override position.
- Operate hand pump until bridgeplate is in upright position.
- Rotate BRIDGEPLATE knob to normal position.
- Rotate UP or DOWN knob to override position.
- Open pressure release valve and allow platform to lower to ground level. Close valve.
- Rotate UP or DOWN knob to normal position.
- Unlock front rollstop and swing forward until it rests on ground.
- Unfasten safety belt, release wheelchair brakes, and carefully assist passenger off platform.

4 **STOW PLATFORM**

- Verify that pressure release valve is closed.
- Rotate the UP or DOWN knob to override position.
- Operate hand pump until top edge of platform frame is at same height as top edge of intermediate frame (stow level).
- Rotate the UP or DOWN knob to normal position.
- Lift front rollstop and swing to rear until it rests on platform. Latch in place.
- Grasp handle on lower side of front platform section and fold section back onto rear platform section.
- Raise platform sections by hand until they engage magnetic platform latch; weight of platform is spring assisted.

- Swing handrails inward and then push downward and latch handrails into square holes in bottom edge of platform frame.
- Rotate STOW knob to override position.
- Operate hand pump until platform assembly is fully retracted into lift compartment.
- Rotate STOW knob to normal position.



Cleaning

Regular cleaning with mild soap (i.e. liquid hand soap or car wash liquid) and drying thoroughly will protect the lifts painted surfaces. Cleaning is especially important in areas where roads are salted in winter. Make sure that lift pivot points are clean and dry prior to lubrication.

Maintenance Schedule

Refer to cycle counter located on rear side of hydraulic power unit. Under normal operating conditions, maintenance inspections are required at the frequencies listed in table. Ten cycles is considered a typical number of cycles for one days use.

MAINTENANCE SCHEDULE	
SERVICE POINT	**ACTION TO PERFORM**
10 CYCLES	
Overall condition	Listen for abnormal noises as lift operates (i.e. grinding or binding noises.)
Control Pendant	• Verify that control pendant is undamage and cable connector is tight. • Verify that switch and buttons are illuminated.
Threshold warning system (TWS)	Verify that system reliably detects objects in doorway threshold area, when enabled, and actuates the visual and audible alarms.
Bridgeplate load sensor	Verify that sensor inhibits upward and downward movement of platform when a weight is present on the lowered bridgeplate.
150 CYCLES	
Electrical wiring	Inspect electrical wiring for frayed wires, loose connectors, etc.
Vehicle interlock	Place vehicle in non-interlock mode and verify that lift does not operate.
Decals	Verify that lift decals are properly affixed, clearly visible, and legible. Replace, if necessary.
Handrails	Verify that handrail fasteners are properly tightened, and that handrails can be latched securely in position.
Lift mounting points	• Verify that the vehicle mounting and support points are undamaged. • Verify that mounting bolts are sufficiently tight and free of corrosion.
	CAUTION Check and add fluid when platform is at ground level. Fluid that is added when platform is raised will overflow when platform is lowered.

Main lifting pivots	Verify that pins on scissor arms are properly installed, free from damage, and locked in position.
Platform pivot points	Verify that platform moves freely, without binding, and does not wobble.
Bridgeplate	• Verify that bridgeplate operates without binding during lift functions. • Verify that bridgeplate deploys fully when platform stops at floor level. • Verify bridgeplate rests flat against vehicle floor.
Front rollstop	Verify that rollstop pivots freely and can be latched securely in position.
Hydraulic power unit	• Verify that pump hydraulic fluid level is at FULL mark when platform is at ground level. Add Pentosin G002000 fluid. • Verify there are no hydraulic fluid leaks. • Verify that manual backup pump operates properly.
Cleaning and lubrication	1 Clean lift with mild soap and water wipe dry. Prevent rust by coating all surfaces with a light oil. Remove excess oil. 2 Spray penetrating oil (Curtisol Red Grease 88167 or WD-40) . Remove excess grease from surrounding areas.
3600 CYCLES	
Hydraulic cylinders, hoses, and fitings	• Check hydraulic cylinders for evidence of leaks. • Inspect hydraulic hoses for damage. • Verify that all fittings are tight.

B

Bridgeplate Load Sensor 15

C

Circuit Breakers 14
Control and Indicators 12
Control Pendant 13

D

Daily Safety Check 10

E

Exit Vehicle 28

G

General Safety Precautions 3

I

Introduction 1

L

Lift Cycle Counter 17

M

Maintenance 38
Major Lift Components 4
Manual Backup Pump 18
Manual Lift Operation 32

N

Normal Lift Operation 19

O

Operating Instructions 7

P

Platform Motions 11

S

Safety Information 5
Stow Platform 30

T

Threshold Warning System 16

V

Vehicle Interlock System 14

Volvo Bus Corporation

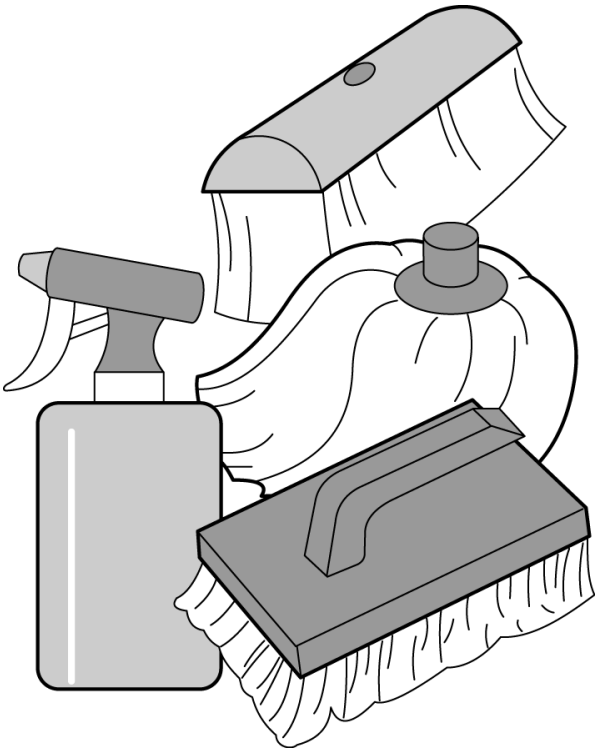
Göteborg, Sweden

89146318 English 10.02.14

Driver's Handbook

Bus Interior Maintenance

9700



T1008766

VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the maintenance of the Volvo 9700 Bus interior. The information in this manual applies to vehicles built October 2008 and later. Please keep this manual in the vehicle at all times.

Note: Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89189666

©2015 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

General Information 1
Types of Trim Material Used in the 9700 Buses 1
Keeping the Vehicle Clean — Overview 2

Floor Cleaning 5
PVC Coverings 5
Rubber Corner Moldings 8
Carpet Covering 9

Cleaning Laminates 10
Wall and Ceiling Laminates and Interior Partitions 10

Cleaning Upholstery 12
Upholstery 12
Anti-static solution; application procedure 19

Maintenance of the Seats 20
Imitation Leather 20
Velour 21
Real Leather 23
Covers on Seat Headrests 23

Washing and Maintenance of the Driver's Position 24
Dashboard, Steering Wheel, Gear Selector Lever, Shelves and Driver Caddies 24
Instrumentation 24

Washing Windows and Glass 25
Glass, Interior Partition Glass 25
Window Pillars and Sills 26

Cleaning Additional Items 27
Hand Rails, Handles, Aluminium, Chrome and Nickel Items 27
Diaphragm 27
Driver's Blind 27
Curtains 27

Index 29

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

Types of Trim Material Used in the 9700 Buses

Floor

- PVC covering
- Carpet covering (removable)

Side Walls

- Velour upholstery trim
- Leather-effect upholstery trim
- Laminate

Ceiling, Luggage Racks, Roof Ducts

- Laminate
- Leather-effect upholstery trim
- Velour upholstery trim

Seats

- Imitation leather
- Velour
- Real leather

Finishes

- Aluminium
- Lacquered steel
- Chrome, chrome nickel and aluminium items
- Rubber floor edging and other rubber items
- Plastic items

2 General Information

Keeping the Vehicle Clean — Overview

The maintenance procedures described in the following instructions ensure the correct utilization and attractive appearance of the vehicle interior.

Correct maintenance of all bus interior will ensure optimum service life and durability.

Areas subject to heavy passenger use require greater attention on the part of the cleaning team.

Maintenance Objectives:

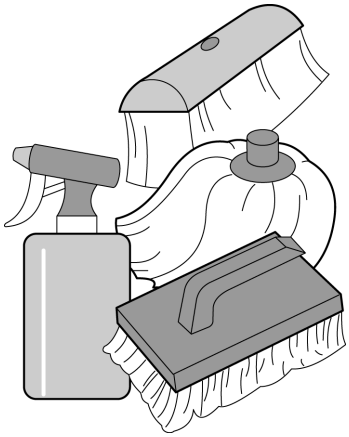
- Ensure cleanliness of floor surfaces, walls, ceilings, trim and seats
- Maintain hygiene
- Return floor surfaces, walls, ceilings, trim and seats, to their original attractive appearance
- Extend the service life of finish items in the bus interior

Sequence for Carrying Out Operations

Note: Remember the sequence for carrying out operations when cleaning. Always begin cleaning from the top down. Start with items such as ceilings, luggage racks, lights and then move on to ones lower down like wall laminates, interior partitions, hand rails, seats. Floor cleaning should be carried out last. Do not walk on washed or cleaned surfaces until they are completely dry.

Equipment:

- Cloth, broom, hand brushes (particularly for places that are difficult to reach, i.e. areas under passenger seats, luggage racks)
- Dust mop
- Cleaning mop for damp wiping
- Scrubbing brush
- Vacuum cleaner for collecting loose dust and dirt (various attachments)
- Floor/carpet washer with water extraction (various attachments)
- Protective clothing, rubber gloves
- Detergents and cleaning agents designed for various types of surfaces, as recommended by Authorized Volvo Service Outlets, as well as by the manufacturers of the trim materials



T1008766

CAUTION

Do not use aggressive agents. Failure to do so may result in damage to the components.

T1008772

Using stain removers, solvents and other permitted chemical substances

DANGER

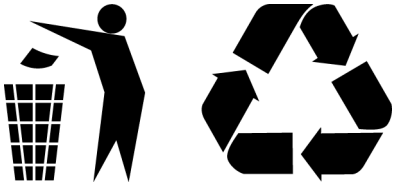
Before using a chemical agent, read the instructions governing its use, as well as the instructions on how to proceed in a hazard situation (e.g. contact of the agent with the skin or the eyes). Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or death.

CAUTION

To prevent damage to the surface of coverings or other items of the bus interior, each chemical agent used should first be tested on a small invisible area.

Guidelines for protection of the environment

Note: The empty packaging from chemical agents used in washing the vehicles interior, as well as fabric items used for cleaning, should be disposed of in an ecologically sound manner.



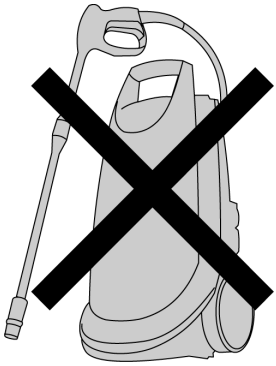
T1008770

PVC Coverings

Overview

CAUTION

High pressure washers, steam cleaners, as well as abrasive disc and rotary scrubbing machines may not be used for washing floors with PVC coverings. Failure to do so may result in damage to the floors.



T1008767

CAUTION

Running water may not be used to clean a floor with a PVC covering. Excessive water may result in damage to the floor.

T1008768

CAUTION

Solvents, aggressive agents and alcohol-based solvents may not be used to clean a floor with a PVC covering. Failure to do so may result in damage to the covering.

T1008772

6 Floor Cleaning

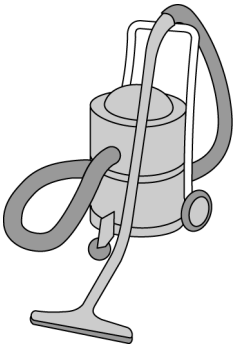
Daily Maintenance

The following should be carried out daily:

- Sweep the floor with a soft brush, or vacuum
- Wipe the floor down with a damp mop. The floor should be wiped with the mop in a figure eight motion, ensuring that no area has been missed.
- If a lot of dirt is present on the floor, clean it with a damp, well squeezed out mop using a neutral detergent.
- Use a mop or floor washer to remove any dirty water.

Note: Use a two-compartment container for the water, or two buckets (one for the dirty water and one for the clean water). Double rinsing the mop to remove both dirt and cleansing agents, stops the covering from losing its color and its anti-slip surface from getting scratched.

T1008758



T1008761

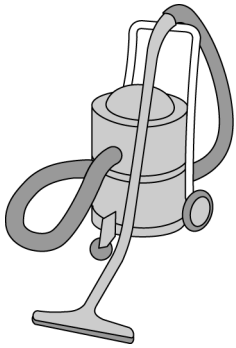
T1008759

Thorough Washing of the PVC Surface

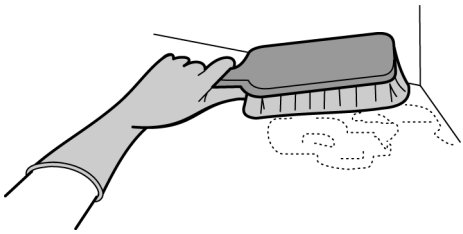
The PVC surface should be thoroughly washed once a month.

To do this, you should:

- Sweep the floor using a soft brush or vacuum it. Sweep places that are difficult to access (under the seats, the floor edges and the corners) with a hand brush.



T1008761



T1008799

- Cover the enter floor with cleansing agent, and wait for 2 to 3 minutes.
- Scrub the floor with a long-handled brush or small scrubbing brush
- Remove any stubborn stains (chewing gum, asphalt etc.) using a scraper or brush
- Use a mop or floor washer to remove any dirty water.

Note: Use a two-compartment container for the water, or two buckets (one for the dirty water and one for the clean water). Double rinsing the mop to remove both dirt and cleansing agents, stops the covering from losing its color and its anti-slip surface from getting scratched.

T1008759

Rubber Corner Moldings

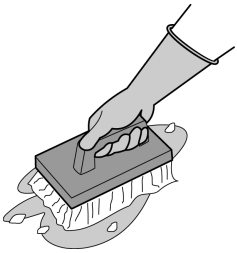
Daily Maintenance

The following should be carried out daily:

- Wipe down the rubber corner molds with a damp cloth

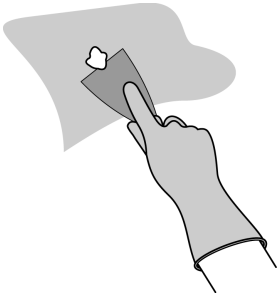
T1008800

- If a lot of dirt is present on the floor, clean it with a damp, well squeezed out mop using a neutral detergent



T1008801

- Remove stubborn marks such as those of chewing gum or asphalt etc. using a brush or scraper.



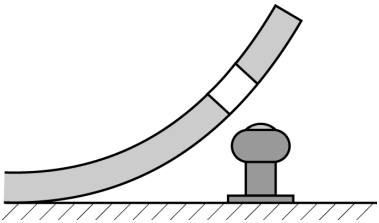
T1008802

⚠ CAUTION

Exercise care when removing dirt with a scraper so as not to damage the moldings. Piercing a molding can cause water to seep under the covering during washing down, and this can result in damage to the floor adhesive.

Carpet Covering

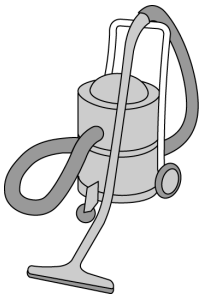
There may be carpeted flooring in the bus entrance on the steps, in the driver's compartment, under the passenger seats and in the luggage archways. The carpet covering is attached to the floor using retaining studs.



T8012277

Daily Maintenance

Daily maintenance of carpeted flooring involves thorough vacuuming of the carpet surface using a vacuum cleaner inside the vehicle. The carpet mats do not have to be unclipped to carry out this operation.



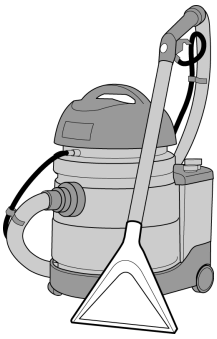
T1008761

Washing Carpet

The carpet may be washed as necessary. Because the carpet can be removed, washing should be carried out outside the vehicle. To do this, the carpet surface should first be vacuumed, so as to remove larger particles of dirt, such as crumbs or sand, and then the full carpet surface should be cleaned using a special carpet washer.

Note: After removing the carpet, vacuum or sweep the floor so as to remove dust and sand.

Note: Be sure to allow the carpets to dry before installing them back into the bus.



T1008775

10 Cleaning Laminates

Wall and Ceiling Laminates and Interior Partitions

Daily Maintenance

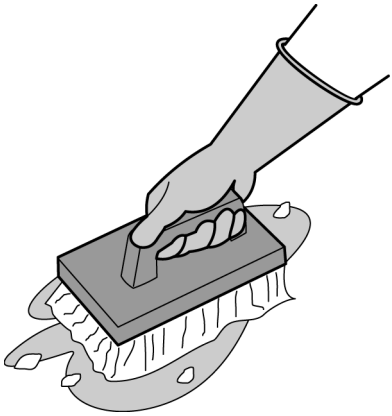
Daily maintenance of wall, ceiling laminates and lower partition items involves thorough wiping down the laminate surface using a damp cloth and neutral detergent. Wall laminates and interior partition laminates should be cleaned more often, given that they are more likely to get dirty.

T1008800

Cleaning Stubborn Dirt

Problematic dirt, such as scuff marks from shoes, mud etc., should be removed using detergents and brushes of medium stiffness. After cleaning the surface, wipe it down with a damp cloth.

⚠ CAUTION
Do not use solvents as they can result in the laminate pattern being rubbed off.



T1008801

CAUTION

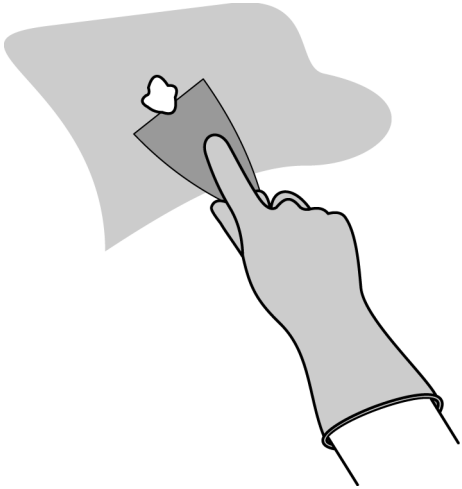
Large amounts of water must not be used in the washing of laminates. Over wetting of the laminates may result in separation of the laminate layers.

T1008773

Stubborn marks such as those of chewing gum or asphalt etc. should be removed using a scraper.

CAUTION

Exercise care when removing dirt with a scraper so as not damage (scratch) the laminate.



T1008802

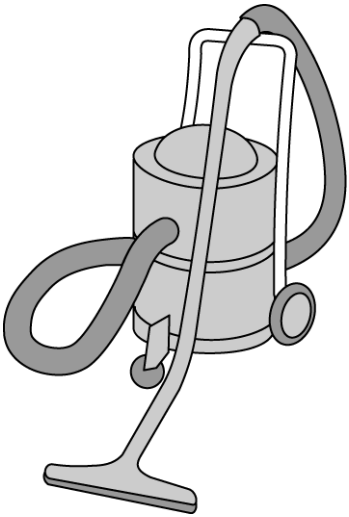
12 Cleaning Upholstery

Upholstery

The interior of the 9700 bus (ventilation ducts, luggage racks, headliner, lining of the luggage racks, upholstery trim of the toilet surround, rear wall liner) may be upholstered.

Daily Maintenance

Daily maintenance of the upholstery trim involves thorough removal of dust from the surface of the upholstered items using a soft brush (e.g. a clothes brush) or a vacuum cleaner. For this, special attachments and nozzles designed for upholstery should be used (brushes, crevice nozzles, nozzles for places that are difficult to reach).



T1008761

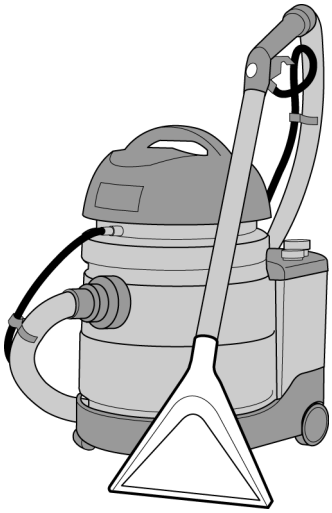
CAUTION

When cleaning upholstery trim using a vacuum cleaner, take into account the suction force of the vacuum. Excessive suction force on the upholstery can cause damage from stretching the fabric and pulling out fibers. To extend the life of the bus upholstery, do not use industrial vacuums for cleaning.

Upholstery can be wiped with a chamois cloth paying attention to the direction of the pile of the upholstery material.

Washing Wall and Ceiling Upholstery Trim

Wash the wall or ceiling upholstery trim of the bus as needed, using dry foam. Put a small amount of the agent on a damp sponge and work up a foam with the sponge. Apply the foam to the upholstery and gently rub over the dirty upholstery. Vacuum off the foam using a carpet washer or remove it using a soft brush.

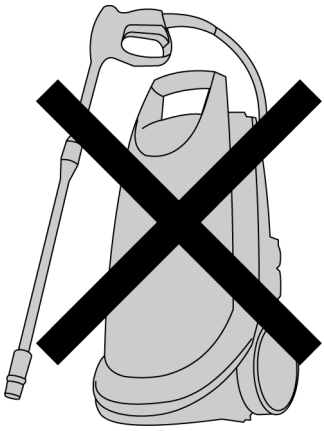


T1008775

CAUTION

Upholstery trim cannot be washed down with water. **Do Not** over wet the upholstery as the adhesive used to install it is not water resistant and damage or delamination may occur.

Note: To prevent stains, dirty spots on the upholstery should be cleaned along with the whole upholstery surface. After each wash, the covering should be thoroughly brushed out, paying attention to the direction of the pile of the material.



T1008767

CAUTION

Pressure washers, steam cleaners and running water must not be used to wash down upholstery. The adhesive used to install the upholstery is not water resistant and damage or delamination may occur.

Note: After washing upholstery inside the vehicle, the bus must be aired out and time allowed to dry if needed.

Cleaning Stubborn Dirt — Stain Removal

Stains should be removed as soon as possible. Any part of a substance that has not dried out should be scraped off. As much of the substance as possible should be absorbed with a clean, soft cloth. Using a stain remover, wipe the dirty spot with a damp cloth. When cleaning stains, you should start by working inwards from the edges of the stain towards the center.

CAUTION

Do not use flannel type material in the process to remove stains. For this purpose, only use a microfiber cloth to avoid damage the seats fabric.

CAUTION

Only with a soft bristle brush; brush the seat fabrics to avoid fabric damage.

CAUTION

Do not use detergents and solvent based stain removers, to avoid damaging the seats fabric.

General cleaning.

Type of stain	Method of stain removal
Powder, pilling, fluff, dust.	Remove excess of dirt with the help of a vacuum cleaner. If dirt remains, brush in both directions using a soft bristle brush and vacuum the dirt or impurities. Do not use a flannel type cloth or damp cloth to remove the dirt to prevent damage the seats fabric.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use solvent-based stain removers.

16 Cleaning Upholstery

Stains that dissolve in water.

Type of stain	Method of stain removal
Blood, egg, mud, urine.	Clean with a cold water and neutral shampoo mixture and mix until good foam is obtained. Do not use hot water as egg white will curdle. Remove excess of dirt with a clean microfiber cloth next brush off carefully using an antistatic soft bristle brush with a neutral shampoo foam then remove the dirt exceed with a clean microfiber cloth; repeat this process until the dirt has been removed. Use a drier or sunlight to dry the seat fabric, finally brush the fabric into the pile direction and vacuum it out.
White coffee, vomit, chocolate, ball point pen, pencil, lipstick, mayonnaise, milk, perfumes, cream, shoe polish, sauces, soft drinks, soup, mascara, soot.	Clean with a lukewarm water and neutral shampoo mixture and mix until good foam is obtained. Remove excess of dirt with a clean microfiber cloth next brush off carefully using an antistatic soft bristle brush with a neutral shampoo foam then remove the dirt exceed with a clean microfiber cloth; repeat this process until the dirt has been removed; use a drier or sunlight to dry the seat fabric. If the stain cannot be removed, after drying the material you can try to remove the stain using stain remover or other agents for the removal of stain products that not either solvent based. Finally brush the fabric into the pile direction and vacuum it out.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not use solvent-based stain removers.

Stains that dissolve in water.

Type of stain	Method of stain removal
Coca cola, fruit juices, lemonade, coffee, tea, vodka, beer.	Do not allow the stain to dry. Quickly absorb the stain using dry cloths, paper towels or paper tissues. Clean with lukewarm water and neutral shampoo mixture and mix until good foam is obtained. Remove excess of dirt with a clean microfiber cloth next brush off carefully using an antistatic soft bristle brush with a neutral shampoo foam then remove the dirt exceed with a clean microfiber cloth; repeat this process until the dirt has been removed. Use a drier or sunlight to dry the seat fabric, finally brush the fabric into the pile direction and vacuum it out.

CAUTION

Do not use solvent-based stain removers.

18 Cleaning Upholstery

Stains that do not dissolve in water.

Type of stain	Method of stain removal
Butter, floor polish, grease, resin, coal, shoe polish (oil-based), pencil, lacquer, oil, tar.	Clean with microfiber cloth soaked in stain remover or other agent for the removal of stain products that not either solvent based. Remove excess of dirt with a clean microfiber cloth; repeat this process until the dirt has been removed; use a drier or sunlight to dry the seat fabric. Finally brush the fabric into the pile direction and vacuum it out.
Chewing gum.	Clean with a microfiber cloth soaked in special agent for removing chewing gum. Remove excess of dirt with a clean microfiber cloth; repeat this process until the dirt has been removed; use a drier or sunlight to dry the seat fabric. Finally brush the fabric into the pile direction and vacuum it out.
Rust, dried blood.	Dip a white microfiber cloth in a solution of citric acid (1 flat teaspoonful to 100 ml of cold water). Clean the stains working from the edge in the direction of the center. Remove excess of dirt with a clean microfiber cloth; repeat this process until the dirt has been removed; use a drier or sunlight to dry the seat fabric. Finally brush the fabric into the pile direction and vacuum it out.

After removing stains, is recommended to apply on the fabric seats a special anti-static solution. See “Anti-static solution; application procedure”, page 19.

Anti-static solution; application procedure

After cleaning and removing stains, is recommended to apply on the fabric seats a special anti-static solution. In order to extend and obtain the best appearance of the fabric seats.

Follow the next steps to apply the anti-static solution.

Note: It is recommended to use a special anti-static solution "**General Purpose Staticide**".

For further information about the "**General Purpose Staticide**" product. See the following website for more information: http://www.aclstaticide.com/general_purpose_staticide.html

- Clean fabric as described in the "**Stain removal**" tables procedures for: General cleaning, Stains that dissolve in water and Stains that do not dissolve in water. "Cleaning Stubborn Dirt — Stain Removal", page 14
- Spray uniformly the fabric with the anti-static solution. The uniformity of the application can also be obtained by brushing the solution in the pile of fabric.

  Note: Avoid the dripping of the anti-static solution over the fabric.
- Dry the fabric using a drier or under sunlight.

Imitation Leather

Daily Maintenance

Daily maintenance of seats covered with imitation leather involves thoroughly wiping down their surfaces using a dry or damp cloth. The top and back of the seats should also be wiped down, as should the underside. To remove dirt, such as scuff marks from shoes and mud, a damp cloth should be used with detergent added. For this, you can use water that neutral washing liquid has been added.

T1008800

CAUTION

Do Not over wet the upholstery as the adhesive used to install it is not water resistant and damage or delamination may occur.

In addition, seats of this type may be vacuumed every so often so as to remove items such as crumbs or sand. During vacuuming, particular attention should be paid to items that are difficult to reach — the joints between the cushions, the backs, and folds in the upholstery. When vacuuming this type of seat, a special vacuum cleaner attachment should be used (brush).

Velour

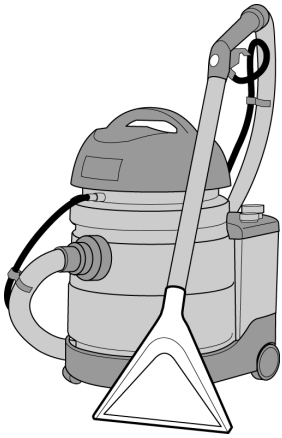
Daily Maintenance

Daily maintenance of velour upholstered seats involves thorough removal of dust from their surface using a vacuum cleaner. If dirt remains, brush in both directions and vacuum the impurities.

Note: Do not use a damp cloth to remove the dust.

Washing Upholstered Seats

Upholstered seats can be washed, as needed, using a special carpet washer which extracts the water. During vacuuming, particular attention should be paid to items that are difficult to reach — the joints between the cushions, the backs, and folds in the upholstery. In vacuuming this type of seat, a special vacuum cleaner attachment should be used of washer/extractor type.



T1008775

CAUTION

Do Not over wet the upholstery as the adhesive used to install it is not water resistant and damage or delamination may occur.

Note: After washing the upholstery, allow time to air dry.

Cleaning Stubborn Dirt — Stain Removal

Any remaining stains should be removed as soon as possible, as prolonged contact may result in permanent staining of the upholstery.

When removing stains from upholstery, suitable stain removing agents should be used. Chosen an agent in accordance with the recommendations of the seat manufacturer.
See also Upholstery, “Cleaning Stubborn Dirt — Stain Removal”, page 14

Real Leather

Leather items on seats should be wiped with a damp cloth and then dried off.

CAUTION

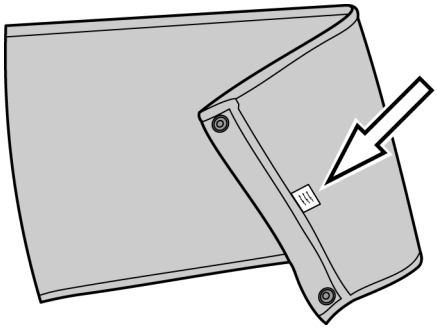
Over wetting leather may result in damage to the leather. Exercise care when cleaning leather items.

T1008800

Covers on Seat Headrests

Covers that have been removed from seat headrests should be washed in accordance with the washing instructions attached to them.

Note: In order to maintain a good standard of appearance in the vehicle, covers should be washed after every round trip. The bus should be equipped with the relevant number of headrest covers, so that the travelling comfort of each and every passenger is assured in terms of a clean headrest cover.



T1008774

Dashboard, Steering Wheel, Gear Selector Lever, Shelves and Driver Caddies

Daily Maintenance

Spray some dashboard protector onto a soft cloth and then distribute equally over the cleaned surface, and dry off.

Instrumentation

Daily Maintenance

Wipe down dirty areas with a cloth dampened in lukewarm water with some neutral washing liquid added, and then dry off with a dry cloth.

CAUTION

Do not use scouring agents as they may damage the finish on the components.

CAUTION

Ensure that no moisture gets behind covers and comes in contact with electrical and electronic items. Failure to do so may result in damaged electrical components.

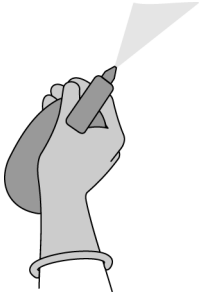
Glass, Interior Partition Glass

Washing of glass inside the bus should be carried out using special fluids designed for use on glass. After misting on a suitable amount of glass cleaner, wipe the glass down using a cloth.

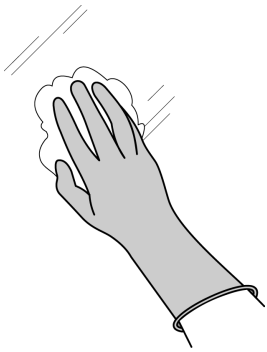
CAUTION

Do not use a squeegee to remove the glass cleaner on the interior glass as the fluid will run down onto other finish. Instead wipe the glass down with a cloth. Failure to so may result in damage to other finishes that the cleaner comes in contact with.

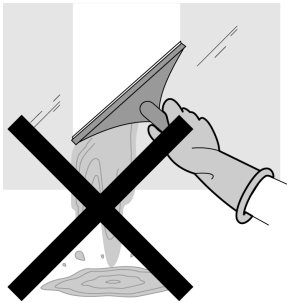
Note: The driver's window should be washed with a fluid that has an anti-static characteristic.



T1008762



T1008803



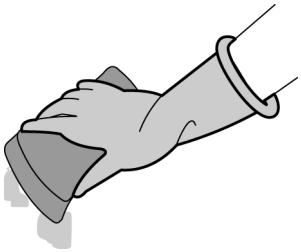
T1008771

Window Pillars and Sills

Wipe down pillars and sills with a damp sponge, with a neutral detergent added as needed. Then wipe down with a dry cloth.

CAUTION

Do not use too much water. Over wetting the lower walls may cause delamination of the laminates and or upholstery that cover them.



T1008765

T1008773

Hand Rails, Handles, Aluminium, Chrome and Nickel Items

Daily maintenance of the above-mentioned interior equipment involves thoroughly wiping them down using a dry or damp cloth.

Hand rails, handles or covers should be de-greased using detergents and cloths, as needed.

Aluminium items should be protected every so often using special agents designed for aluminium.

Chrome/nickel items should be protected every so often using special agents designed for this purpose.

Diaphragm

Wipe all recesses of the diaphragm clean of dust and dirt, as needed, using a damp cloth or sponge.

Driver's Blind

Unroll the driver's blind, and then remove dust with a vacuum cleaner with a suitable attachment (soft brush for upholstery). The use of an industrial strength vacuum is not recommended to perform this task. Use a vacuum with lower suction force.

Curtains

Washing of the curtains in 9700 buses should be carried out in accordance with the washing instructions attached to the curtains.

A

Anti/static solution application 19

C

Cleaning Additional Items 27
Cleaning Laminates 10
Cleaning Upholstery 12

F

Floor Cleaning 5

G

General cleaning 15
General Information 1

M

Maintenance of the Seats 20

S

Stain removal 14
Stains dissolve in water 16–17
Stains do not dissolve in water 18

W

Washing and Maintenance of the Driver's Position 24
Washing Windows and Glass 25

Volvo Bus Corporation

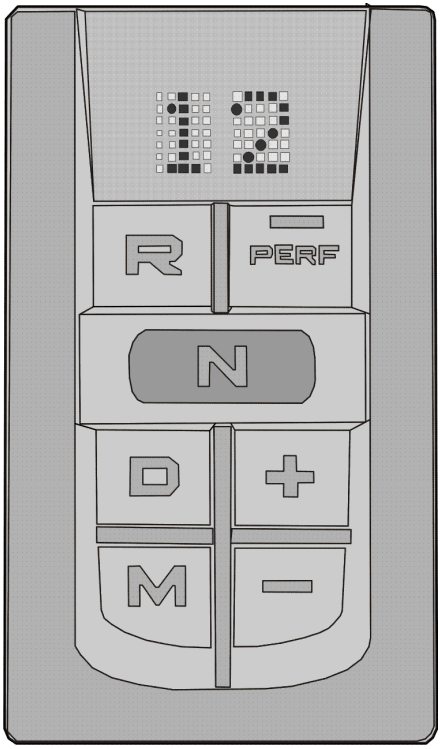
Göteborg, Sweden

89189666 English 03.2015

Operating Instructions

I-shift gear selector pad

B13R



VOLVO

Foreword

The following levels of observations, cautions and warnings are used in this Service Documentation:

Danger: Indicates an unsafe practice where serious personal injury or death could occur.

Warning: Indicates an unsafe practice where personal injury or severe damage to the product could occur.

Caution: Indicates an unsafe practice where damage to the product could occur.

Note: Indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order to have the vehicle or component function in the manner intended.

Technical data, construction information, descriptions and illustrations in this driver's handbook, were current when the book was published, and it can have been changed. Volvo company reserve the right to make changes without prior notice.
This manual contains information concerning the operation and function of **I-shift gear selector pad**
This manual contains general information about instruments and controls, as well as driving instructions. In case a bus is not equipped with all functions described in this manual, it is due to the custom adaptation and different levels of equipment.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89219726

©2016 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation.

Contents

Introduction 1
Driver's responsibility 1
I-shift, general 2
Display 2

Instruments and controls 5
I-shift gear selector pad 5
Buttons 6

Starting and stopping 9
Starting instructions 9
Stopping the vehicle 9

Driving 10
Program package 10
Function description 12
Automatic shifting 13
Driving program 16
Kick-down 17
Manual gear changing 18
Reverse gears 19
In case of gearbox malfunction 20

Driving tips 21
Fuel economy driving 21
I-Roll 21
Avoid downshifting 21
Avoid up-shifts 22
Greatest possible down-change 22
Save brakes 22
Queue driving 23
Hill Start 24
Driving on poor roads and in difficult conditions 25
Clutch 26
Extra down-changing for maximum engine brake in low gears 27
Changing driving direction 27

If something happens 28

Technical Data 31
Nomenclature and Ratios 31

Index 33

Safety information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

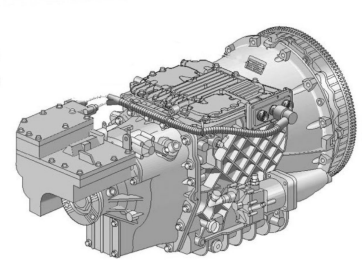
Driver's responsibility

- As the driver, you are responsible for the safety and comfort of the passengers during the journey. Therefore, do not drive the bus before you have read this driver's manual. You must be familiar with all the indicators and warning lights and know what to do if something unexpected happens.
- Follow the recommended service and maintenance program to maintain the bus's condition and safety.
- As the driver of the vehicle, you should be aware of the vehicle weight and loading capacity. See instructions on warning stickers, the vehicle registration book and on the identification plate.
- As the driver of the vehicle, it is your responsibility to foresee any hazards that could threaten your passengers.
- It is also your responsibility to ensure that all the safety equipment of the bus is in place. Therefore check regularly the working order of safety belts, emergency door and window opening, door sensitive edges, fire extinguishers and first aid equipment.

2 Introduction

I-shift, general

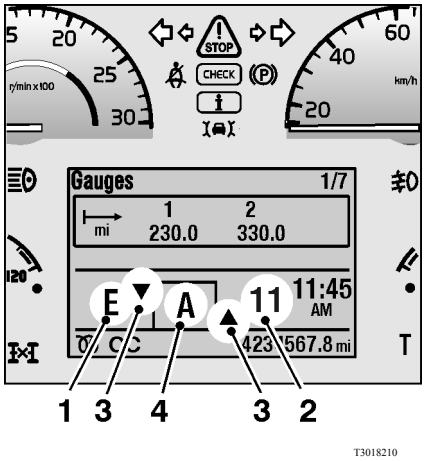
The I-Shift is an automated **mechanical** transmission with 12 forward gears and 4 reverse gears. There is no clutch pedal and the gear shifting is controlled by the transmission or the driver through the ergonomic gear selector so that the driver can concentrate on traffic. If necessary, the driver can chose to shift manually.



I-shift is delivered with two different software packages. As some functions are optional, not everything in this document is applicable to your gearbox.

Display

Select the INDICATORS menu on the display to show information about I-shift (valid both when the vehicle is stopped and when the vehicle is in motion). Information about the transmission will be presented on the driver display.



See the “Driver's instructions, Display ” for information about how to configure the transmission information as a standard display.

The gearbox section is divided into smaller sections showing:

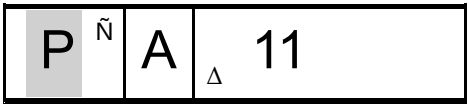
1 Driving program

2 Selected gear

3 Available gears (down/up)

4 Gear selector option.

1. Driving program



The section to the left of the gearbox field shows the driving program. The following driving programs are available:

E = economy

E+ = freewheel possible[1]

P = power

B = braking[2]

L = Limp-Home function

B = Basic

CO = Commuter Traffic

LH = Line Haul Traffic

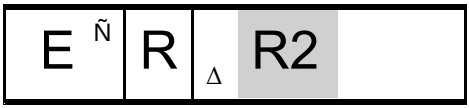
TC = Tourist & Charter Traffic

For more information about driving programs, refer to section “Driving”, page 10.

[1]The freewheel function is included in some program packages

[2]The brake program is included in some program packages

2. Selected gear



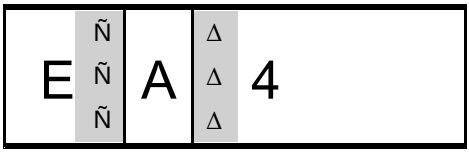
The section to the right of the gearbox field shows the selected gear.

Gear no.1 - 12

N = neutral
(N1 = low split, N2 = high split)

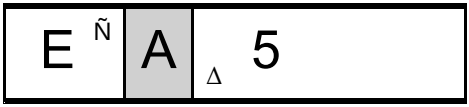
R = reverse

3. Available gears



The second section from the left in the gearbox field shows, with arrows, the number of lower gears that are available (maximum 3 arrows).
The second section from the right in the gearbox field shows how many higher gears are available (maximum 3 arrows).

4. Gear selector buttons



The section in the middle of the display shows the button pressed of gear selector.

R = reverse

N = neutral

A = automatic (Drive)

M = manual

For more information about gear selection buttons , refer to section “Instruments and controls”, page 5.

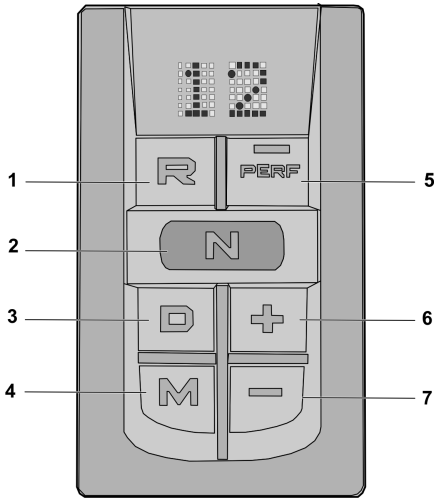
I-shift gear selector pad

The I-shift gear selector pad is located on the left side of the driver's seat. This pad is available on two versions :

- Premium
- Basic

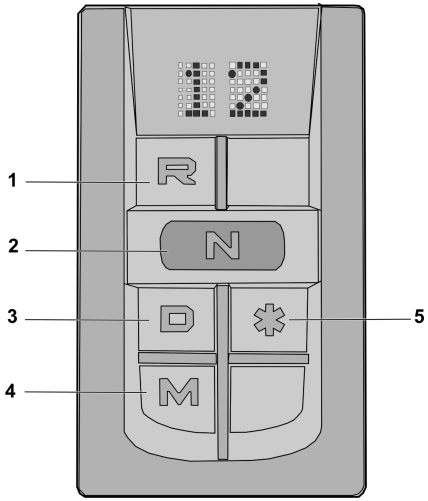
Premium version description

1 Reverse
2 Neutral
3 (Automatic) Drive
4 Manual
5 Economy/Performance
6 Upshift
7 Downshift



Basic version description

1 Reverse
2 Neutral
3 Drive (Automatic)
4 Manual
5 Limp mode



I-shift gear selector pad programs

Note: The available programs depends on the I-shift gear selector pad version

The I-shift gear selector pad is used to choose between four different driving programs.

R Reverse. The vehicle must be stopped in order to put the lever in position R.

N Neutral position. No gear engaged.

D Automatic programme. The gearbox itself selects the gear with respect to load, slope, speed and accelerator position.

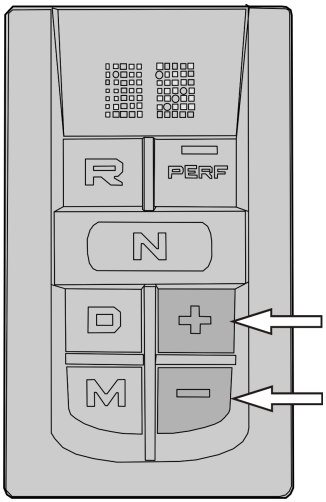
M Manual program. Changing up and down is done with the +/- buttons on the I-shift gear selector pad.

Buttons

Changing up/down

The +/- button is used to:

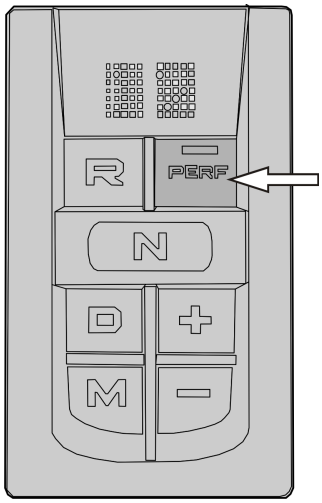
- change up or down one step at a time when in manual mode
- adjustment of gears in automatic mode
- to select split gear in neutral position when using power take-off
- to select reverse, see “Reverse gears”, page 19
- choice of start gear in automatic mode



Economy/Performance (E/P)

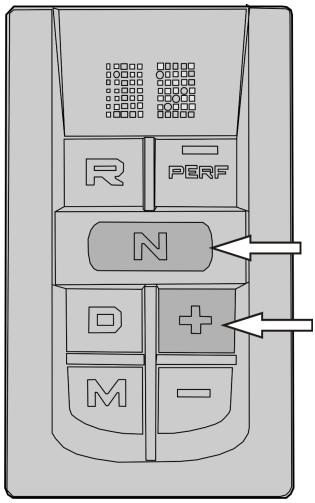
There is an economy/performance button (Perf) on the I-shift gear selector pad. This is used to:

- switch between the economy program and the power program



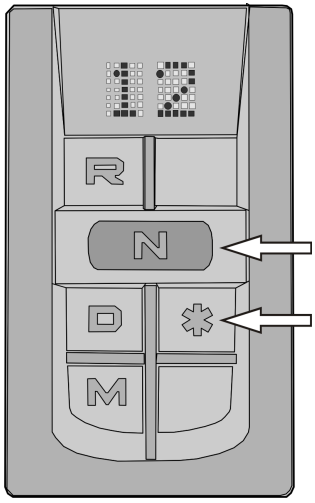
Limp-Home

Limp home is an emergency mode that can be engaged if a fault has occurred in the gearbox that prevents the vehicle from being driven in automatic, manual or reverse modes.; see “In case of gearbox malfunction”, page 20



To activate the Limp Home mode for premium version of gear selector pad:

- Simultaneously press N and + buttons. Activating can only be done while the vehicle is stationary.
- Select M position or R position as required.



To activate the Limp Home mode for basic version of gear selector pad:

- Simultaneously press N and + limp mode buttons. Activating can only be done while the vehicle is stationary.
- Select M position or R position as required.

Note: Limp Home mode should only be used for moving short distances.

Starting instructions

The neutral button must be selected on the I shift pad gear selector otherwise the engine will not start.

When the air pressure to the gearbox is too low, a warning will be displayed automatically. An icon will appear on the display at the same time as the information lamp comes on. Wait until the lamp has gone out before driving off.

Icon for low air pressure to gearbox

Stopping the vehicle

When the vehicle is stationary:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Push the I-shift gear selector pad N button (neutral).
- Switch off the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Always apply the parking brake and put the I-shift gear selector pad in N when the vehicle is parked or whenever the driver leaves the driver position.

Program package

Gearboxes have different characteristics and functions depending on the program package that is installed. The following program packages are available:

- **Basic** (B is shown on the display) is the standard transmission program
- **Commuter** is suited to the requirements of commuter traffic and includes functions that make the bus more easily manoeuvrable.
- **Line Haul** is suited to the re||quirements of line haul traffic and includes functions that provide improved fuel economy and also make the bus more easily manoeuvrable.
- **Tourist & Charter** are appropriate for tourist traffic demands. The program also includes functions that help improve fuel economy and make it easier to manoeuvre the bus.

Basic is the standard program and the other two programs include extra equipment. The table below shows the functions that are included in the different program options.

Functions	**Basic**	**Commuter**	**Line Haul**	**Tourist & Charter**
Launch Control		X[1]	X	X
Enhanced Shift strategy		X	X	X
Kick-down			X	X
I- Roll including Smart cruise control				X
Gear selection Adjustment In Auto				X
Possible optional functions	**Basic**	**Commuter**	**Line Haul**	**Tourist & Charter**
I–Roll including Smart cruise control		O[2]	O	

1 X - Standard application

2 O - Optional application

Function description

Standard characteristics

- **Performance Shift**
  The function selects the best way of performing a gear shift. This provides more nimble and comfortable shifting.
- **Basic Shifting Strategy**
  See “Automatic choice of starting gear”, page 13
- **Basic Shifting Regulation**
  Allows adjustment of automatically selected gear when engine braking.
- **Gearbox Oil Temperature Monitor**
  A warning system informs the driver if the oil temperature becomes too high.

Optional characteristics

- **I–Roll (requires VEB or retarder)**
  Automatic clutching in or out of the freewheel function, with the aim of reducing fuel consumption. When the accelerator pedal is released, the drive line is disconnected so that the vehicle can roll freely, and the engine is brought down to idling speed.
- **Intelligent Auto Pilot**
  Only active when the cruise control is activated. Saves fuel by deactivating the auxiliary brakes in certain conditions. This function improves the auto pilot by disengaging the auxiliary brakes (VEB) while driving on ascents.
- **Pull-away control**
  Allows the clutch to be controlled at low speeds using the brake pedal. Allows the engine to idle without depressing the clutch. Regulates engine torque when pulling away for optimum gear changing and avoid high engine speed.
- **Enhanced Shift Strategy**
  Works together with EBS as compensation for lack of engine braking during gear changing. This function enhances comfort.
- **Gear Selection Adjustment in Auto**
  Allows gears to be selected automatically even when the accelerator pedal is depressed.
- **Kick down** the Kick Down function supplied maximum acceleration.

Automatic shifting

The easiest way to drive the vehicle is to use the automatic program (D button). Gears will shift automatically, and the driver can focus on the actual driving.

When changing gear, the system will govern the clutch, gearbox and throttle. The system selects the gear and the point in time for gear changing for optimum driving performance based on accelerator pedal position, vehicle weight, road inclination, vehicle acceleration, etc.

In automatic mode it is also possible to adjust the gears up or down. The arrows in the display show how many steps it is possible to change up or down.

Automatic choice of starting gear

The gearbox can also select a suitable pulling away gear based on vehicle weight and road inclination.

Freewheel (I-Roll)

The freewheel can be activated if the lever for the auxiliary brake is in position A and E+ is shown in the display. When the freewheel is activated, the split gear is set to N, neutral. The freewheel is activated differently depending on whether the cruise control is on or not.

1 If the cruise control is active:

- The free wheel is engaged in downhill stretches when speeds exceed the set driving speed (for example 80 km/h). The set permitted excess speed must be 6 km/h or more. (Please refer to “Driver's Manual ”, the chapter on auxiliary brakes for more information on how the auxiliary brake functions and how the excess speed can be set.)
- The free wheel is disengaged when the speed exceeds the set excess speed or below the set driving speed (for example 80 km/h).
- The I-Roll function also includes the Smart Cruise Control that inactivates the auxiliary brakes at the end of downhill slopes to further save fuel.

2 If the cruise control is not active:

- The I-Roll is engaged when the accelerator is released and the road is flat or has a small slope upwards or downwards
- The I-Roll is disengaged when the brake pedal is depressed, the accelerator is depressed, the lever for the auxiliary brake is set in position 0, 1, 2, 3 or B or if the M button of the I-shift gear selector pad is pushed.

When the free wheel is activated, N is shown as the gear in the info display and the engine idles.

Locking gear

Do **not** use automatic up or down-changing when:

- When the vehicle gets near the top of an ascent and wants to avoid unnecessary downshifting.
- On an uphill slope with a flat section.
- When driving on poor surfaces.

This function is used only when driving with the automatic program D

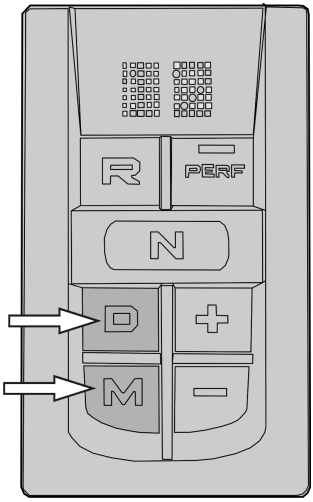
The function can be used in all forward gears (1 to 12).

Whenever gear changing is not desired, (e.g. driving up a hill), change the selector from D to M. No further gear changes will be carried out and the current gear will remain engaged. The display shows an M.

To return to the automatic program, push the button A on the I-shift gear selector pad again.

Note: There is risk of over revving when the gear is locked.

Note: If the vehicle is stopped with a not permitted gear engaged in the M mode, the starting gear is automatically selected.



CAUTION

Pulling away in too high a gear causes excessive wear to the clutch and can increase the risk for breakdown in the clutch.

Driving program

There are three different driving programs:

Economy

Power or enhanced power for difficult conditions or poor roads

Braking program

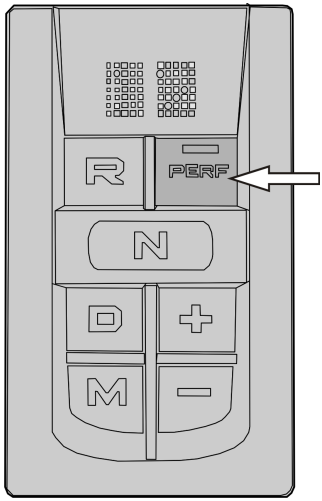
Economy

When the engine is on, the economy program is always selected (shown as an E on the display). The economy program prioritizes reduced fuel consumption while driving and is mainly used when driving under normal conditions.

Power

The power program is engaged/disengaged using the Perf button (see figure). The power program prioritizes handling at the expense of fuel economy, and is used when driving in mountainous terrain or off-road driving. The power program generally uses higher engine speeds than the economy program, and a lower pull-away gear is selected.

To save fuel, the gearbox will automatically switch off the power program when it is no longer required and returns to the economy program.



Brakes

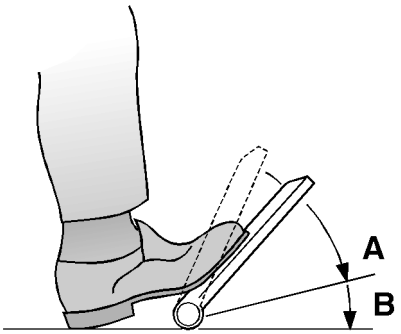
A special braking program can be engaged using the auxiliary brake lever. Please refer to “Driver's Manual”, section on auxiliary brake. (Optional function.)

Kick-down

Kick-down is activated by pressing the accelerator pedal all the way down to the floor (position B). The kick-down program optimises gear selection/throttle for maximum acceleration. This is possible in both economy and power programs but not in manual position M. (Kick-down is an option.)

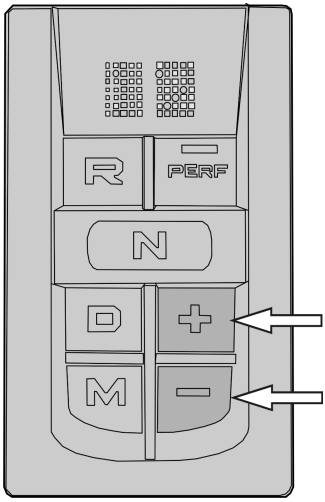
Position A = full throttle

Position B = kick down



T2012347

Manual gear changing



The vehicle can be driven under manual shifting, or automatic shifting can be engaged whenever needed. Shift gears by first pushing the M button on the I-shift gear selector pad. The + and - buttons on the side of the I-shift gear selector pad are then used to select the gear.

Press the + or - buttons once for each up-shift or downshift, respectively, until the desired gear is reached.

Press the + or - buttons several times to shift several gears at once.

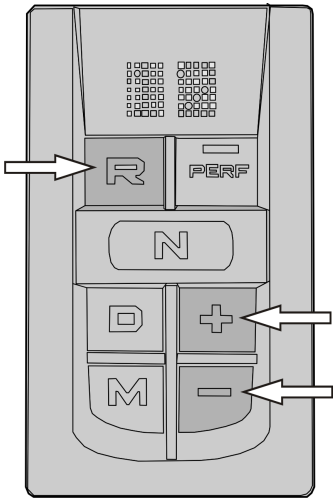
Note: When changing a gear, the accelerator pedal should **not** be released.

Note: If the vehicle is stopped with a not permitted gear engaged in the M mode, the starting gear is automatically selected.

CAUTION

Starting in a too high gear exposes the clutch to high levels of wear.

Reverse gears



The gearbox has four reverse gears (R1 through R4). The vehicle must be stopped before reverse can be engaged. The system will automatically select R1 when the I-shift gear selector pad is set to R.

While driving, it is possible to shift between R1 and R2, and between R3 and R4. To shift between R2 and R3, the vehicle must be stopped.

Use the + or - buttons on the I-shift gear selector pad to change gear manually.

CAUTION

Starting in a too high gear exposes the clutch to high levels of wear.

In case of gearbox malfunction

Where there is a fault with the gearbox that means that you cannot drive the vehicle, activate the Limp-Home function and drive on.

Note: The Limp-Home function should only be used for short distances and activating can only be done while the vehicle is stationary

Activate Limp-Home as follows:

1 Simultaneously press N and + buttons (or limp mode for basic version).

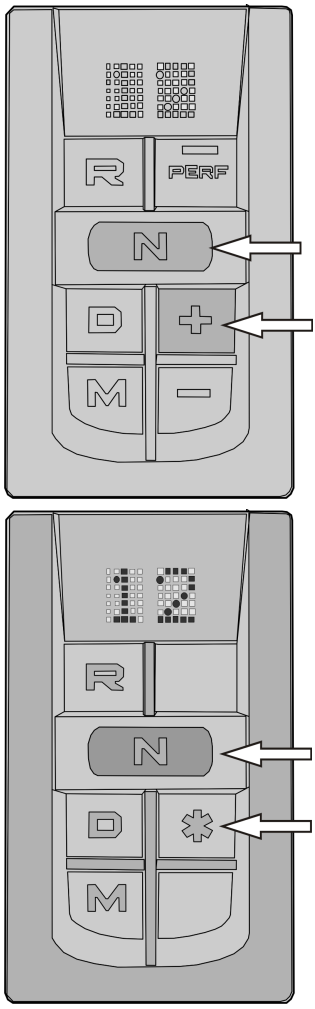
2 Select M position or R position as required

3 Select a gear using the + or - buttons on the I-shift gear selector pad

When Limp-Home is selected, the vehicle cannot be driven if the I-shift gear selector pad is set on automatic mode. Only forward gears 1, 3 and 5, and reverse gear 1 may be used. The transmission can only be shifted when the vehicle is stopped.

To select reverse, set the I-shift gear selector pad to R. Set the I-shift gear selector pad back to M to drive forwards again.

The Limp-Home function will be disengaged when the ignition is turned off.



Fuel economy driving

I-Shift is optimized to provide the best fuel economy for the vehicle's situation. To achieve better fuel economy, drive in mode automatic whenever possible. Only chose mode manual when driving in conditions that require manual shifting.

I-Roll

During normal driving, the I-shift gear selector pad should be set on D (automatic), and the auxiliary brake should be in position A so that I-Roll can be accessed. Use I-Roll whenever possible: for example, on gentle descents.

Set the cruise control's speed slightly lower and instead increase the overspeed. This gives more opportunities when I-Roll can be activated and thereby save fuel.

Avoid downshifting

In some cases, it may be better to stay in a higher gear if the engine speed is low. For example, immediately before reaching the top of an incline, it's better to reach the top without downshifting, which saves on fuel. When driving, hold the + button down until the vehicle starts to accelerate again to avoid downshifts.

Avoid up-shifts

To avoid up-shifting (for example, when climbing a hill) the - button should be held down until the vehicle starts to brake (hill climbing).

The function can also be used just before an uphill slope to get a higher speed into the uphill slope. Down-changing functions normally in these cases.

Greatest possible down-change

To optimize downshifting, for example, after a steep climb:

- Hold the minus button pressed in
- Change the I-shift gear selector pad from D to the M
- Release the minus button

This allows for better downshifting, since immediately after releasing the (-) button the engine speeds up. Keep the M program when you want to avoid another shift in gears.

Save brakes

Preferably use the engine brake to brake towards a stop to save the service brakes. When braking hard, brake program B can be used. Down-changing will then occur which contributes to an increased braking effect from the engine brake.

Queue driving

The Launch control function allows you to drive the vehicle in idle, which is sufficient when driving in traffic jams. If you have selected the "Enhanced Gear Selection" setting, including Kick-down, then you can also downshift or up-shift to adjust to the speed of traffic. The gearbox will then increase the engine speed a bit to allow the transmission to shift.

Activating while standing still:

1 Choose position D or M

2 Release the brake

3 Depress the accelerator pedal

4 Release the accelerator pedal once the vehicle starts to move forward.

When the brake pedal is depressed or it becomes so heavy that the engine risks stopping, the clutch is disengaged to prevent the engine from stopping. To return to queue driving, press on the accelerator pedal.

Note: The vehicle does not need to be stopped for this function to be activated.

Note: At low speeds and gears, queue driving is activated automatically. Depress the brake pedal to inactivate.

Hill Start

If the vehicle is equipped with “Auxiliary uphill pull-away ” this must be used to prevent the vehicle from rolling back when pulling away on an uphill slope.

- Keep the vehicle stationary using the handbrake.
- Change the I-shift gear selector pad to the A or M position and select a suitable starting gear.
- Depress the accelerator pedal at the same time as releasing the parking brake.

This icon will be shown on the cluster when hill start mode is activated

CAUTION

Never hold the vehicle stationary on an uphill slope by using the accelerator pedal. The clutch could overheat, which could cause it to fail.

Driving on poor roads and in difficult conditions

In difficult driving conditions or mountainous terrain (for example, on forest roads, job sites or off-road) it can be helpful to use the P driving program, which allows fewer shifts to be made. The gear selection is optimized for higher engine speeds, in order to achieve good response and acceleration while maintaining good fuel economy. This also offers higher tolerance for shifts during on-road ascents.

To prevent unplanned gear changing, e.g. on a soft surface or sudden change of the terrain that the automatic gear changing can not foresee, use manual mode.

To prevent up-changing when e.g. driving uphill, the minus button can be held pressed in. The function can also be used just before an uphill slope to get a higher speed into the uphill slope.

To achieve the greatest down-change possible, e.g. just before a steep uphill slope, hold down the minus button, move the I-shift gear selector pad from position A to M and then release the minus button.

In normal driving conditions, return to the E driving program by pressing the Perf button for optimum fuel consumption.

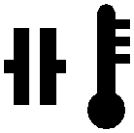
Clutch

The clutch is a dry disc type, i.e. has no torque converter. Therefore, never allow the clutch to slip in too high a gear when pulling away. The information lamp will come on and a symbol will appear on the display if the clutch overheats.

If the lamp lights up when the vehicle is started and the bus is already moving, continue driving.

If the lamp lights up when the vehicle is started and the bus is not moving, set the gear to position D or position R and let the engine idle until the light goes out.

When starting in manual position, choose 1st gear to avoid straining the clutch.



These icons will appear on the cluster if clutch overheats

CAUTION

Never hold the vehicle stationary on an uphill slope by using the accelerator pedal. The clutch could overheat, which could cause it to fail.

Declutching

If rapid declutching is required, e.g. in slippery conditions, change the I-shift gear selector pad to N, neutral.

Extra down-changing for maximum engine brake in low gears

For maximum comfort in low gears, the braking program B does not permit more than one down-change at a time when the gearbox has one of these gears engaged. To get maximum braking power e.g. at construction site driving, move the auxiliary brake stalk to the B position repeatedly, which results in a down-change each time. Thereby a higher engine speed and maximum engine brake is obtained.

Changing driving direction

(Applies only to units equipped with EBS)

The driving direction, forwards (A or D) or backwards (R), can be changed while driving using the I-shift gear selector pad without the brake pedal being used. The bus does not need to be standing still. The unit brakes slowly down automatically and when stationary the gear is changed for the new driving direction.

Note: The function must only be used when marshalling.

Towing with I-Shift

Note: During towing, the main switch and parking lamps shall be lit if the electrical system of the vehicle is functioning.

CAUTION

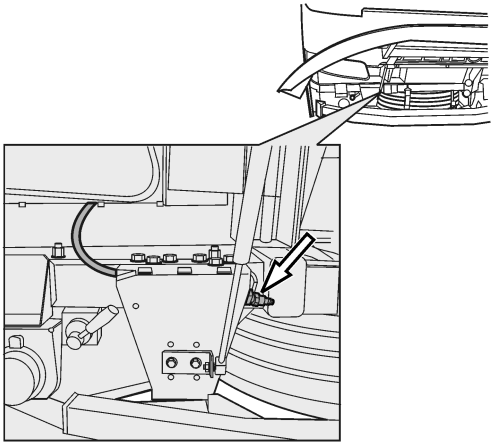
Failure to disconnect the driveshaft, remove the drive axle shaft(s) or lift the drive wheels off the ground before towing or pushing the vehicle, can cause serious transmission damage and void the transmission warranty.

Note: Traction control system should be turned off if one of the axles is raised during towing.

The parking brake must be released during towing.

For all long distance towing, assure that the tow vehicle has the necessary equipment to reach the front axle, per bus specifications. It may be necessary for the tow vehicle to attach an air supply to the bus during towing.

Towing or moving the bus for short distances can also be performed using a towing rod or bar. Refer to the accompanying illustrations for attaching points location.



Front Air Supply Connection Location

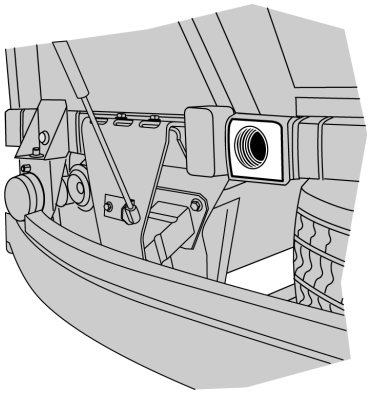
The position for attaching is available in the front of the bus. See the accompanying illustration for the general location.

After mechanically releasing the parking brake, the bus cannot be braked either with the main brake or with the parking brake. Block the wheels or connect to the tow vehicle, so that the bus cannot start moving after the parking brake has been released.

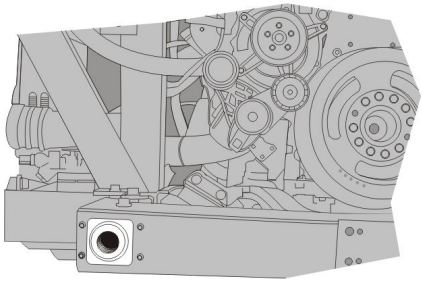
Towing requires either the drive shaft or both drive shafts to be removed, because otherwise the transmission may be damaged due to insufficient lubrication.

Note: For, punctures, the tire must be repaired before towing begins.

For more information about towing, refer to Function Group 192, Information type Description Towing information



Place for towing bar attachment (front).



T8059309

Place for towing bar attachment (rear)

Towing alternative procedure.

Note: This procedure applies only for buses with I-Shift AMT-D with towing alternative procedure.

If the standard procedure can't be followed due to road conditions, follow the alternative procedure described below.

This will allow the vehicle to be towed without the removal of the driveshaft for whatever distance the vehicle need to be towed. The following conditions must be met.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not replace the towing standard procedure, this procedure does not have any indicator, if any of the steps below are not fulfilled a transmission damage may occur.

Towing gear 3 HR will be engaged if following points are fulfilled:

- The gear lever or the shift pad must be in neutral
- Engine is not running
- There must be enough air pressure to the gearbox
- The vehicle must have electrical power.
- The ignition key must be in "ON" position.
- Vehicle must be towed forward

⚠ CAUTION

Reverse towing is not allowed when such towing alternative procedure applied. Reverse towing can damage the gearbox.

Nomenclature and Ratios

The I-Shift transmission is available in three configurations:

- AT2612D – Direct Drive for VOLVO D11 and D13 Engines
- ATO2612D – Overdrive for VOLVO D11 and D13 Engines
- ATO3112D – Overdrive for VOLVO D16 Engines

Nomenclature

AT	O	XX	12	D
Automated Mechanical Transmission	O = Overdrive No Letter = Direct Drive	Maximum Input Torque Nm (ft-lb) 26 = 2600 (1918) 31 = 3100 (2300)	Forward Speeds	Design Level

32 Technical Data

Gear Ratios

Gear Selection	AT2612D	ATO2612D	ATO3112D
	Direct Drive	**Overdrive**	**Overdrive**
1st	14.94:1	11.73	11.73
2nd	11.73:1	9.21	9.21
3rd	9.04:1	7.09	7.09
4th	7.09:1	5.50	5.50
5th	5.54:1	4.35	4.35
6th	4.35:1	3.41	3.41
7th	3.44:1	2.70	2.70
8th	2.70:1	2.12	2.12
9th	2.08:1	1.63	1.63
10th	1.63:1	1.28	1.28
11th	1.27:1	1.00	1.00
12th	1.00:1	0.79	0.79
Reverse Gear R1	17.48:1	13.73	13.73
Reverse Gear R2	13.73:1	10.78	10.78
Reverse Gear R3	4.02:1	3.16	3.16
Reverse Gear R4	3.16:1	2.48	2.48

A

Automatic transmission 13
Available gears 4
Avoid downshifting 21
Avoid up-shifts 22

B

Braking program 17
Button D 6
Button M 6
Button N 6
Button R 6
Buttons 6

C

Changing up/down 6
Clutch 26
Compressed air, gearbox 9

D

Declutching 27
Display 2
Driver's responsibility. 1
Driving 10
Driving fuel economy 21
Driving in construction sites 25
Driving on forest roads 25
Driving program 3, 16
Driving tips 21

E

Economy program 16
Economy/Performance (E/P) 7
Engaging a gear 18

F

Freewheel 14
Fully manual shifting 18

H

Hill Start 24

I

I-Roll 14, 21
I-shift gear selector pad 5
I-shift gear selector pad programs 6
If something happens 28
Instruments and controls 5
Introduction 1

K

Kick-down 17

L

Lever position 4
Limp-Home 8
Limp-Home function 20
Locking gear 15

O

Off-road 25
Optimized downshifting 22
Optional characteristics 12

P

Power program 16
Program packages 10

Q

Queue driving 23

R

Reverse gears 19

S

Safety information. 5
Save brakes 22
Selected gear 4
Standard characteristics 12
Starting and stopping 9
Stopping the engine 9

T

Technical Data 31

Volvo Bus Corporation

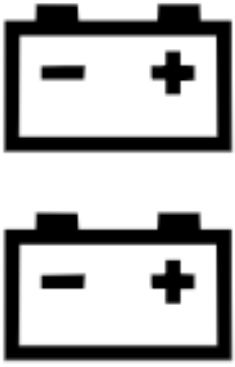
Göteborg, Sweden

89219726 English January, 2016

Driver's Handbook

I-START System

B13R, 9700/USCAN



C0080351

VOLVO

Foreword

This manual contains information concerning the operation and function of the Volvo 9700 US/CAN bus I-Start System. Please keep this manual in the vehicle at all times.
Technical data, construction information, descriptions and illustrations in this driver's handbook, that were current when the book was published, can have been changed. The Volvo company reserve the right to make changes without prior notice.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Prevost should be informed immediately if you believe that the vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death.
Contact NHTSA by calling the Auto Safety Hotline at 1 (888) 327-4236, by writing to NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590, by TTY at 1 (800) 424-9153, or visit their website at: *www.nhtsa.dot.gov*.

Please keep this manual in the vehicle at all times.

Note: Illustrations in this manual are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

Note: It is important that this manual stays with the vehicle when it is sold. Important safety information must be passed on to the new owner.

All information, illustrations and specifications contained in this manual are based upon the latest product information available at the time of publication. VOLVO Bus reserves the right to make changes at any time or to change specifications or design without notice and without incurring obligation.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89258615

©2016 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Introduction 1
Driver's responsibility 1

Overview 2

General Information 3
Labels 3
Power relays labels 4
Schematics 5

Battery charger 6
Batteries charger electrical outlet 6
Batteries charger specification 6
Charging mode 7
Battery charging time 8

ARMS (Automatic Reset Main Switch) 9

Starter batteries compartment 10
The battery main switch 10
A chassis fuse box 10

Consumer batteries compartment 11
A body fuse box 11
12 V Fuse holder 11

Vehicle messages and symbols 12
For I-start 12
For Starter Batteries/ARMS 13

If something happens 14
Service Switch 14
Jump start ground connection 15
Jump start procedure 16

Index 17

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

Driver's responsibility

- As the driver, you are responsible for the safety and comfort of the passengers during the journey. Therefore, do not drive the bus before you have read this driver's manual. You must be familiar with all the indicators and warning lights and know what to do if something unexpected happens.
- As the driver of the vehicle, it is your responsibility to foresee any hazards that could threaten your passengers.
- It is also your responsibility to ensure that all the safety equipment of the bus is in place. Therefore check regularly the working order of safety belts, emergency door and window opening, door sensitive edges, fire extinguishers and first aid equipment.
- Follow the recommended service and maintenance program to maintain the bus's condition and safety.

2 Overview

I-Start is a dual battery system designed to secure cranking and provide a longer service life for the batteries

In order to achieve this, vehicle loads are split in two systems:

- Chassis electronics (connected to Starter Batteries)
- Body electronics (connected to Consumer Batteries)

All the electric devices are connected to the consumer batteries (Coffee makers, Lamps, Power outlets, etc).

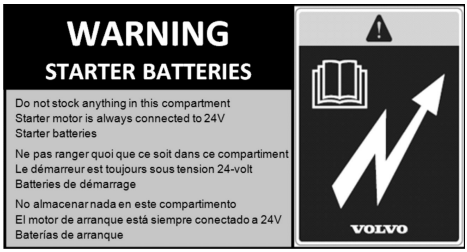
⚠ WARNING

On vehicles with I-Start there is voltage in the starter batteries even if the battery main switch is disengaged. In order to fully de-energize the vehicle, the cables on the battery terminals must be disconnected from both the starter batteries and the consumer batteries.

Labels

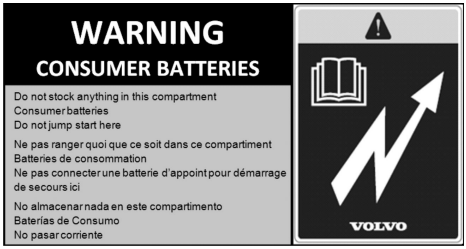
Danger, Warning and Caution labels are placed in various locations on the vehicle to alert drivers and service technicians about situations that may lead to personal injury or equipment damage. In the event that a label is damaged or missing the **label must be replaced**. Contact your authorized VOLVO Bus dealer for assistance regarding labels.

Decal is placed in the chassis fuse box in the starter batteries compartment.



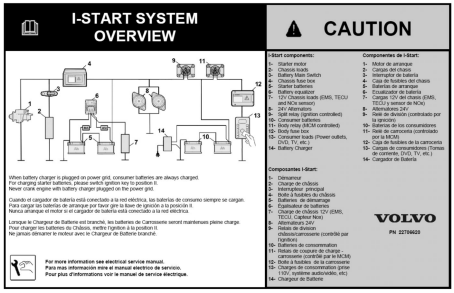
W0111068

Decal is placed in the body fuse box in the consumer batteries compartment.



W0111069

Decal with the system description is placed on the hatch of the right side battery compartment.



W0111070

Power relays labels

The I-Start system have two power relays:

- **K400** relay is identified with a label placed on the left side battery compartment near to the Consumer Batteries.
- **K300** relay is identified with a label placed on the right side battery compartment near to the Starter Batteries.

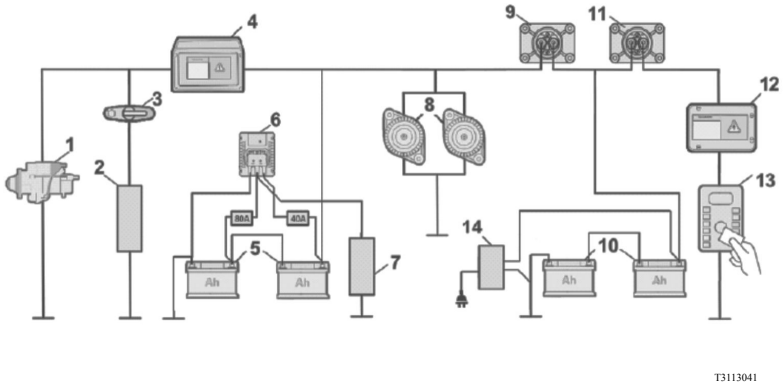
W0111072

Note: Both power relays have a decal in three languages for a better identification.

W0111071

Schematics

I-Start system has the next Schematics distribution.



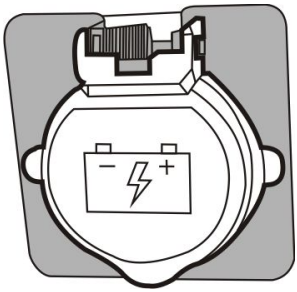
T3113041

1 Starter Motor
2 Chassis Loads
3 Battery Main Switch
4 Chassis fuse box
5 Starter batteries
6 Battery equalizer
7 12 V Chassis loads
8 24 V Alternators
9 Split relay (Ignition controlled)
10 Consumer batteries
11 Body relay (MCM controlled)
12 Body fuse box
13 Consumer loads (Video Equipment, Coffee maker, Lamps, Power outlets, etc.)
14 Battery Charger

6 Battery charger

Batteries charger electrical outlet

In the right hand side batteries compartment hatch there is installed an electrical outlet for connecting the charger to the power grid.



W0111074

Batteries charger specification

The current consumption is 15A connected to 120VAC +/- 10% 60Hz +/- 10.

Charging mode

The batteries charger has the following charging modes:

- If ignition key is on position **0** or **I + click**, only the consumer batteries are charged.
- If Ignition key is on position **II**, starter and consumer batteries are charged.

If Ignition key is on position I + click, bus accessories can be used (like the radio).

WARNING

Never crank engine with battery charger plugged on the power grid.

8 Battery charger

Battery charging time

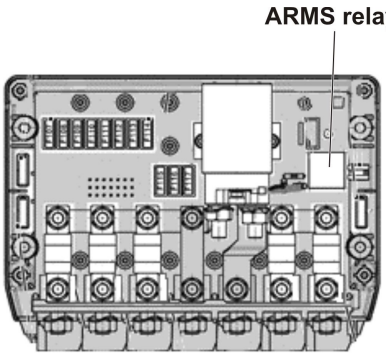
Consumer batteries (ignition key on position **0** or position **I + click**):

- State of charge from **50% to 80%**: Around **45 minutes**.*
- State of charge from **60% to 80%**: Around **30 minutes**.*
- State of charge from **70% to 80%**: Around **15 minutes**.*
- Starter and Consumer Batteries with state of charge from **50% to 80%**: Around **6 hours**.*
- Starter and Consumer Batteries with state of charge from **60% to 80%**: Around **4 hours**.*
- Starter and Consumer Batteries with state of charge from **70% to 80%**: Around **2 hours**.*

T0014333

* Considering SOH (State Of Health) **100%** and **25 °C**.
The values were estimated and may vary according to specific conditions.

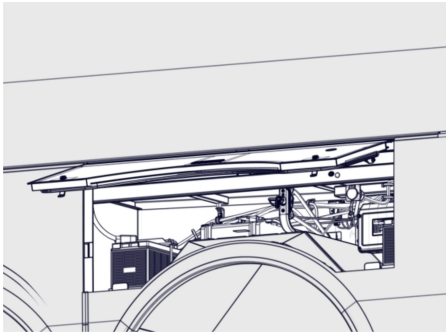
The function of the ARMS (Automatic Reset of Main Switch) relay is to secure energy for cranking.
The ARMS relay is responsible for shutting down **+30** power source to prevent starter batteries from getting drained when **23,5 V** are detected for more than **120 seconds**.
ARMS relay is located in the fuse box..
This function will only work if the ignition key is on position **I + a click,** refer to the ignition key positions on the Driver´s manual.



W0111465

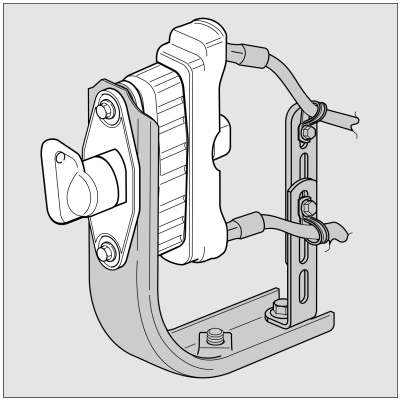
10 Starter batteries compartment

The starter batteries supply the necessary current to starter motor to work. These batteries are located in the left side of the bus, refer to the image.



The battery main switch

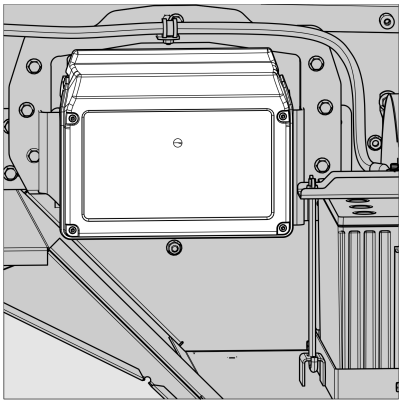
The battery main switch disconnects the current to the consumer batteries but NOT the starter batteries.



W0104281

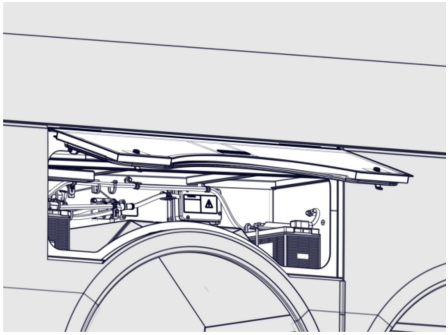
A chassis fuse box

This fuse box contains the fuses for the I-Start System. This fuse box is located in the starter batteries compartment.



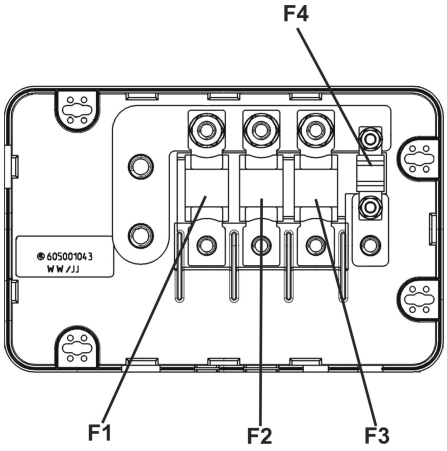
W0104280

The consumer batteries supply energy to all bus electrical devices and the vehicle´s Control Units. These batteries are located in the right side of the bus, refer the image.



A body fuse box

This fuse box contains the fuses for the I-Start System. This fuse box is located in the consumer batteries compartment.

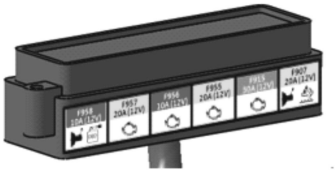


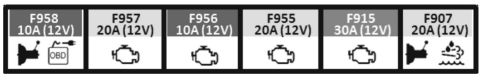
T3113651

12 V Fuse holder

12V supply from Equalizer

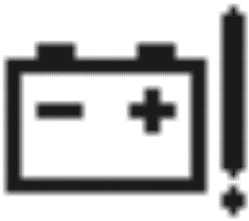
A decal was added to the fuse holder for a better identification of each fuse.





T3113137

For I-start



T3113158

High Voltage / Consumer Batteries and probable causes:

- Rapid charger or jump starting unit connected
- Faulty alternator
- Abnormally high voltage or short-circuit to higher voltage

Low voltage / Consumer Batteries and probable causes:

- Faulty battery
- Abnormally low voltage or short-circuit to ground cable

I START fault and probable causes:

- Problem on K300 or K400 or K53 Relay

Note: If one of the mentioned messages appear, call to the service center at the next stop.

For Starter Batteries/ARMS

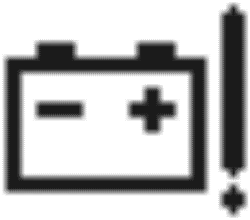
High Voltage / Starter Batteries and probable causes:

- Rapid charger or jump starting unit connected
- Faulty alternator
- Faulty battery
- Abnormally high voltage or short-circuit to higher voltage

T3113159

Supply voltage below 24 V and probable causes:

- Faulty battery
- Abnormally low voltage or short-circuit to ground cable



T3113158

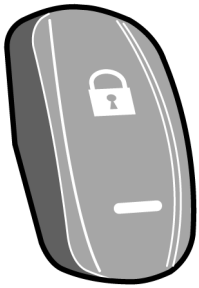
Check BBM and probable causes:

- ARMS relay open circuit
- Faulty ARMS relay

Note: If one of the mentioned messages appears, stop the bus in the next station and call to the service center.

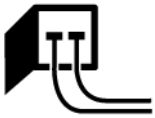
Service Switch

There is a switch in the Electrical Center compartment (with a lock symbol) that needs to be activated when the MCM is being programmed.



T1008543

If this switch is activated, the start is disable and an indicator is displayed in the cluster.

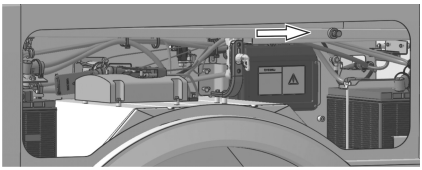


T0014716

Jump start ground connection

A stud for jump start was placed in the Starter Batteries compartment.

On the hatch of the compartment there is a decal with instructions for jump start in three languages.



T3113156

Ground connection

Jump start procedure

For jump start batteries, proceed as follows:

1 Place the ignition switch in **0** position

2 Make sure the donor batteries have **24 V** total voltage or **24 V** voltage on the system

3 Turn **OFF** the engine on the assistance vehicle and make sure the vehicles do not touch each other

4 Open the consumer batteries compartment.

5 Connect one of the red cable end to the positive terminal of the donor battery. The positive terminal is marked in red, **P** or +

6 Connect the other red cable clamp to the positive terminal of the dead batteries. The positive terminal is marked in red, **P** or +

7 Connect one of the black cable end to the negative terminal of the donor battery marked in black, **N** or **-**

8 Connect the other black cable end to a ground stud

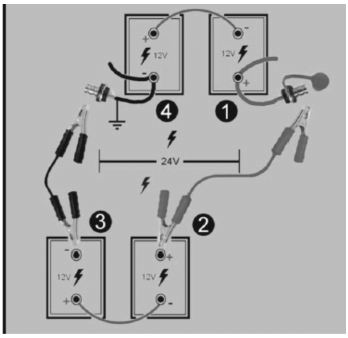
9 Start the engine of the assistance vehicle. Let the engine run, at approximately **1000 rpm**

10 Start engine of dead vehicle. Disconnect the black cable from the ground stud. Disconnect the other end of the black cable

11 Disconnect the clamp on the black cable from the ground terminal

12 Disconnect the cable end on the black cable from the negative terminal on the donor batteries.

13 Disconnect the red cable.



T3113157

1 Red on dead

2 Red on donor

3 Black on donor

4 Black on dead

12 V Fuse holders. 11

A

A chassis fuse box. 10
ARMS (Automatic Reset Main Switch) 9
ARMS (Automatic Reset Main Switch). 9

B

Batteries charger specification 6
Battery charger 6
Battery charger. 6
Battery charging time. 8

C

Charging mode. 7
Chassis fuse box front. 11
Check BBM 13
Consumer batteries compartment 11
Consumer batteries compartment. 11

D

Driver's responsibility. 1

G

General Information 3

H

High Voltage / Consumer Batteries 12
High Voltage / Starter Batteries 13

I

I START Fault 12
If something happens 14
If something happens. 14
Introduction 1

J

Jump start batteries procedure. 16
Jump start procedure. 15

L

Labels. 3
Low voltage / Consumer Batteries 12

O

Overview 2
Overview. 2

P

Power relays. 4

S

Safety information. 5
Schematics. 5
Service Switch. 14
Starter batteries compartment 10
Starter batteries compartment. 10
Supply voltage below 24 V 13

T

The battery main switch. 10

V

Vehicle messages and symbols 12

VOLVO

Volvo Bus Corporation

Göteborg, Sweden

89258615 English June 2016

Printed in Mexico

Operating Instructions

Seat safety belts

9700 US/CAN

T0015398

VOLVO

Foreword

These operating instructions contain information about the safety belts both of the passengers seats and of the driver seat.

Illustrations are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components are represented as accurately as possible.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89316576

©2017 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Introduction 1

Reporting safety defects 2

Using the seat safety belt 3

Fastening and adjusting the belt 4
Driver seat safety belt reminder 6

Locking retractor modes in the passenger seat safety belts 7

Child restraint systems 8

Inspection of the seat safety belt systems 9
Inspection of the belt straps 10
Inspection of the buckles and latches 10
Inspection of the retractors 11
Inspection of the anchor (driver seat) 12
Inspection of the metallic fixing points 12

Final suggestions 13

Index 15

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

It is important that the following information be read, understood and always followed.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual:

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

The safety seat belt assemblies installed in the vehicle comply with the applicable motor vehicle safety standards at the time of vehicle manufacture. They are recommended for all persons measuring minimum 49" (1.24 m).

⚠ DANGER

A child restraint system should be used for each child measuring maximum 49" (1.24 m). Carefully read and follow the child restraint manufacture's instructions on installation and use of the child restraint system when in use. Make sure that the child remains in the restraint system at all times while the vehicle is in motion. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury or death.

2 Reporting safety defects

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying Prevost.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you and your dealer or Prevost.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hot line toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153), go to http://www.safecar.gov or write to Administrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Ave. SE., Washington, DC 20590.

To contact Prevost, in United States and Canada, call to Prevost Action System (PASS) at 1-800-463-7738, or visit https://www.prevostcar.com/contact-us/regional-service-managers to find a service manager. In Mexico, call to Volvo Action Service (VAS) at 01 800 90 94 900.

Using the seat safety belt is the single most important thing that can be done for protection in the event of a crash.

The seat must be adjusted before fastening or adjusting the belt. In the event of a collision, a correct position maximizes the effectiveness of the belt.

There are both Federal and State laws governing the use of seat safety belts. As laws differ from state to state, make yourself familiar with the current rules.

⚠ DANGER

Seat safety belts must be properly worn at all times while the vehicle is in motion. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury or death in the event of collision.

⚠ DANGER

Never wear the shoulder portion of the belt under your arm or behind your back. Improper use will increase your chances of injury during a collision

⚠ DANGER

To prevent possible injury, the belt must be positioned low over the pelvis, below the abdomen. If the belt is buckled too high, it will apply force to the abdomen, not the pelvic region, and could cause serious internal injuries during a sudden stop.

⚠ DANGER

Do NOT wear seat belt loosely. Do NOT use one belt for more than one person.

4 Fastening and adjusting the belt

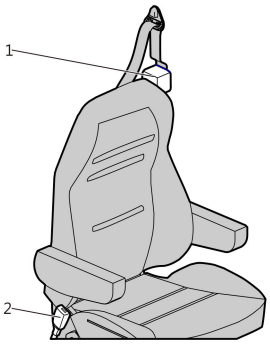
⚠ DANGER

Never try to adjust or fasten the seat belt in a different way than the described in this chapter. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or death in case of an accident.

⚠ DANGER

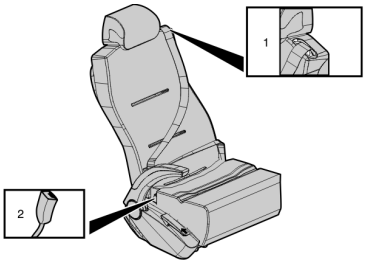
Fastening the driver's seat safety belt should only be performed when the vehicle is stationary, with the parking brake applied. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, causing serious personal injury or death.

To fasten the belt, pull the belt out from the retractor (1) and insert the latch into the buckle (2). The buckle clicks when the latch is engaged. In the driver seat, the retractor is mounted on the B-pillar, just behind the driver window. In the passenger seats, the retractors are mounted directly in the seats.



W0125791

Fastening the driver seat safety belt: retractor (1) and buckle (2).



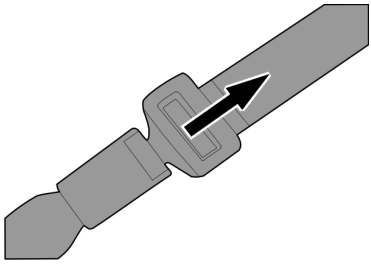
W0126187

Fastening the passenger seat safety belt: retractor (1) and buckle (2).

Always confirm that the latch is engaged: Pull it to try to take it out. If it stays in the buckle, it is engaged.

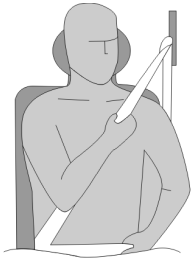
After confirming that the latch is engaged, adjust the belt so that it is snugged against the body. Adjust the slack by pulling on the top part of the belt until the lap part is snugly adjusted. The top part should be worn over the shoulder and crossing the chest, away from the neck. The lap portion should be worn low across the pelvic region (hip bone). After adjusting the belt, release it and let the retractor pull it in.

Note: The safety belt should not be twisted or blocked when properly fastened.



W0126197

Safety belt engagement confirmation.

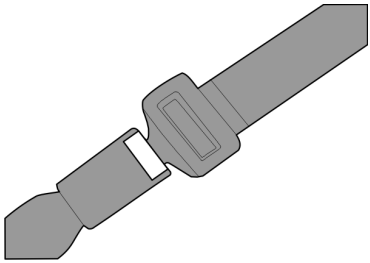


W0126287

Correct adjustment of the safety belt.

6 Fastening and adjusting the belt

To unfasten the belt, after the trip, use the push button on the buckle to release the latch.



W0126200

Unfastening the belt.

Driver seat safety belt reminder

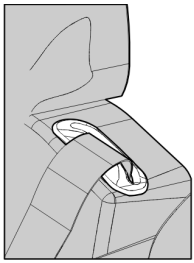
A reminder in the instrument cluster warns you if the driver seat safety belt is not fastened. This signal activates when you start the bus. When you move the bus, a sound signal activates if the safety belt is still not fastened. Stop the bus (if moving) and fasten the safety belt to deactivate both signals.

T0012001

Driver seat safety belt reminder.

The passenger seat safety belts are equipped with automatic/emergency locking retractor modes. The information below describes how the modes work:

- Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode: Locks and maintains a fixed belt length during use (the belt cannot be extended further). It is intended for use with a child seat. To activate this mode, pull the belt all the way out, insert the latch into the buckle and let the belt to retract to the desired length. Check that the belt is fully tightened and the retractor is locked. Unbuckle the belt and allow it to retract to fully deactivate the ALR mode.
- Emergency Locking retractor (ELR) mode: Allows the belt to move freely. The belt locks only when the vehicle decelerates or stops suddenly, or when the passenger moves abruptly. It is intended for the passenger who sits directly in the seat or when a booster seat is used. It will not secure a child seat. To activate this mode, pull out only the necessary length of belt (do not pull it all the way out) and follow the instructions given in chapter “Fastening and adjusting the belt”, page 4.



W0126203

Passenger seat safety belt retractor.

DANGER

When using a child seat, do not use the ELR mode. Failure to do so may lead to serious personal injury or death in case of an accident.

DANGER

When using a booster seat, do not use the ALR mode. Failure to do so may lead to serious personal injury or death in case of an accident.

8 Child restraint systems

Passengers under 49” (1.24 m) height must use a compliant (i.e. complies with applicable laws) child restraint system. To install the corresponding system, follow the child restraint system manufacturer’s instructions.

For a child seat, activate the automatic locking retractor (ALR) mode.

For a booster seat, use the emergency locking retractor (ELR) mode.

For more information about the locking retractor modes, see chapter “Locking retractor modes in the passenger seat safety belts”, page 7.

Note: If the ELR mode is to be used, follow the instructions given in chapter “Fastening and adjusting the belt”, page 4 to fasten and adjust the belt correctly.

⚠ DANGER

When using a child seat, do not use the ELR mode. Failure to do so may lead to serious personal injury or death in case of an accident.

⚠ DANGER

When using a booster seat, do not use the ALR mode. Failure to do so may lead to serious personal injury or death in case of an accident.

It is very important to inspect and maintain the safety belt systems. When inspecting, look for loose/damaged parts and check that the operation is correct. If there is any doubt about the effectiveness of any system, replace it completely.

In the passenger seat safety belt systems, check the belt straps (1), the buckles (2), the latches (3) and the retractors (4).

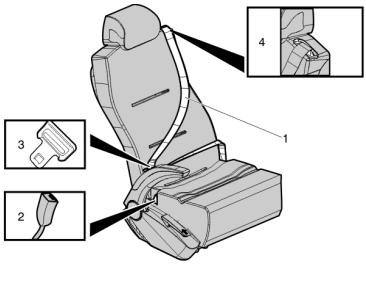
In the driver seat safety belt system, check the belt strap (1), the latch (2), the buckle (3), the anchor (4), the retractor (5) and the metallic fixing points.

⚠ DANGER

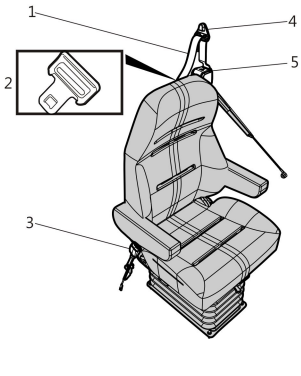
Any time that a vehicle is involved in an accident, the entire safety belt system must be replaced. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or death in case of an accident.

⚠ DANGER

The safety belt systems should be replaced at least every five years. A damaged safety belt, whether visibly damaged or not, could result in serious personal injury or death in case of an accident.



Inspection of the passenger seat safety belt systems.

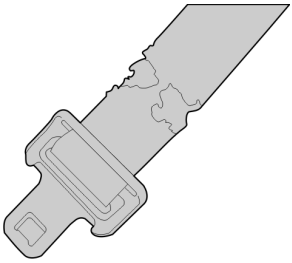


Inspection of the driver seat safety belt system.

10 Inspection of the seat safety belt systems

Inspection of the belt straps

Check the web at the buckle/latch area. The web must be closely examined to determine if there are any cuts, fraying or extreme wear. These conditions indicate the need for replacement of the safety belt system. Check the web in areas exposed to ultra-violet rays from the sun or extreme dust or dirt. If the original color of the web in these areas is extremely faded, its physical strength may be deteriorated. If this condition exists, replace the safety belt system.



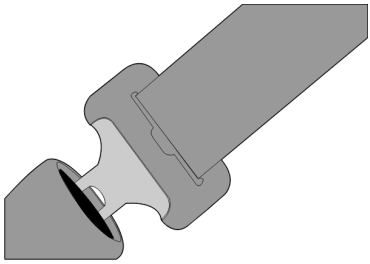
W0126288

⚠ DANGER

Do not bleach or re/dye the belt strap because it may cause a severe loss of strength. This loss of strength could lead the safety belt to break under stress. This in turn can result in serious personal injury or death in case of an accident.

Inspection of the buckles and latches

Check the buckle by inserting the latch and verifying a proper operation. Determine if the latch plate is worn or deformed. Check the buckle and latch casing for cracks or breakage.

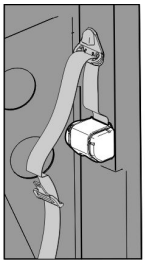


W0126289

Inspection of the retractors

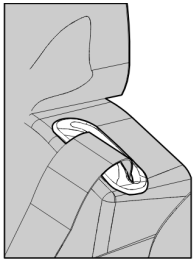
The retractor is the heart of the safety belt system and can be damaged if abused, even unintentionally. Check the retractor operation to ensure that it is not locked and that it rolls and unrolls the belt strap properly.

In the driver seat, the retractor is mounted on the B-pillar, just behind the driver window. In the passenger seats, the retractors are mounted directly in the seats.



W0126241

Driver seat safety belt retractor.



W0126203

Passenger seat safety belt retractor.

12 Inspection of the seat safety belt systems

Inspection of the anchor (driver seat)

Check that the anchor is well fixed and that it is not broken or cracked.

W0126244

Inspection of the metallic fixing points

All metallic fixing points for the seat safety belt systems must be evaluated for corrosion. Also check that the attachments of the systems are well tightened.

The high mileage associated with buses and the potential exposure of safety belts to severe environmental conditions make it crucial to inspect the seat belt systems regularly. It is recommended that the system be inspected every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or more often if the vehicle is exposed to severe conditions. Any safety belt system that shows cuts, fraying, extreme or unusual wear, significant discolorations due to ultra-violet ray exposure, dusty-dirty conditions, abrasion to the safety belt webbing or damage to the buckle, latch plate, retractor, hardware or any other obvious problem should be replaced immediately, regardless of the mileage.

Once the replacement of the safety belt has been determined necessary, be certain that it is replaced only with a Volvo original replacement safety belt. Contact your authorized Volvo service supplier or, for Prevost supported vehicles, the Prevost service center/supplier for replacement. Replace the safety belt only with exactly the same design that the vehicle was originally equipped with. If the inspection indicates that any other part of the safety belt system requires replacement, the entire safety belt system must be replaced. It is very important that all components are mounted back in the same positions as the original components that were removed. This will maintain the design integrity of the mounting points for the safety belt assembly.

A

Adjusting the belt 4
Anchor (driver seat), inspection 12
Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) mode 7

B

Belt straps, inspection 10
Buckles, inspection 10

C

Child restraint systems 8

D

Driver seat safety belt reminder 6

E

Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) mode 7
Engagement confirmation 5

F

Fastening and adjusting the belt 4–6
Fastening the belt 4
Final suggestions 13

I

Inspection of the seat safety belt systems 9–12
Introduction 1

L

Latches, inspection 10
Locking retractor modes 7
Locking retractor modes in the passenger seat safety belts 7

R

Reporting safety defects 2
Retractors, inspection 11

S

Safety defects, reporting 2
Safety Information 5

U

Using the seat safety belt 3

Volvo Bus Corporation

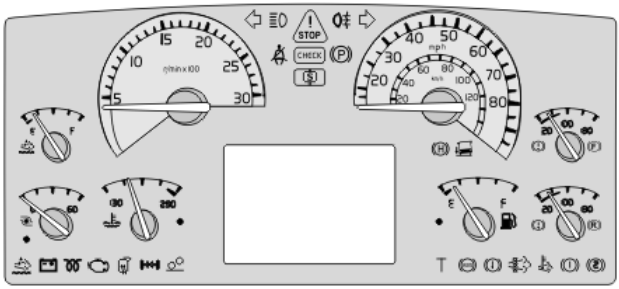
Göteborg, Sweden

89316576 English August 2017

Operating Instructions

Driver information display

IC08



W3079694

VOLVO

Foreword

The following levels of observations, cautions and warnings are used in this Service Documentation:

Danger: Indicates an unsafe practice where serious personal injury or death could occur.

Warning: Indicates an unsafe practice where personal injury or severe damage to the product could occur.

Caution: Indicates an unsafe practice where damage to the product could occur.

Note: Indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order to have the vehicle or component function in the manner intended.

This operation instruction contains information concerning operation and functions of driver information display (**IC08**) for the *3rd generation* of the multiplex electrical system **BEA-3** (*Bus Electrical Architecture, version 3*) mounted on Volvo coaches.

This manual contains general information about driver information display (**IC08**). In case of the coach is not equipped with all functions described in this manual, it is due to the custom adaptation or different equipment levels.

The information in this operating instructions it applying to buses.

Technical data, construction information, descriptions and illustrations in this operating instructions, that were current when the book was published, can have been changed. The Volvo Company reserves the right to make changes without prior notice.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89376935

©2018 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Foreword

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Prevost should be informed immediately if you believe that the vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death.
Contact NHTSA by calling the Auto Safety Hotline at 1 (888) 327-4236, by writing to NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590, by TTY at 1 (800) 424-9153, or visit their website at: *www.nhtsa.dot.gov*

Note: Illustrations in this operating instructions are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

Please keep this operating instructions in the vehicle at all times.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89376935

©2018 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Foreword

Privacy Notice for Vehicle Data

When you drive a truck, bus or coach sold or produced by companies belonging to the Volvo Group, the vehicle generates data that these companies may retrieve and process. Such data may include personal data relating to you as a driver.

The data are processed by the Volvo Group to develop and enhance our companies' products and services. The Volvo Group companies may process any personal data for the purposes as a data controller under the EU General Data Protection Regulation. The legal ground for processing is based on the Volvo Group companies' legitimate interests or, in some cases, the need to comply with legislation. We would like you to be fully informed about how the Volvo Group companies may process the data, as well as your rights. We recognize the individual's rights in relation to data processing activities, and take those rights seriously. We shall always be transparent about what data are collected, how they are utilized, with whom they are shared, and whom to contact in case of any concerns.

If you would like to know more about the kind of personal data the Volvo Group companies process, please visit the Volvo Group web site – www.volvogroup.com/privacy.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89376935

©2018 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Introduction 1
Driver's responsibility 1

General 2
Display and Stalk Switch Control Lever 2
Getting Started 3
Navigating in the DID, (Display at start) 4

Vehicle Messages and Symbols 5
General Information on Vehicle Messages 5
Status Symbols 13

Use the Display Menus 14
General Information on Menus 14
Scroll Between the Menus 14
Changing Settings 15

Menu Overview 18
Main Menus and Sub-menus 18

Menu Gauge 20
Gear Engaged 20
Temperature Outside/Inside 20
Temperature Engine Oil 20
Temperature oil, gearbox/retarder 21
Voltmeter 22
Pressure, Primary Tank 22
Engine Oil Pressure 22
AdBlue tank, level 23
Brake Pressure, 3rd Circuit 23

Menu Fuel Data 24
Fuel Used 24
Average fuel consumption 25
Stage Information 25
Remaining Fuel 25

Menu Climate 26
Climate System/Pause Heating, Passenger 26
Temperature/Roof Fan, Passenger 26
Roof Heat/Floor Fan, Passenger 27
Extra Heat, Passenger 27
Floor Fan, Driver 27

Menu Time/Distance 28
Clock and Date 28
Alarm Clock 29

Trip Meter....30
Average Speed....30
Estimated Time of Arrival....31
Driving and rest time....31

Regeneration menu....32
Regeneration....32
Aftertreatment (ATS)....33
Aftertreatment (ATS) Enable/Disable....33
System Conditions....34

Menu Display....35
Black Panel....35
Favorite Display....35
Backlight....35
Favorite Display, Set....36
Night/Day....37

Menu Vehicle Messages....38
Vehicle Messages....38
Language....39
Units....39
Time/Date....40
Display light....41
Change Password (If Password is Required)....42

Menu Vehicle Settings....43
Traction Control....43
Lowering protection....43
Fleet Limits (Password is Required)....44
Speed Limit....45
Fuel Target....46
Fleet ID (Password Required)....47
Day Running Lights....47

Menu Diagnosis....48
Fault Diagnostics....48
Instrument Cluster Self Test....50
Part Number....52
Status test....52
Calibration number....52

Menu Vehicle Data....53
Oil Level....53
Coolant Level....53
Lining Wear Prediction....53

Menu Data Log 54
Vehicle ID 54
Total Data 54
Trip Data 55
Reset Trip Data (Password Required) 55

Menu Password 56
Enter Password 56

Index 57

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this manual.

⚠ DANGER

Danger indicates an unsafe practice that could result in serious personal injury or death. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning indicates an unsafe practice that could result in personal injury. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution indicates an unsafe practice that could result in damage to the product. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order for the vehicle or component to function in the manner intended.

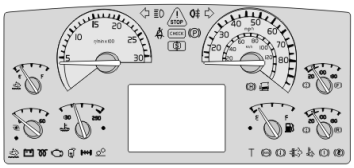
This booklet is intended to help the driver about how to operate properly the driver information display (**IC08**; *"Instrument Cluster 8 gauges"*).

Driver's responsibility

- As the driver, you are responsible for the safety and comfort of the passengers during the journey. Therefore, do not drive the bus before you have read this driver's manual. You must be familiar with all the indicators and warning lights and know what to do if something unexpected happens.
- It is also your responsibility to ensure that all the safety equipment of the bus is in place. Therefore check regularly the working order of seat belts, emergency door and window opening, door sensitive edges, fire extinguishers and first aid equipment.
- As the driver of the vehicle, you should be aware of the vehicle weight and loading capacity.
  See instructions on warning stickers, the vehicle registration book and on the identification plate.
- Follow the recommended service and maintenance programme to maintain the bus's condition and safety.
- It is also your responsibility to ensure that all bus components working in order.

Display and Stalk Switch Control Lever

The Driver Information Display (DID) is located in the middle of the instrument cluster. The display shows vehicle messages and information about the bus, and from it you can control some of the bus functions.



W3079694

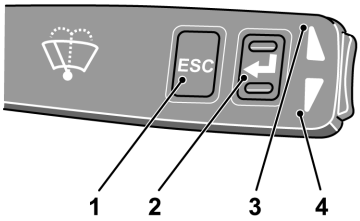
The display is controlled via the stalk switch control lever to the right of the steering wheel. The control lever has four buttons:

1 **ESC:** Abort or return to previous menu.

2 **SELECT:** Select or confirm marked choice.

3 **▲:** To Scroll the cursor up or set a symbol.

4 **▼:** Scroll the cursor down or set a symbol.

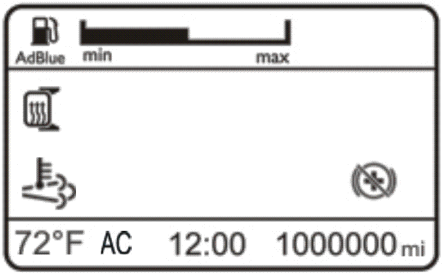


T0014701

Getting Started

Display Fields

The display is divided into three fields:



W0098134

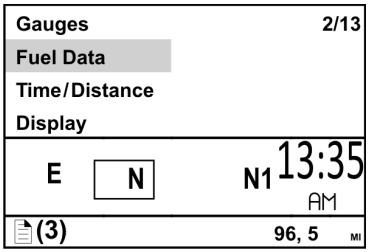
1 **Menu and message field (Upper section)**
Menus, stop, warning and information messages are shown.

2 **Favorite display (Middle section)**
Information is shown, which the driver has selected in the left area, using the “Favorite Display” menu. For buses with automatic transmissions, the selected gear is shown.

Note: Some variants do not have an adaptable Favorite Display.

3 **Status line (Lower section)**
To the left, current status symbols are shown. At the center the clock is shown, to the right; the odometer is shown.

Navigating in the DID, (Display at start)



W3079748

The DID lights up when the starter key is turned. If there are any vehicles messages, they will be shown in the top field. The most important message is shown first. The message order number is shown in the top right corner. For example, 2/13 indicates that the message now being displayed is the second of thirteen active messages. For more information on messages see “General Information on Vehicle Messages”, page 5.

Scroll between the various vehicle messages using the ▲ and ▼ button. Take suitable actions and then acknowledge them with **ESC**.

When the vehicle messages have been acknowledge the menus are shown. To navigate between the menus:

1 ▲/▼ Scroll the cursor between the menus, which are then marked. The hierarchical order for menus is shown in the top right corner (for example 2/13).

2 Pressing **SELECT** confirms the choice.

3 Pressing **ESC** exits the chosen menu. Repeated pressing on **ESC** moves the cursor back to the main menus.

For more information on menus, see “General Information on Vehicle Messages”, page 5.

General Information on Vehicle Messages

There are three lamps above the display:

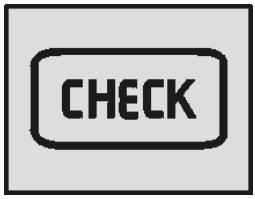
- Lamp for stop messages
- Lamp for warning messages
- Lamp for stop at the next bus stop.

When there is a fault in the bus or an incident occurs which requires attention, one of these three lamps is lit. Associated messages and symbols are shown in the Driver Information Display (DID) at the same time. Several messages may be active at the same time. The message with the highest priority is shown first in the display.
Previously shown messages can be retrieved in the DID; For more information see “Vehicle Messages”, page 38.
For more detailed technical information about vehicle messages, see “Fault Diagnostics”, page 48.

Note: For explanation of the symbols used in vehicle messages, see the driver's handbook.

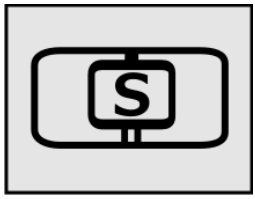
T3014364

Stop lamp.



T3014365

Check lamp.



W3079585

Stop at the next bus stop lamp.

Stop Messages

When the Stop telltale lights, the vehicle must be stopped immediately and the engine switched off.

A buzzer sounds at the same time as a stop message is displayed. The buzzer and stop message can be acknowledged with **ESC,** but is repeated after 10 seconds. The symbol is lit continuously.

T3014364

WARNING

If the Stop telltale lights while driving, stop the bus immediately and turn off the engine. Continuing to drive may severely endanger the vehicle, the driver and/or passengers.

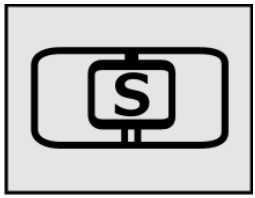
Warning Messages

If this lamp lights, the vehicle must be taken to a workshop for repair as soon as possible. There is no immediate danger of the vehicle breaking down, and under normal circumstances it should be possible to complete the journey. This lamp is also used to draw the driver's attention to problems other than vehicle failures, e.g. as a warning in the case of an open luggage compartment hatch.

T3014365

Acknowledge the message with **ESC.** If the fault is still active, it will be shown again next time the starter key is turned to the starting position.

Stop at the Next Bus Stop Messages



W3079585

Simultaneously with this lamp lighting up, a new message is shown on the display. The fact that this lamp lights up does not mean that there is something wrong with the vehicle. This lamp may for example illuminate to draw the driver's attention to low fuel level.

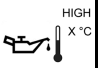
Acknowledge the message with **ESC** key. If the information message is still activate, it will be shown again next time the starter key is turned to the starting position.

8 Vehicle Messages and Symbols

Symbols and messages in the driver display

Symbols and messages are displayed in combination with stop or warning lamps coming on. Certain messages can have either a yellow or red lamp depending on level, pressure, temperature, etc. Several messages may be active at one time. The message with the highest priority is displayed first. Step through the messages with△ and ▽ on the display stalk.
Some messages are displayed without a symbol.

The symbols and their meaning are presented below:

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
	• High temperature, coolant, engine. • High temperature, coolant, retarder.		Sensor error, check level manually.
	Low level, hydraulic fluid for cooling fan.		• Low level, hydraulic fluid. • Low level, hydraulic fluid for power steering.
	High oil pressure, engine.		Low oil level, engine. See also, “Oil Level”, page 53 (*Vehicle data menu*).
	High temperature, engine oil. See also, “Temperature Engine Oil”, page 20 (*Meter menu*).		Temperature too high, engine oil.
	Fault in engine pre-heating.		Engine fault.
	Clogged air filter (*first check that the net in the air inlet is not blocked*).		Clogged fuel filter.
	Too cold for engine brake (VEB, *Volvo Engine Brake*).		Fire alarm.

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
	Idling engine turned OFF.		Turbo pressure, no data.
	Water in fuel. (*drain at next stop*).		Low fuel level. See also, “Remaining Fuel”, page 25 (*Fuel data menu*).
	Fault in fuel level sensor.		• Low level, AdBlue tank. Engine torque is reduced if AdBlue not topped up. See also, “AdBlue tank, level”, page 23 (*Meter menu*). • Empty AdBlue tank. Speed limited if AdBlue not topped up. • Level in AdBlue tank, no data.
	• Bad AdBlue quality. Engine torque reduced and speed limited. • Incorrect AdBlue consumption. Engine torque reduced.		Depress the brake pedal to check oil pressure, hydraulic turntable (*articulated bus only*).
	Low air pressure to gearbox.		Low level, transmission fluid.
	Low oil pressure, gearbox.		High temperature, transmission fluid. See also, “Temperature oil, gearbox/retarder”, page 21 (*Meter menu*).
	Temperature too high, transmission fluid.		Gear selector not in neutral. (*engine will not start*).
	High temperature, clutch.		High oil temperature, hydraulic retarder. See also, “Temperature oil, gearbox/retarder”, page 21 (*Meter menu*).
	High temperature, brakes.		Brake linings, wear warning.

10 Vehicle Messages and Symbols

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
	• Poor braking. • Fault in braking system. • Data link for EBS broken.		No data from 1st brake circuit.
	No data from 2nd brake circuit.		• Low pressure on 3rd brake circuit. • No data from 3rd brake circuit. See also, “Brake Pressure, 3rd Circuit”, page 23 (*Meter menu*).
	• Low parking brake pressure. • No data from parking brake.		Auxiliary brake disengaged.
	Fault in compressor.		Fault in compressor/air drier.
	Low pressure in air suspension system.		• Level control active (*raising/lowering*). • Low wet tank pressure (*value given in bar*). See also, “Pressure, Primary Tank”, page 22 (*Meter menu*).
	Fault in air suspension system.		Pinch guard active. See also, “Lowering protection”, page 43 (*Vehicle settings menu*).
	Bus fully lowered.		Vehicle kneeling.
	TCS (*Traction Control System*) enabled.		“TCS” temporarily disengaged. See also, “Traction Control”, page 43 (*Vehicle settings menu*).
	[1] “ESP” (*Electronic Stability Program*) enabled.		“ESP” disabled.

1 Telltale lit on instrument cluster when ESP system malfunction is detected.

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
	"ESP" requires calibrating.		Malfunction detected on "ESP" system.
	Luggage hatch open.		Door open.
	Faulty door.		Engine cover open.
	Faulty headlamp.		Faulty brake light.
	Faulty direction indicator.		Overheating, instrument.
	Battery voltage too high. See also, "Voltmeter", page 22 (*Meter menu*).		Low level, washer fluid.
	Hill start assist enabled.		Air conditioning not working.
	One or more lamps not lighting up.	**R**	Reverse gear selected.
	Graph sheet compartment open or sheet for driver 1 missing. (*analogue tachograph*).		Speeding.
	• High ash level. • Regeneration required.		Stop at next bus stop.

12 Vehicle Messages and Symbols

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
	Toilet fluid level.		Freezing conditions — Outdoor.
	Supply voltage below 24 V.		Auxiliary pressure no data.
	MCM programming switch activated.		High voltage / Starter Batteries.
	Accelerator pedal disengaged.		

Status Symbols

Status symbols are shown in the lowest row of the display.

Symbol	Meaning	Symbol	Meaning
	Pre-Heat active.		Regeneration active.
	Alarm clock activated.		Regeneration inactive.
	Message active.		Auxiliary brake position 0.
MI	Odometer, miles.		AdBlue level.
KM	Odometer, kilometers.		Low fuel level.
CC	Cruise control active.	WC	WC, engaged.
(A)	Auxiliary brake position A.	AC	Climate control active.
(1)	Auxiliary brake position 1.	(B)	Auxiliary brake position B.
(2)	Auxiliary brake position 2.		Auxiliary brake in operation.
(3)	Auxiliary brake position 3.		

14 Use the Display Menus

General Information on Menus

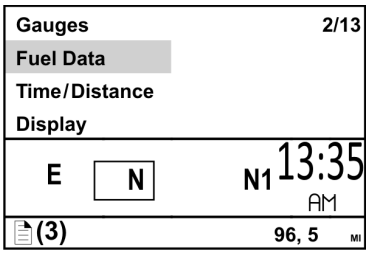
Using the menus you can see the status and control some of the bus functions. For reasons of safety, not all menus are available when driving. To see certain menus and to adjust certain settings, the bus must be stationary. A password is required for some menus.

Scroll Between the Menus

1 Scroll the cursor between menus using ▲ and ▼. The order number of the marked menu is shown in the top right corner. 2/13 indicates that there are 13 menus and that the current menu is number 2.

2 Go from a menu to a sub-menu using **SELECT**

3 Exit a sub-menu using **ESC**



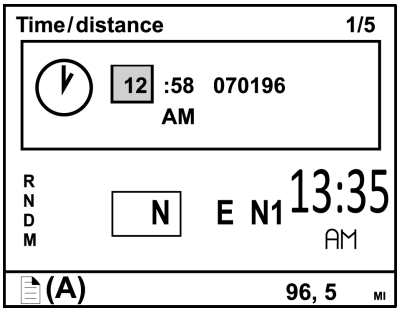
W3079748

Changing Settings

1 Use ▲/▼ to change set values (for example, number of hours).

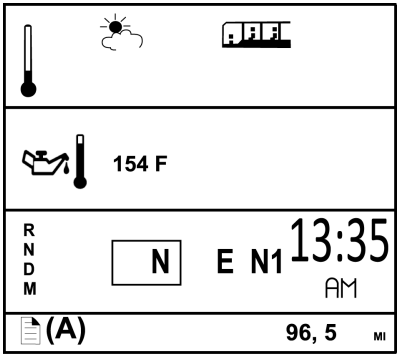
2 Pressing **SELECT** confirms the choice.

3 Use **ESC** to Scroll the cursor to the previous digit or abort the setting process.



T0031652

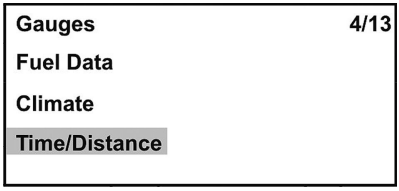
Example: Change a Setting
The Favorite Display is shown. To set the alarm clock to go off at 02:33. Proceed as follows:



T0031653

1

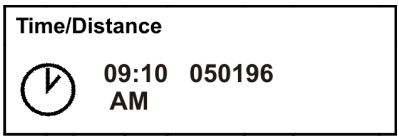
Go to the menus using **SELECT** Place the cursor on Time/Distance using ▲ and ▼.



T0031654

2

Press **SELECT** The current time and date are shown.



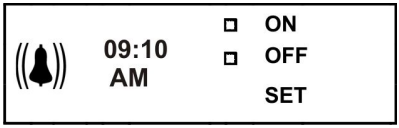
T8056484

3

Scroll to the alarm clock using and ▲ and ▼.

4

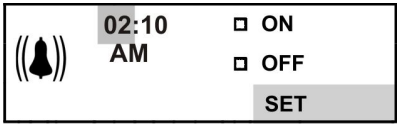
Press **SELECT** Scroll down to **SET** using ▲ and ▼.



T8056483

5

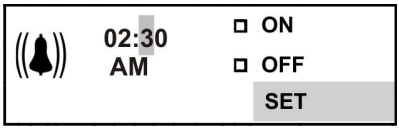
Press **SELECT** The hours are marked. Scroll to the required hour using ▲ and ▼.



T8056482

6

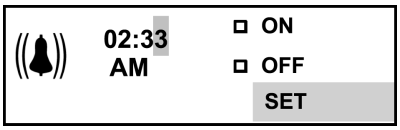
Press **SELECT** The first digit for minutes is marked. Scroll to the required digit using ▲ and ▼.



T8056481

7

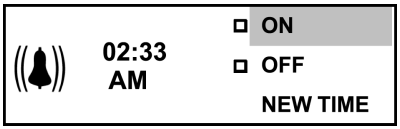
Press **SELECT** The second digit for minutes is marked. Scroll to the required digit using ▲ and ▼.



T0031660

8

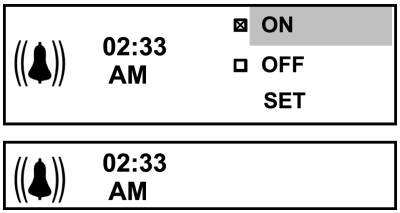
Press **SELECT** "ON" is marked.



T0031661

9

Press **SELECT** A cross is placed in the box in front of "ON." The symbol for activated alarm clock is shown in the status bar. The alarm clock setting is then automatically displayed.



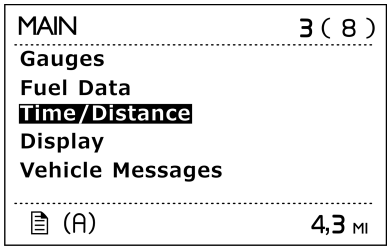
T0031662

10

Return to Favorite Display using ESC. The symbol for activated alarm clock is shown in the status bar.

To deactivate the alarm clock:

- Go into menu "Time/Distance" using **SELECT**
- Scroll to the alarm clock using ▲ and ▼.
- Press **SELECT.**
- Scroll to "OFF" with ▲ and ▼.
- Press **SELECT.**



W3079745

Main Menus and Sub-menus

The overview shows how the menus are structured.

- **Gauges**

Gear engaged

Temperature outside/inside

Temperature, engine oil

Voltmeter

Pressure, primary tank

Oil Pressure

Brake pressure, 3rd circuit

- **Fuel Data**

Average fuel consumption

Stage information

Remaining fuel

- **Climate**

Climate/Pause heating, passenger

Temperature/Roof Fan, passenger

Roof Heat/Floor Fan, passenger

Extra Heat, passenger

Floor Fan, driver

Note: Not all buses have all the menus that are shown in the overview.

- **Time/Distance**

Clock and Date

Alarm clock

Trip meter

Average speed

Estimated time of arrival

- **Display**

Black Panel

Backlight

Favorite Display, setting

Night/Day

- **Vehicle Messages**
- **Display Settings**

Favorite display set

Language

Clock/Date

Units

Time/Date

Display light

Change password

- **Aftertreatment System (ATS)**

Enable / Disable ATS

Regeneration request

System conditions

Soot/Ash level

- **Vehicle Settings**

Traction Control

Fleet limits

Fleet ID

Day Running Light

- **Diagnosis**

Fault diagnosis

Cluster self test

Part number

- **Vehicle Data**

Oil level

Lining wear prediction

- **Data Log**

Vehicle ID

Total data

Trip Data

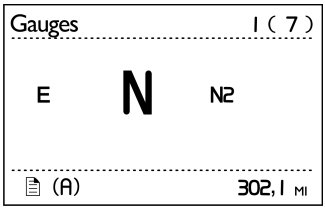
Reset trip data

- **Password**

Enter password

Gear Engaged

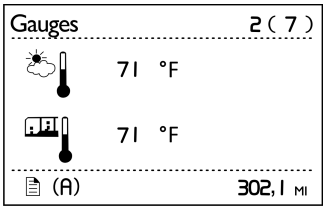
(This gauge is extra equipment. Only buses equipped with an I-shift transmission.) Information about the engaged gear, gear lever position, available gears and such like. For further information, see separate driver instructions for "I-shift".



W3079551

Temperature Outside/Inside

(This gauge is extra equipment).
Outside temperature shown above. Bus inside temperature shown at the bottom.



W3079552

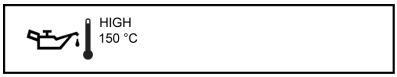
Temperature Engine Oil

Temperature of the engine oil.

Warning for high engine oil temperature.

T0031666

Engine oil temperature.



T0088897

High engine oil temperature.

Temperature oil, gearbox/retarder

(The gauge is extra equipment.)

For gearboxes with I-shift, the gearbox temperature is shown. For gearboxes manufactured by ZF or Voith the retarder temperature is shown.

Note: Temperatures below 45° C are not shown.

- Temperature of transmission fluid.
- Warning for high transmission fluid temperature.
- Temperature of retarder oil.
- Warning for high retarder oil temperature.

Temperature transmission fluid.

High transmission oil temperature.

Retarder oil temperature.

High retarder oil temperature.

22 Menu Gauge

Voltmeter

Battery voltage.
If the engine is running and the voltage drops below 20 V or over 31 V, a fault messages are displayed together with the information/warning symbol.

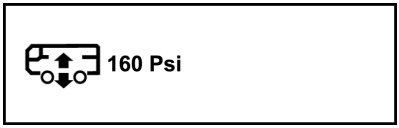
T0031667

Battery tension in volts.

Warning battery voltage too high.

Pressure, Primary Tank

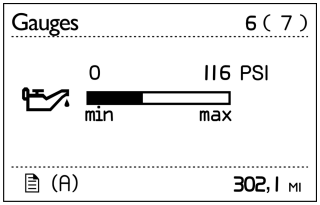
If the pressure in the primary tank drops **below 100 PSI (7 bar)**, a fault message is displayed together with the information/warning symbol.



T0031668

Engine Oil Pressure

If the pressure drops **below 25 PSI (1.7 bar)** a fault message is displayed together with the stop symbol and red light.

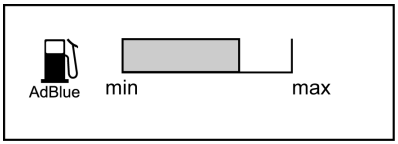


W3079554

AdBlue tank, level

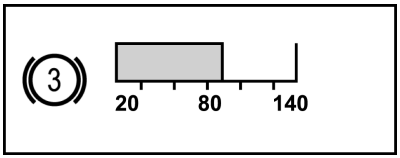
Shows the amount of AdBlue in the tank.

The “Low level, AdBlue tank” symbol and a message are shown on the display when only 20% of the AdBlue solution is remaining.



Brake Pressure, 3rd Circuit

(only on buses with min. three axles).
If the pressure drops **below 80 PSI (5.5 bar)** a fault message is displayed together with the stop symbol and red light.



T0031669

24 Menu Fuel Data

Fuel Used

For setting the units, see “Units”, page 39.

1 **Average fuel consumption:**
The value is presented as a figure and an arrow pointing down. For a time after resetting the display "– — —" is shown while average fuel consumption is being calculated.

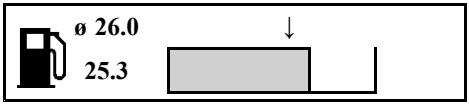
2 **Instantaneous fuel consumption:**
The value is presented numerically.

3 **Target fuel consumption:**
The value is presented with the symbol ⊥ below the bar. For information on setting this value, see “Fuel Target”, page 46.

Note: At idle, no bar is shown and the fuel consumption is displayed in gallons/hr (alternatively liter/hr).

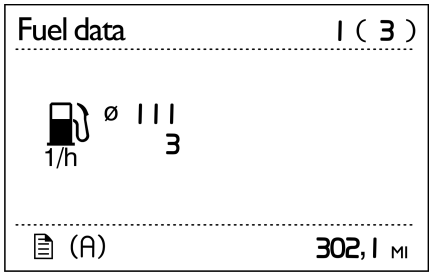
Resetting, fuel consumption

Press **SELECT.** To reset all fuel data, press SELECT for 1 second. Leg data is also reset.



Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption in gallons/hr (alternatively liter/hr)



W3079553

Stage Information

The amount of fuel consumed since the last reset.

W3079993

Resetting, leg data

Press **SELECT** To reset leg data, hold **SELECT** depressed for 1 second.

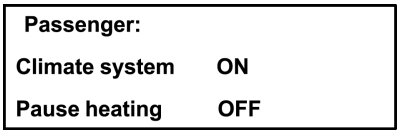
Remaining Fuel

- The first value shows the distance that can be driven before the tank is empty with current fuel consumption.
- The second value shows the amount of fuel currently in the tank.

T0031671

Climate System/Pause Heating, Passenger

Shows whether the passenger climate system or pause heating is switched on or off. Press **SELECT** once to come to "Climate system". Press **SELECT** twice to come to "Pause heating". Activate/deactivate the respective unit using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).



T0031672

Temperature/Roof Fan, Passenger

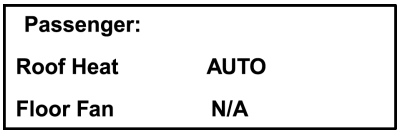
Shows the required temperature level or roof fan speed in the passenger compartment.

Press **SELECT** once to come to "Temperature". Press **SELECT** twice to come to "Roof Fan". Set the required temperature (between 59 and 82° F [15 and 28° C]) using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼). Set the required roof fan speed (manually between -5 and +5, alt. automatic) using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

T0031673

Roof Heat/Floor Fan, Passenger

Shows the selected level for roof heat or status for floor fan in the passenger compartment. Press **SELECT** once to come to "Roof Heat". Press **SELECT** twice to come to "Floor Fan". Set the required level for Roof Heat (manually between -5 and +5, alt. automatic) using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼). Activate/deactivate the floor fan (switched off, alt. automatic) using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼



T0031684

Extra Heat, Passenger

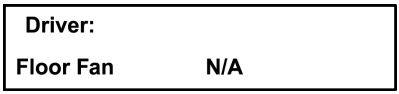
Shows whether the extra heating in the passenger compartment is switched on or off. Activate/deactivate the extra heat using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

T0031685

Floor Fan, Driver

Shows whether the floor fan in the driver compartment is in automatic position or switched off.

Activate/deactivate the floor fan using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).



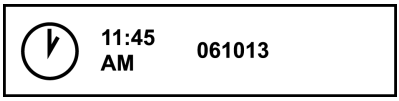
T0031686

Clock and Date

Shows current time and date. For setting the formats, 12 hr alt. 24 hr and date, see “Time/Date”, page 40.

Setting, time and date

Press **SELECT.** Set the time and date using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼). If the starter key is in stop position and it takes more than 30 seconds between button depressions, the setting process is aborted.



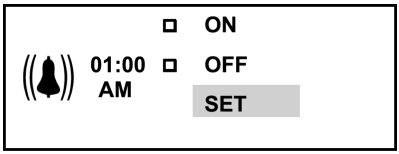
T0031687

Note: The menu "Time and date" is available even when the starter key is in the stop position. The menu is activated by pressing any of the buttons on the control unit for at least 1 second. The menu remains active for 30 seconds after the last depression.

Alarm Clock

Alarm clock, setting

Press "SELECT". Set the alarm time using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼). Finish off by selecting "ON". The symbol for the alarm is shown on the status bar to indicate that the alarm clock is active.

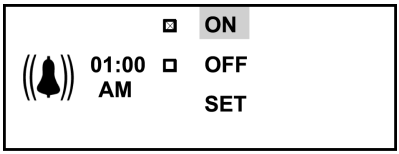


T0031688

Note: The alarm clock cannot be set while driving. If the starter key is in stop position and it takes more than 30 seconds between button depressions, the setting process is aborted. The menu "Alarm clock" is available even when the starter key is in stop position. The menu is activated by pressing any of the buttons on the control unit for at least 1 second.

Activate alarm clock

Here the alarm clock can be activated without changing the alarm time. Activate the alarm using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲and ▼). When the clock has been activated, the symbol for activated alarm clock is shown on the display status bar.



T0031689

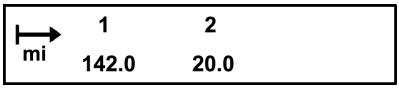
Switch Off the alarm clock

When the alarm clock goes off, the word "ALARM" lights up, the current time is displayed and a warning signal is sounded. The alarm shuts off after 60 seconds or if **ESC** is depressed.

Trip Meter

Two independent distances can be saved, for leg 1 and leg 2.

Note: The trip values must be reset before each measurement.



T0031690

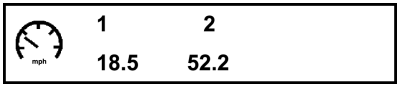
Reset Trip Meter

Press "SELECT". Reset the trip meters 1 and 2 respectively using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

Average Speed

The average speed is calculated as the distance driven divided by the time the engine has been running (since latest reset). Two different average speeds can be measured, average speed **1** and **2**.

Note: The values must be reset before each measurement.



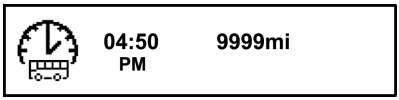
T0031691

Reset Average Speed

Press "SELECT". Reset average speeds 1 and 2 respectively using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

Estimated Time of Arrival

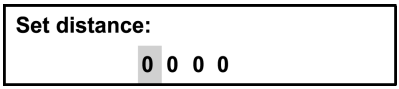
The estimated time of arrival is calculated as the remaining distance divided by the vehicle's average speed.



T0031692

Set Distance

Press "SELECT". Set the remaining distance in Km (alt. miles) using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).



T0031693

Driving and rest time

Information about driving and resting times is obtained from the digital tachograph.

The symbol is at the **far left** and the information under it varies depending on the selected activity in the digital tachograph.

The symbol in the **centre** indicates pause and rest time.

The symbol to the **right** indicates driving time.

32 Regeneration menu

Regeneration

An automatic regeneration is carried out on particles collected in the Diesel Particle Filter (DPF). This prevents large amounts of soot collecting in the filter. A clogged filter can mean the permitted NOx emissions will not be met.

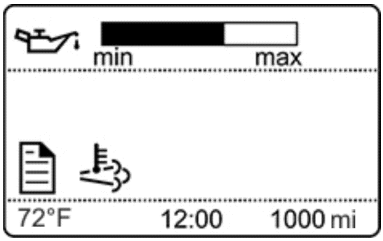
Parameters for enabling regeneration are level of soot in the particle filter and the amount of fuel consumed.

There are two categories of regeneration.
Moving regeneration that is carried out while driving.
Parked regeneration that is enable manually while the vehicle is stationary.

A status symbol, high exhaust temperature, is displayed while regeneration is in progress. The symbol disappears when the process is complete.

Note: There are no warning or indicator lamps when moving regeneration is enabled.

For more information, see driver instruction “Aftertrteatment, SCR.”.

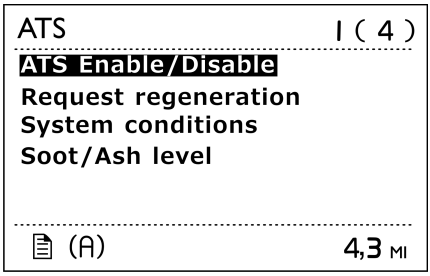


Driver’s display.

Aftertreatment (ATS)

For additional information about the aftertreatment system (ATS), refer to Exhaust Aftertreatment System manual.

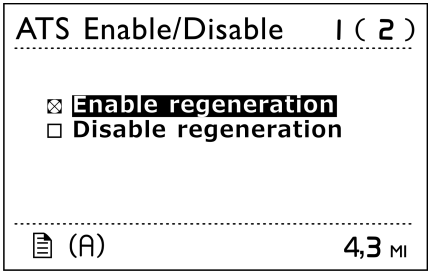
The aftertreatment menu allows the operator to request a parked regeneration, check the status of the aftertreatment system, and cancel a regeneration.



W3079746

Aftertreatment (ATS) Enable/Disable

To temporarily disable automatic regeneration, scroll to the Aftertreatment menu, select "ATS Enable/Disable". When automatic regeneration is disabled, the letters ATS with X through them will be displayed in the DID. Enable regeneration by scrolling to the Aftertreatment menu, selecting "ATS Enable/Disable" and selecting "Enable REGEN".

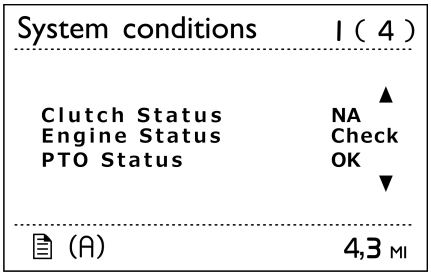


W3079740

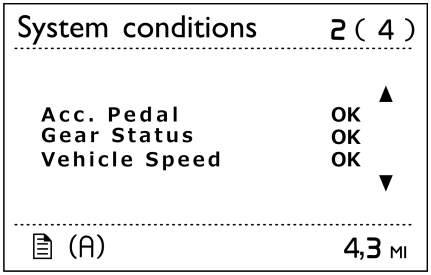
34 Regeneration menu

System Conditions

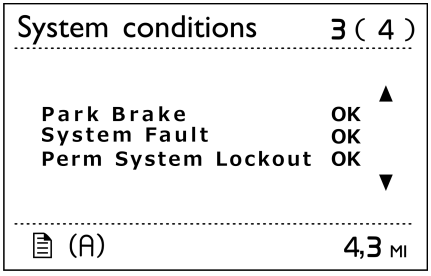
The system conditions menus are used to help determine why a parked regeneration failed.



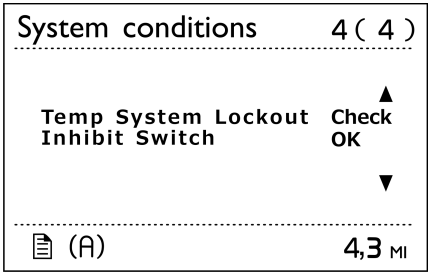
W3079741



W3079742



W3079743



W3079744

Black Panel

When "Black panel" is activated, only the speedometer, tachometer (except the colored field) and the lowest line of the display light up. The following events light the backlighting:

- a message is activated
- a button is depressed
- the engine speed enters the red field on
- the tachometer

Favorite Display

This function is used to activate " Favorite Display".

Backlight

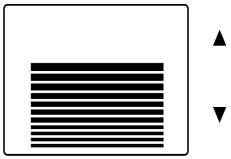
This menu can be used to alter the display lighting with respect to the lighting of the other instruments.

Set Backlight

1 Increase or decrease the backlight in the display using ▲/▼.

2 Confirm with **SELECT**.

3 **ESC** aborts the setting process.



W3079738

Favorite Display, Set

Select the gauges and functions to show in "Favorite Display".

No display	
Gear engaged	
Outside temperature	
Temperature, engine oil	
Fuel used	
Stage information	
Remaining fuel	
Trip meter	
Pressure, primary tank	
Pressure, 3rd brake circuit	
Average speed	
Estimated time of arrival	

W0098323

Select Favorite Display

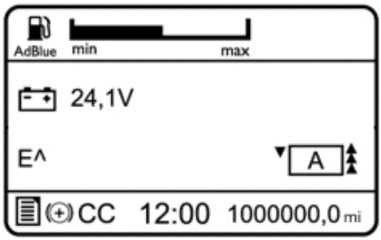
To Select Favorite Display:

1 Press **SELECT**.

2 Press **SELECT** once more and the upper field becomes active. Select gauge or function using ▲ and ▼. Confirm with **SELECT** when the desired gauge or function is shown.

3 Press **SELECT** once more to activate the next field. Select gauge or function using ▲ and ▼. Confirm with **SELECT** when the desired gauge or function is shown.

4 Press **SELECT** or **ESC** until all the fields are active and the clock is shown.



Night/Day

This function is used to switch between white text on a black background and black text on a white background.

Press **Select** to switch between alternatives.

Vehicle Messages

If a message appears on the display, confirm to be aware by pushing ESC key, then a symbol will appear on the status bar. Enter to this menu to view the messages confirmed and not corrected.

Switch between messages using ▲ and ▼.

Press **ESC** to return to the main menu.

If a confirmed message is still active it will appear as unconfirmed message the next time the starter key will set in ON position. The message symbol will stay as long as there are unconfirmed messages.

Language

Select the desired language using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

Units

Distance

Select to show distances in miles or kilometers using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

Fuel Consumption

Select, using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼), to show fuel consumption in:

- L/100 Km
- Km/L
- mpg (*IMP gallons*).
- mpg (*US gallons*).

Temperature

Select, using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼), to show temperatures in Fahrenheit (F) or Celsius (C).

Time/Date

Time

Set the time format (AM/PM or 24:00) using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

Date Display

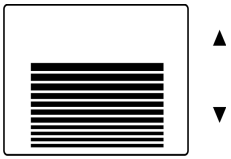
Select, using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼), from the various date formats.

- year, month, day (**yymmdd**).
- day, month, year (**ddmmyy**).
- month, day, year (**mmddyy**).

Display light

Contrast

Set the contrast using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).



W3079738

Backlight

In this menu the display lighting can be altered in relation to the other instrument lighting, using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

W3079738

Standard / Inverted; (Night Mode)

This function is used to switch between white text with black background and black text with white background, using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

Change Password (If Password is Required)

First enter the current password, see “Enter Password”, page 56.

1 Mark the password to be changed using ▲ and ▼.

2 Confirm with **SELECT**.

3 Enter the first digit using ▲ and ▼.

4 Scroll to the next digit using **SELECT**.

5 Scroll back in the menu using **ESC**.

Traction Control

T0014612

Note: Normally, traction control should be on. The disengagement function must only be used by workshop personnel or vehicle testing centres.

Select On or Off using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

When traction control is disengaged, the symbol for disengaged TCS (Traction Control System) is shown in the driver's display.

Lowering protection

T0014566

(Only for certain variants)
The the lowering protection is active (symbol for the lowering protection is shown in the display) kneeling is not possible. Should there be special circumstances where kneeling is required, the lowering protection can be inactivated in this menu. Activate/inactivate the lowering protection with the display control buttons.

Fleet Limits (Password is Required)

Revolutions Per Minute (RPM) Limit

Only accessible if correct password is entered.

This function makes it possible for the carrier to set an engine speed limit for the fleet. If the engine exceeds this limit, it will be registered, see "Trip data" page 46.

Select **RPM Limit (max)** and set the new engine speed limit in rpm using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

If the setting fails:

- Press **ESC** and try to do the setting once again.
- If it still fails, perform a diagnosis of the display and engine control unit, see “Fault Diagnostics”, page 48.
- Contact a authorized VOLVO workshop if necessary or Prevost service center/provider.

Speed Limit

Only accessible if correct password is entered.

This function makes it possible to set a road speed limit for the fleet. If the bus exceeds this speed it is registered, see "Trip data" page 46. Go to "Speed Limit (max)" and set the new speed limit using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

The message "Transfer complete" is shown

If the setting fails:

- Press **ESC** and try to do the setting once again.
- If it still fails, perform a diagnosis of the display and engine control unit, see “Fault Diagnostics”, page 48.
- Contact a authorized VOLVO workshop if necessary or Prevost service center/provider.

Fuel Target

Only accessible if correct password is entered.

This function makes it possible to set a fuel consumption target for the fleet. For information about fuel consumption for a journey, see "Trip data" page 46.

If the setting fails:

Select "On" or "Off" using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

- Press **ESC** and try to do the setting once again.
- If this still fails, perform a diagnosis of the display and engine control unit, see “Fault Diagnostics”, page 48.
- Contact a authorized VOLVO workshop if necessary or Prevost service center/provider.

Fleet ID (Password Required)

Only accessible if correct password is entered.

Using this menu the carrier can enter the vehicle ID within the fleet if required. Data registered in the engine control unit is then registered for that ID.

Set the fuel consumption target using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼) 13 digits must be entered (a space is entered for unused positions).

If the setting fails:

- Press **ESC** and try to do the setting once again.
- If it still fails, perform a diagnosis of the display and engine control unit, see “Fault Diagnostics”, page 48.
- Contact a authorized VOLVO workshop if necessary or Prevost service center/provider.

Day Running Lights

Day running lights can be switched off in this menu. This means that if the day running lights have been set to the **OFF** position, the dipped beam must be turned on and off using the lights knob in the panel.

Select **ON** or **OFF** using the control lever buttons (SELECT, ESC, ▲ and ▼).

Fault Diagnostics

A list of the bus's control units is shown in the “Fault diagnostics” menu.

Switch between control units using ▲ and ▼. **SELECT** confirms choice of control unit. To abort press **ESC**.

1 During the time that the selected control unit is being called up, the display indicates that "Data transfer is taking place".

2 If the selected control unit has no faults "No faults" is displayed. Press **ESC** to return to the previous menu.

3 If the selected control unit does not reply within 5 seconds the following is shown "Operation failed" in the display.

- Press **ESC** and try to do the setting one again, see point 1.
- If it still fails, perform a diagnosis on the display and selected control unit.
- Contact a authorized VOLVO workshop if necessary or Prevost service center/provider.

4 The following is shown if the selected control unit has a fault code:

- Which control unit it applies to
- Which parameter or component is faulty
- Which type of fault it is
- If the fault is active or inactive
- How many times the fault has been registered since the last reset

5 If there are several fault codes or fault messages for the same control unit, you can scroll through the fault codes using ▲ and ▼. "Reset all" is shown last in the list. This resetting only clears the fault codes for the selected control unit.

6 A maximum of 20 fault codes/messages can be shown for a control unit. To see more than the first 20, one or more messages must be deleted.

7 Press **SELECT** to show more information on the fault code. Fault codes are shown numerically here. If the fault is inactive, among other things, the time and date when it occurred are shown:

- **MID:** Module Identification.
- **PID:** Identification of parameters.
- **PPID:** Volvo unique Identification of parameters.
- **SID:** Identification of components.
- **PSID:** Volvo unique Identification of components.
- **FMI:** Identification of fault IDs.

Instrument Cluster Self Test

Telltales Test

1 Select "Telltales test".

2 The control lamps light for approx. 5 seconds.

3 Abort the test using **ESC**.

Gauges test

Gauges Test

1 Select "Gauge test".

2 Gauge function is checked through the entire of the gauge. The pointers move back and forth a couple of times between the end positions. The pointers should not show a particular value; this is only a function check.

3 Stop the test using **ESC**.

Display Test

1 Select "Display test".

2 The whole display lights up for 3 seconds after which it blacks out for 3 seconds. After this a checkered pattern is displayed for 3 seconds. The checkered pattern is then displayed inverted for 3 seconds.

3 Stop the test using **ESC**.

Speaker Test

1 Select "Speaker test".

2 The ticking sound of the direction indictors is heard from the instrument panel load speakers.

3 Cancel the test using **ESC**.

Part Number

A list of the bus control units is shown in the menu "Part number".

1 Select a part using ▲ and ▼.

2 Confirm with **SELECT**.

3 Return using **ESC**.

Status test

Note: This menu is only for use by workshops.

MENU: Diagnostics, Status test.

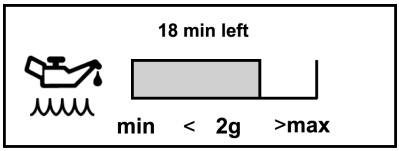
Messages on the bus data link are shown in the menu “Status test”.

Status test	
MID:	**128**
PID:	**091**
Data:	**000**

Calibration number

Number to identify the version of software equipped to the electronic engine control.

Oil Level



T0031743

The bus has an electronic oil level sensor.

The bar marked "min" and "max" shows the engine oil level. The figure in the centre shows how many gallons there are between min. and max. levels.

The engine oil level is also shown when the key is turned to the ignition position. This is shown for 5 seconds or until the engine is started.

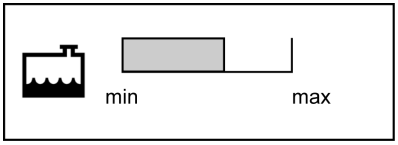
In order to show the correct value, the engine must have been turned off for at least 70 minutes. If the engine has not been turned off sufficiently long, the display shows how many minutes remain until a correct value can be shown.

If the oil level is below "min" a warning symbol is shown.

Note: There is no warning for low oil level while driving.

Coolant Level

Shows how much coolant is in the container.



T0088895

Lining Wear Prediction

See operating instructions Engine Braking System (EBS) for more information about lining wear prediction.

Vehicle ID

The bus chassis id and the vehicle number that were entered into the menu are displayed. For more information see “Fleet ID (Password Required)”, page 47.

Total Data

The total values show the engine's total values to date, logged during the lifetime of the engine control unit. The values that are saved are:

- Total distance
- Total fuel used
- Total engine hours.
- Total idle time
- Total engine revolutions

If the transfer should fail, then "No data" is shown when data is missing.

Trip Data

There are 12 different trip data stored.

- Trip distance.
- Trip fuel avg.
- Trip fuel acc.
- Trip over revolutions.
- Trip uneconomic revolutions.
- Trip fuel uneconomic revolutions.
- Trip average speed.
- Trip over speed.
- Trip engine hours.
- Trip idle time.
- Trip idle fuel.
- Trip cruise.

Switch between values using ▲and ▼. Return to previous menu using **ESC** . If the transfer should fail, then "No data" is shown when data is missing.

Note: In the menu "Trip data" you can find information saved since the last reset.

Reset Trip Data (Password Required)

Only accessible if correct password has been entered.

Reset all information in menu “Trip data”. Follow the instructions on the display.

56 Menu Password

Enter Password

Certain functions in the display are protected by a password. There are three passwords for the display. The factory set passwords are:

Workshop Password 1	0000
Owner Password	1234
Workshop Password 2	5678

When “Workshop, password 1” is entered, it is possible to reset values (*applies to a number of functions*).
With both the other passwords the following menus are accessible:

- Fleet limit: engine speed
- Fleet limit: speed
- Fleet limit: fuel
- Fleet ID

When the starter key has been in the stop position for more than 60 seconds or if the battery has been disconnected, the password must be entered again in order to access all functions.
It is not possible to remove the password protection for certain functions. This can only be done at a authorized VOLVO workshop or Prevost service center/provider.

1 Set the first digit using ▲and ▼

2 Scroll to the next digit using **SELECT**

3 Scroll back using **ESC**

Note: Change password to prevent unauthorized access to menus, see “Change Password (If Password is Required)”, page 42.

A

activate alarm clock 29
AdBlue..... 23
Aid. 1

B

Booklet. 1

C

Calibration, identification 52
Cluster. 1
Components. 1
Condition..... 1
Coolant level 53

D

Data. 4
Display fields 3
Display..... 1
Driver display symbols 8
Driver..... 1
Driver´s..... 1
Driving and resting times 31

E

Emergency. 1
Ensure..... 1
Equipment..... 1
Extinguishers..... 1

F

Fault diagnostics 48
Fleet limits..... 44

G

General 2

I

IC08. 1
Information. 9, 1
Instrument..... 1
Intended..... 1
Introduction 1

L

Legislation..... 4
Level. 23
Lowering protection 43

M

Maintenance..... 1
Menu Climate 26
Menu Data Log 54
Menu Diagnosis 48
Menu Display..... 35
Menu Fuel Data 24
Menu Gauge 20
Menu Overview..... 18
Menu Password 56
Menu Time/Distance..... 28
Menu Vehicle Data 53
Menu Vehicle Messages 38
Menu Vehicle Settings 43

N

Notice..... 4

O

Off alarm clock..... 29
Operate. 1

P

Passengers. 1
Privacy..... 4
Properly. 1

R

Regeneration..... 32
Regeneration menu 32

Regulation..... 4
Resetting fuel consumption 24
resetting leg data 25
Responsibility..... 1

S

Safety. 9, 1
Service. 1
setting alarm clock..... 29
setting time date..... 28
Status. 52

T

Tachograph 31
Tank. 23
Temperature oil, gearbox..... 21
Temperature oil, retarder 21
Test. 52
Traction control 43
Trip data 55

U

Unexpected. 1
Use the Display Menus 14

V

Vehicle Messages and Symbols 5
Vehicle..... 4

W

Warning message 6
Warning. 1

VOLVO

Volvo Bus Corporation

Göteborg, Sweden

89376935 English November, 2018

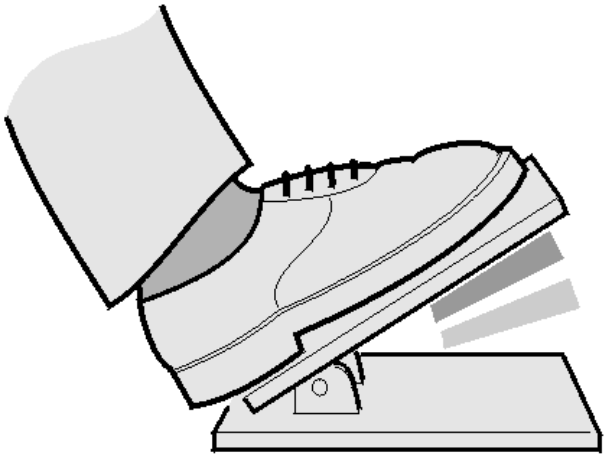
Printed in Mexico

Operating Instructions

Electronic Brake System

For multiplex electrical system version 3

EBS



T0009004

VOLVO

Foreword

The following levels of observations, cautions and warnings are used in this Service Documentation:

Danger: Indicates an unsafe practice where serious personal injury or death could occur.

Warning: Indicates an unsafe practice where personal injury or severe damage to the product could occur.

Caution: Indicates an unsafe practice where damage to the product could occur.

Note: Indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order to have the vehicle or component function in the manner intended.

This operating instructions contains information concerning the operation and function of the Electronic Brake System (**EBS**) installed on Volvo coaches .with 3rd generation of the multiplex electrical system **BEA–3** (*Bus Electrical Architecture, version 3*).

This manual contains general information about instruments and controls, as well as driving instructions related to Electronic Brake System (**EBS**). In case a bus is not equipped with all functions described in this manual, it is due to the custom adaptation and different levels of equipment.

The information in this operating instructions it applying to buses.

Technical data, construction information, descriptions and illustrations in this operating instructions, that were current when the book was published, can have been changed. The Volvo Company reserves the right to make changes without prior notice.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89376909

©2018 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Foreword

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Prevost should be informed immediately if you believe that the vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death.
Contact NHTSA by calling the Auto Safety Hotline at 1 (888) 327-4236, by writing to NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590, by TTY at 1 (800) 424-9153, or visit their website at: *www.nhtsa.dot.gov*

Note: Illustrations in this operating instructions are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

Please keep this operating instructions in the vehicle at all times.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89376909

©2018 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Foreword

Privacy Notice for Vehicle Data

When you drive a truck, bus or coach sold or produced by companies belonging to the Volvo Group, the vehicle generates data that these companies may retrieve and process. Such data may include personal data relating to you as a driver.

The data are processed by the Volvo Group to develop and enhance our companies' products and services. The Volvo Group companies may process any personal data for the purposes as a data controller under the EU General Data Protection Regulation. The legal ground for processing is based on the Volvo Group companies' legitimate interests or, in some cases, the need to comply with legislation. We would like you to be fully informed about how the Volvo Group companies may process the data, as well as your rights. We recognize the individual's rights in relation to data processing activities, and take those rights seriously. We shall always be transparent about what data are collected, how they are utilized, with whom they are shared, and whom to contact in case of any concerns.

If you would like to know more about the kind of personal data the Volvo Group companies process, please visit the Volvo Group web site – www.volvogroup.com/privacy.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89376909

©2018 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Introduction 1
Driver's responsibility 1

About Electronic Brake System (EBS) 2
General 2

Manually engaged functions 3
Traction Control System (TCS) 3
Brake blending 5
Engage Differential Lock 5
Hill start assistance 7

Automatic functions 8
Antilock braking system (ABS) 8
Electronic Stability Program (ESP) 8
Differential Lock Control (DLC) 10
Engine torque control 11
Emergency braking assistance 11
Equalizing brake pad wear 11
Predicted brake pad wear 12
Warning of high brake temperature 12
Wheel brake monitoring 12

Fault codes 13
Resetting fault codes 13
Malfunction warnings 14

Index 15

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this operating instructions. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this operating instructions:

⚠ DANGER

Danger Indicates an unsafe practice where serious personal injury or death could occur. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning Indicates an unsafe practice where personal injury or severe damage to the product could occur. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution Indicates an unsafe practice where damage to the product could occur. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note Indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order to have the vehicle or component function in the manner intended.

This booklet is intended to help the driver about how to operate properly the Electronic Brake System, (**EBS**).

Driver's responsibility

- As the driver, you are responsible for the safety and comfort of the passengers during the journey. Therefore, do not drive the bus before you have read this operating instruction. You must be familiar with all Electronic Brake System (**EBS**) functions, indications and warnings to know what to do if something unexpected happens.
- The brakes on the bus are operated by compressed air. Never drive if the air pressure is too low or if you discover other problems with the brakes.
- As the driver of the vehicle, you should be aware of the vehicle weight and loading capacity. See instructions on warning stickers, the vehicle registration book and on the identification plate.
- As the driver of the vehicle, it is your responsibility to foresee any hazards that could threaten your passengers.
- It is also your responsibility to ensure that all the safety equipment of the bus is in place. Therefore check regularly the working order of seat belts, emergency door and window opening, door sensitive edges, fire extinguishers and first aid equipment.
- Re-tighten the wheel nuts after approximately **200 km (125 mi)** if the wheels have been removed.
- Tighten the wheel nuts every **6 months** regardless of whether the wheels have been removed.
- Follow the recommended service and maintenance programme to maintain the bus's condition and safety.
- The bus tyres and rims should be approved for the intended load and speed in accordance with current legal requirements.

2 About Electronic Brake System (EBS)

General

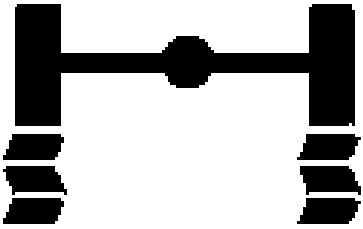
The bus is equipped with **EBS** (*Electronic Brake System*), which monitors and controls the bus's brakes.

EBS (*for multiplex electrical system, Version 3*) does not work in the same way as previous braking systems. In previous braking systems a particular pressure to the pedal gave a particular pressure to the braking system. With **EBS** a particular pressure to the pedal gives a particular reduction in speed, while the pressure applied to the brake cylinders on the axles varies depending on the load on the axles.

The initial braking after reloading can identify differences and allows the braking system has to adjust to the new axle loading.

Traction Control System (TCS)

With **TCS** (*Traction Control System*) the torque at the wheels is automatically decreased when wheel spin occurs. At speeds of under **40 km/h** (*25 mph*), the **TCS** also functions as an automatic differential brake, and brakes the driving wheels on one side when required.



T3014400

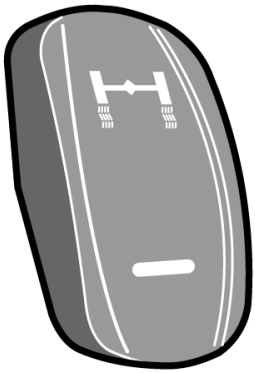
Display symbol when **TCS** is activated.

Off-road TCS

Engage the terrain **TCS** in difficult conditions, such as on sand, gravel or snow. **TCS** then allows the wheels to spin more.
The level at which **ESP** engages to prevent skidding is raised somewhat **ESP** (*Electronic Stability Program*).

The function is activated by pressing the switch. Disengage the terrain **TCS** by pressing the switch again. When the "off-road" **TCS** is engaged an indicator on the switch lights up, at the same time as the level for engaging Electronic Stability Program (**ESP**) is raised slightly.

Note: Do not use the "off-road" **TCS** during normal driving.



T0012059

TCS activation switch.

4 Manually engaged functions

Disengage TCS

Use the display control lever to deactivate **TCS**. The vehicle should be stationary. See the separate operating instructions “Display” for general information concerning how the display works.

1 Scroll to the “Settings” menu (**3 and 4**).

2 Press “Select” (**2**).

3 Scroll to the “Traction control” menu (**3 and 4**).

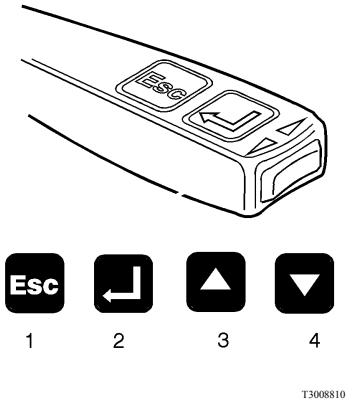
4 Press “Select” (**2**).

5 Scroll to “Off” (**3 and 4**).

6 Press “Select” (**2**).

The next time that the ignition key is turned to the drive position or the front axle rotates faster than **12 km/h** (*7 mph*) the **TCS** will engage again.

Note: Disengage **TCS** during rolling brake tests!
Switch OFF **TCS** before towing with a raised axle!



Display control.

If TCS is activated after changing a wheel

If the driving axle wheels are replaced by smaller ones, this may activate **TCS**.

Drive a distance faster than **25 km/h** (*16 mph*). The **EBS** system learns the difference in size between the wheels. How long for depends on how great the difference in size between the wheels is.

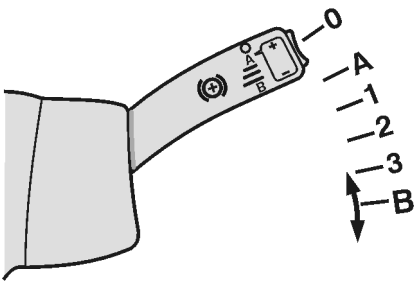
It may be difficult to drive because **TCS** limits the engine torque. In that case engage terrain **TCS** (“Off-road TCS”, page 3). Terrain **TCS** permits a greater difference in wheel speeds between the front and drive axles. When terrain **TCS** is engaged, it takes longer for the **EBS** system to recognize the difference in the wheel sizes.

Brake blending

When the retardation lever is in the " **A**" position, the supplementary brakes are applied together with the normal brakes when the brake pedal is pressed.

The **EBS** ensures that the different brakes are used in the most effective way. The supplementary brakes are used as much as possible and the normal brakes are applied as required.

Note: The "**B**" position for the lever is only available on vehicles with *I-Shift*. This position activates a braking program which allows a higher engine speed when engine braking is applied.



Brake blending. Put the lever in position "**A**".

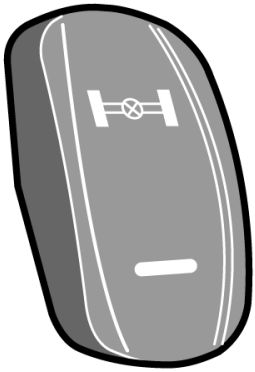
Engage Differential Lock

(***This function is an option***.)

On vehicles equipped with a differential lock (DLC, *Differential Lock Control*), the lock can be engaged without the clutch being pressed.

At speeds below **40 km/h** (*25 mph*), after pressing in the switch, the **EBS** system will slow the wheels so they are rotating at the same speed before engaging the differential lock.
At speeds above **40 km/h** (*25 mph*), the **EBS** system waits (*it does not brake the wheels*) until the wheels are rotating at the same speed before engaging the differential lock.

When the differential lock is activated, the control lamp "Differential lock activated" lights on the instrument panel.



T0012041

Differential lock engaged switch (optional). The light on the instrument panel flashes.

6 Manually engaged functions

CAUTION

The manual mode must only be used on slippery surfaces. Other usage could damage the drive shaft.

To use the differential lock, proceed as follows:

1 Set the switch to the lower position.

2 Wait until the indicator light on the instrument panel flashes.

3 Accelerate **carefully** so as not to damage the drive axle and gear.

4 Drive away from the slippery area.

5 Release the accelerator.

6 Disengage the differential lock.

Note: The differential lock is not engaged until the warning lamp on the instrument panel flashes and remains engaged as long as the warning lamp is flashing, even if the switch is turned *OFF*.

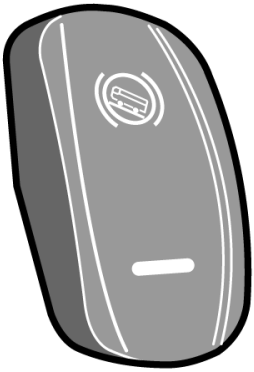
For automatic engagement of the differential lock, see “Differential Lock Control (DLC)”, page 10.

Hill start assistance

(***This function is an option.***)

The function is activated by pressing the switch. The lamp on the switch then lights up to indicated the activation.

Note: The function works differently depending on whether the vehicle is equipped with a manual or automatic gearbox.



T0012045

Switch for hill start help.

Hill start help on buses with an automatic gearbox

1 Keep the bus still with the brake pedal.

2 Release the foot brake.
The brake pressure is automatically retained for a few moments.
The symbol in the display is shown as long as the brakes are applied.

3 Start accelerating.

The brakes are automatically released two seconds after the brake pedal is released, or when the engine torque is sufficient.

Deactivate the function by pressing the switch again. The function is always disengaged when the engine is started.

8 Automatic functions

Antilock braking system (ABS)

Antilock Brake System (*ABS,*) is part of **EBS** and is completely automatic.

Electronic Stability Program (ESP)

(***This function is an option.***)

The Electronic Stability Program (**ESP**) is a stabilization system that reduces the risk of overturning and skidding.

If the system senses that the bus is going to tip over. It first cuts back the engine. If this is not sufficient, it then applies the wheel brakes to reduce the speed of the vehicle.

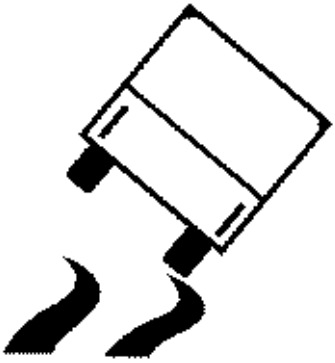
If the system senses a risk of skidding, it cuts back the engine and applies the wheel brakes as necessary to hold the vehicle on its course. If necessary, the supplementary brakes are also disengaged.

CAUTION

Even with **ESP** equipped vehicles, the driver remains responsible for ensuring vehicle stability during operation.

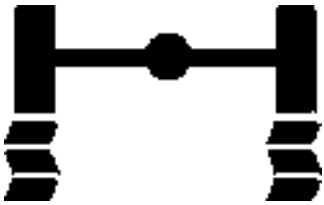
WARNING

Drive the vehicle in the same way as vehicles without **ESP**.
ESP reduces the risk of tipping and skidding, but a bus can still tip over if the centre of gravity is very high and the wheels hit a kerb at high speed, or through careless driving. A bus can skid on slippery surfaces even if it has **ESP**.



T0012128

The displays shows the symbol for **ESP** engaged because of the risk of tipping.



T3014400

Display symbol when the **ESP** is activated because of the risk of skidding.

⚠ DANGER

Do not drive buses equipped with **ESP** through steeply banked curves (*for example on a test track*). Driving on steeply banked curves can cause the **ESP** system to engage unnecessarily and dangerously.

⚠ DANGER

ESP may reduce the vehicle speed automatically.
ESP can make the vehicle decelerate automatically.
ESP can slow the vehicle with or without the operator applying the brake, and even when the throttle is being applied.

Differential Lock Control (DLC)

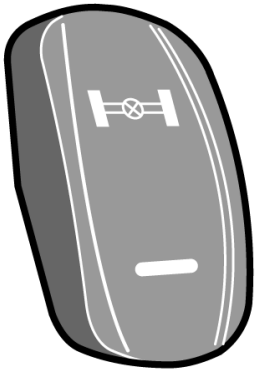
(***This function is an option.***)

Set the switch for the differential lock to the centre position. **DLC** is then activated.

The differential lock engages automatically when the drive wheels turn at different speeds and vehicle speed is below **15 km/h** (*9 mph*).

The differential lock disengages if the vehicle speed exceeds **15 km/h** (*9 mph*) or at the next gear shift.

Note: For manual engagement of the differential lock, see “Engage Differential Lock”, page 5.



T0012041

Switch for the differential lock (*optional*).

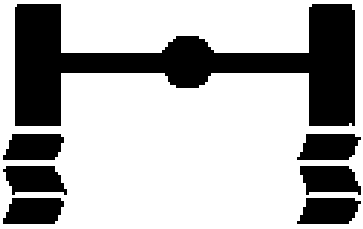
Overview of the switch functions

Switch position	Function
0 (*upper position*).	No differential lock engaged.
1 (*centre position*).	DLC engaged.
2 (*lower position*).	Differential lock manually engaged.

Engine torque control

(***This function is an option.***)

When the accelerator is released on a slippery road, the supplementary brake or the engine brake can lock the driving wheels. When this happens the supplementary brake is disengaged and the engine drives the driving wheels until they rotate at the same speed as the front wheels. This does not happen if the gearbox is in neutral position, **ABS** is activated or the vehicle speed is less than **10 km/h** (*6 mph*).



Display symbol for regulation of engine torque.

Emergency braking assistance

(***This function is an option.***)

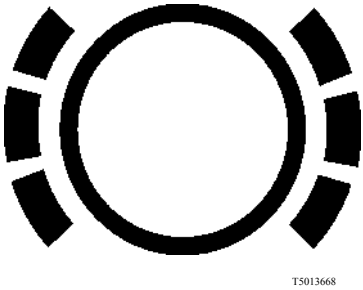
When the brake pedal is pressed quickly and forcefully the braking pressure is higher and the braking effect stronger. This function is there to enable the rapid application of full braking force in emergency situations.

Equalizing brake pad wear

If the brake pads wear more on one axle than another, greater braking force is distributed to the other wheels to even out the wear.

Note: This function works during gentle braking. During harder braking the braking force is divided so that braking occurs as effectively as possible.

A warning in the form of a symbol is shown on the display panel when a brake shoe becomes more than **80%** worn.



Display symbol when a brake shoe is more than **80%** worn.

Predicted brake pad wear

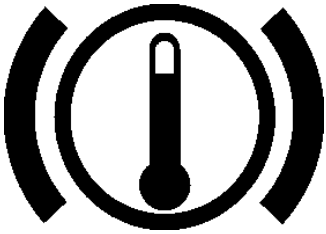
(***This function is an option.***)

The " Vehicle data" menu in the information display, shows the period remaining until the brake linings need replacing. This information can also be read *off* at a Volvo-workshop.

Warning of high brake temperature

If the brakes become too hot the "CHECK" lamp lights and a symbol is shown on the display.

Note: If the temperature is allowed to rise still further, the feeling of the brakes changes so that the pedal has to be pressed harder to obtain the same braking effect as before.



T5013670

Warning symbol for high brake temperature.

Wheel brake monitoring

(***This function is an option.***)

If the braking effect on a wheel is weaker than on the other wheels, the "CHECK " lamp lights and a symbol is shown on the display. This does not necessarily mean that braking feels different as the other wheels brake harder. However a fault code is stored in the system and authorized Volvo service centre should examine the braking system.

T3014494

Warning symbol for poor braking effect.

Resetting fault codes

Faults concerning low pressure at the brakes or if the brake pedal is pressed when the pressure in the braking system is too low, can cause several fault codes to be set that call for a reset test. These codes can be removed in the following way:

1 Ensure that the vehicle is stationary.

2 On the instrument panel display, ensure that the air pressure lies within the green range.

3 Check the display to see that the air pressure is at least **9 bar** (*130 psi*). If it is not, start the engine to allow the pneumatic system to pressurize.

4 Switch *OFF* the ignition so that the control unit is reset.

5 Start the engine without touching the foot brake.

6 Wait at least five seconds.

7 Slowly depress the foot brake until it is fully depressed (*it should take at least one second to be fully applied from when it is released*).

8 Hold the foot brake fully depressed for at least seven seconds.

9 Release the foot brake slowly (*it should take at least one second from fully applied to when it is released*).

10 If a reset test is required, the message "Perform Brake Test" is shown in the display. Confirm with "enter".
Follow the instructions on the display.

11 Switch *OFF* the ignition.

12 Wait at least five seconds.

13 Switch the ignition *ON*.

14 Check the fault codes.

After resetting, the remedied fault codes should be inactive. Otherwise the fault remains.
If it takes longer than **25 seconds** to carry out steps *12, 13 and 14* or the fault codes will not be deactivated.

Note: If the above measure does not help, contact an authorized Volvo service centre for further examination of the system.

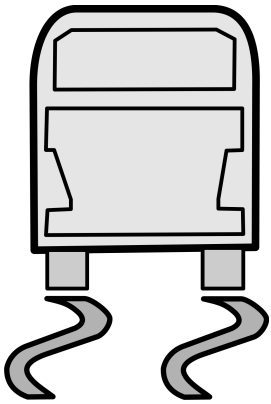
Malfunction warnings

Electronic Brake System (EBS), malfunction warnings

If the **EBS** system auto-diagnostic function, detect a malfunction operation, shall be shown a “Pop-up” icon on the Driver´s Information Display (*DID*) together with **ESP** (*Electronic Stability Program*) telltale check lamp lit on the instrument cluster, whose purpose is notify to the driver; when there is a malfunction on **EBS** (*Electronic Brake System*).
The “Pop-up” icon, appears with **ESP** telltale check lamp active.

W0142193

Pop-up displayed on Driver´s Information Display (*DID*).



W0142192

Telltale lit on instrument cluster.

A

About Electronic Brake System (EBS) 2
ABS..... 8
Accelerate..... 6
Accelerating. 7
Accelerator..... 6, 11
Activated..... 10
Aid. 1
Air. 1
Antilock..... 8
Assistance..... 7, 11
Automatic functions 8
Automatic..... 7
Axle..... 4, 6, 11
Axles. 2

B

Blending..... 5
Brake..... 2–5, 7–8, 11–14
Brakes..... 1, 5, 8, 13
Braking. 5, 11–12

C

Capacity..... 1
Check..... 13–14
Clutch..... 5
Code. 12
Codes..... 13
Compressed..... 1
Conditions..... 3
Control..... 3, 5, 10–11
Cylinders..... 2

D

Damage..... 6
Dangerously. 9
Data. 4
Deactivate..... 4, 7
Deactivated. 13
Decelerate..... 9
Depress. 13
Diagnostic. 14
Differential..... 3, 5–6, 10
Disengage..... 3–4, 6
Disengaged. 7–8, 11
Disengages. 10
Display..... 4, 7, 11–13
DLC 5
DLC..... 10
Driver´s..... 1
Driving. 3

E

EBS..... 2, 5, 8, 14
Effect..... 11–12
Electronic..... 2–3, 8, 14
Emergency. 1, 11
Enable. 11
Engage..... 5
Engage..... 3–4
Engaged. 5, 10
Engages. 10
Engine..... 8, 11, 13
Equalizing. 11
ESP..... 3, 8, 14
Extinguishers..... 1

F

Fault codes 13
Fault..... 12–13
Flashes..... 6
Forcefully. 11
Foresee. 1
Function..... 3, 10–11
Functions. 1

G

Gear..... 6
Gearbox..... 7, 11
General..... 2

H

Hazards..... 1
Help. 7
High. 12
Hill. 7

Hold. 13

I

I-Shift. 5
Identification. 1
Instrument. 6
Introduction 1

L

Lamp. 14
Legal. 1
Legislation. 4
Linings. 12
Load. 2
Loading. 1
Lock. 5–6, 10

M

Maintenance. 1
Malfunction. 14
Manually engaged functions. 3
Monitoring. 12

N

Notice. 4
Notify. 14

O

Off-road. 3
Operation. 8
Overturning. 8

P

Pad. 11–12
Panel. 6
Pedal. 2, 5, 7, 12
Plate. 1
Pneumatic. 13
Pop-up. 14
Position. 10
Predicted. 12
Pressure. 2, 7, 11, 13
Pressurize. 13
Privacy. 4
Program. 3, 5, 8, 14

R

Raised. 4
Re-tighten. 1
Regulation. 4
Release. 6
Released. 13
Replaced. 4
Resetting. 13
Responsibility. 1
Retardation. 5
Rims. 1
Rolling. 4

S

Safety information. 7
Senses. 8
Shaft. 6
Skidding. 3, 8
Slightly. 3
Slippery. 6, 8, 11
Speed. 9
Spin. 3
Stability. 3, 8, 14
Stabilization. 8
Start. 7
Stationary. 4, 13
Switch. 3, 5–7, 13
System. 2–3, 8, 14

T

TCS. 3–4
Telltale. 14
Temperature. 12
Test. 13
Tests. 4
Throttle. 9

Tighten. 1
Torque. 11
Towing. 4
Traction..... 3
Tyres. 1

V

Vehicle..... 4

W

Warning. 12
Warnings..... 14
Wear..... 11–12
Wheel.....3, 12
Wheels. 1, 3–4, 10–11

VOLVO

Volvo Bus Corporation

Göteborg, Sweden

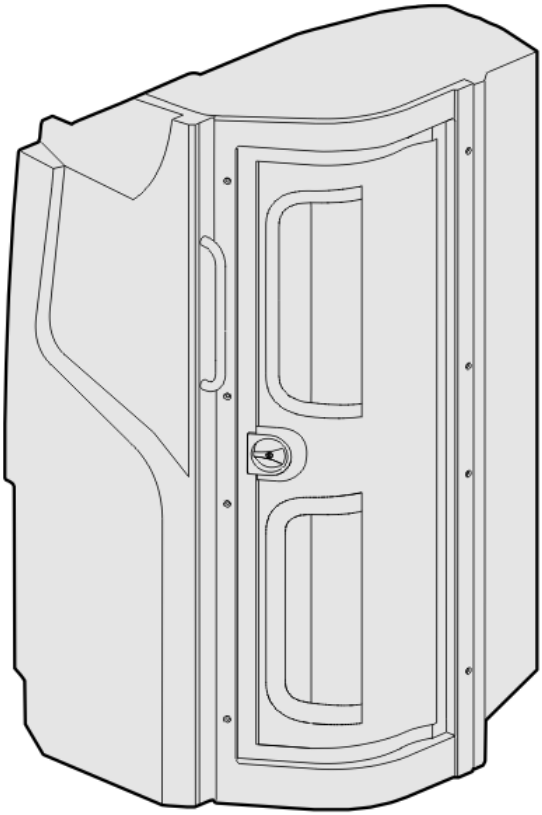
89376909 English November, 2018

Printed in Mexico

Operating Instructions

Toilet

9700 USCAN



W0119187

VOLVO

Foreword

The following levels of observations, cautions and warnings are used in this Service Documentation:

Danger: Indicates an unsafe practice where serious personal injury or death could occur.

Warning: Indicates an unsafe practice where personal injury or severe damage to the product could occur.

Caution: Indicates an unsafe practice where damage to the product could occur.

Note: Indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order to have the vehicle or component function in the manner intended.

This operation instruction contains information concerning the operation and function of the bus toilet. In case of the coach is not equipped with all functions described in this manual, it is due to the custom adaptation or different equipment levels.

Technical data, construction information, descriptions and illustrations in this operation instruction , that were current when the book was published, can have been changed. The Volvo Company reserves the right to make changes without prior notice.

The information in this operation instruction it applying to buses.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89369876

©2018 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Foreword

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) and Prevost should be informed immediately if you believe that the vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death.

Contact NHTSA by calling the Auto Safety Hotline at 1 (888) 327-4236, by writing to NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation, Washington, DC 20590, by TTY at 1 (800) 424-9153, or visit their website at www.nhtsa.gov.

Note: Illustrations in this operation instruction are used for reference only and may differ slightly from the actual vehicle. However, key components addressed in this document are represented as accurately as possible.

Please keep this operation instruction in the vehicle at all times.

Volvo Bus Corporation
Göteborg, Sweden

Order number: 89369876

©2018 Volvo Bus Corporation, Göteborg, Sweden

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in retrieval system, or transmitted in any forms by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of Volvo Bus Corporation

Contents

Introduction **1**
Driver's responsibility 1
Toilet general view 2
Decals in the cubicle 3
Toilet cubicle keys 4

Toilet operation **5**
Activation of the cubicle 5
Flushing of the toilet 5
Filling and draining of the tanks 6
Water tank filling 6
Water tank draining 7
Septic tank draining 7
Cubicle door lock operation 8
Signals of toilet occupied/vacant 9
Interior light 10
Extractor fan 11
Emergency alarm 11

Cleaning and hygiene **12**
Cubicle and toilet bowl 12
Gel dispenser 13
Trash bin 14
Toilet paper dispenser 15

Maintenance **16**
Daily routine maintenance 16
Weekly routine maintenance 17
Winterization 18

Index **19**

Safety Information

IMPORTANT: Before driving this vehicle, be certain that you have read and that you fully understand each and every step of the driving and handling information in this manual. Be certain that you fully understand and follow all safety warnings.

IT IS IMPORTANT THAT THE FOLLOWING INFORMATION BE READ, UNDERSTOOD AND ALWAYS FOLLOWED.

The following types of advisories are used throughout this operating instruction:

⚠ DANGER

Danger Indicates an unsafe practice where serious personal injury or death could occur. A danger advisory banner is in **white** type on a **black** background with a **black** border.

⚠ WARNING

Warning Indicates an unsafe practice where personal injury or severe damage to the product could occur. A warning advisory banner is in **black** type on a **gray** background with a **black** border.

⚠ CAUTION

Caution Indicates an unsafe practice where damage to the product could occur. A caution advisory is in **black** type on a **white** background with a **black** border.

Note: Note Indicates a procedure, practice, or condition that must be followed in order to have the vehicle or component function in the manner intended.

This booklet is intended to help the driver about how to operate properly the toilet on the bus.

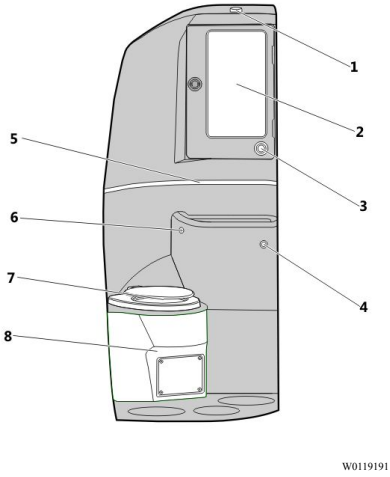
Driver's responsibility

- As the driver, you are responsible for the safety and comfort of the passengers during the journey. Therefore, do not drive the bus before you have read this operation instruction. You must be familiar with bus equipment , indications and warnings to know what to do if something unexpected happens.
- Follow the recommended service and maintenance programme to maintain the bus's condition and safety.
- It is also your responsibility to ensure that all the safety equipment of the bus is in place. Therefore check regularly the working order of seat belts, emergency door and window opening, door sensitive edges, fire extinguishers and first aid equipment.
- It is also your responsibility to ensure that all bus components working in order.
- Pay attention to exhaust and fuel smells. Any leaks should be taken care of immediately at the workshop.

2 Introduction

Toilet general view

1 Spot lamp.
2 Mirror.
3 Gel dispenser.
4 Alarm button.
5 Ambient light.
6 Flush button.
7 Toilet seat.
8 Toilet bowl.



Toilet cubicle lay-out.

Decals in the cubicle

1 Do not use standing up position; do not throw strange objects in the toilet bowl.
2 No smoking.
3 Door lock.
4 Toilet flush.
5 Alarm button.
6 Gel dispenser.
7 Trash bin.

Decals.

Toilet cubicle keys

Two keys are used for the toilet.

1 For the cubicle door and mirror door (**A**). See also: “Cubicle door lock operation”, page 8

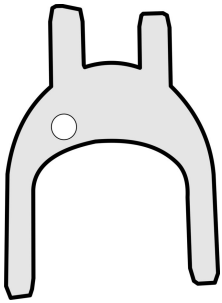
2 For paper and gel dispensaries (**B**). Refer to following sections on present operating instructions:

- “Gel dispenser”, page 13
- “Toilet paper dispenser”, page 15

Note: The paper and gel dispensaries in the toilet must be opened by using the special key in order to avoid dispensaries lid´s damage.

W0140347

(**A**) Cubicle door and mirror door key.



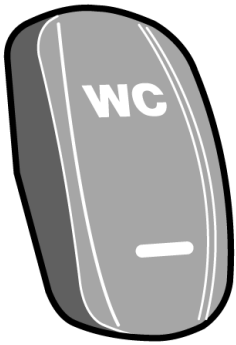
W0140320

(**B**) Toilet dispensaries special key.

Activation of the cubicle

To activate the cubicle, turn on the toilet switch on the dashboard.

> **CAUTION**
>
> In order to protect the electrical system, ensure that the toilet switch is OFF when starting or jump starting the vehicle.



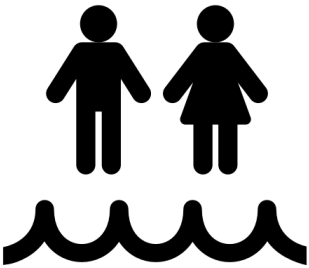
T3018183

Activation switch on the dashboard.

Flushing of the toilet

Pushing the flush button flushes the toilet. If a further flush is required, wait for the flush cycle to complete, and then press the button again.
Also, the toilet flushes automatically if the cubicle is vacated without having done the flush before.

When the septic tank is full, a symbol will appears on the DID ("*Driver Information Display*" and the "occupied" lamp will illuminate with signal.
The toilet is now out of use until this tank is drained.
When the water tank is empty, the same symbol (*as full tank septic condition*) will appears on the DID ("*Driver Information Display*" and the "occupied" lamp will illuminate with signal.
The toilet is now out of use until this tank is refilled.



W0120406

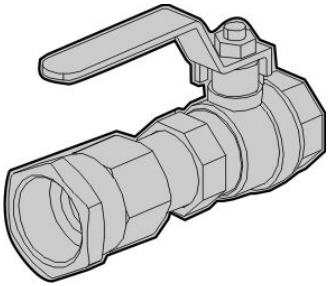
Symbol shown on the driver display.

6 Toilet operation

Filling and draining of the tanks

Water tank filling

To fill the water tank, use the hose connector located in the septic tank compartment.

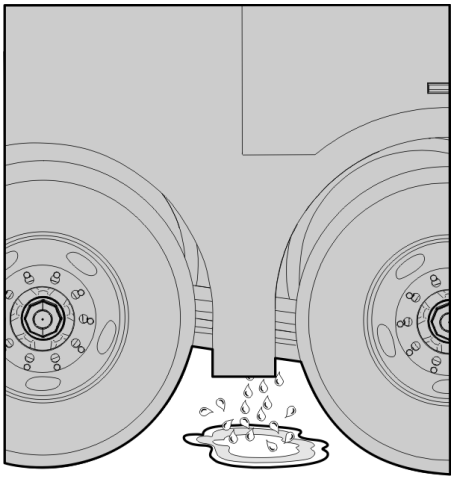


W0120407

Hose connector in the septic tank compartment.

You will notice that the water tank is full when the vent pipe starts to leak.

Note: Pay attention to the leaking of the vent pipe in order to avoid waste of water.

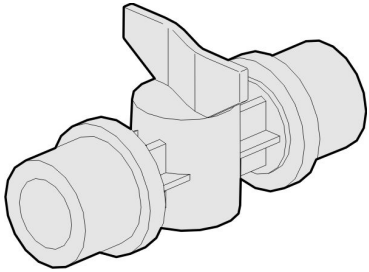


W0120408

Water spilled from the vent valve.

Water tank draining

To drain the water tank, use the draining valve located behind the septic tank.



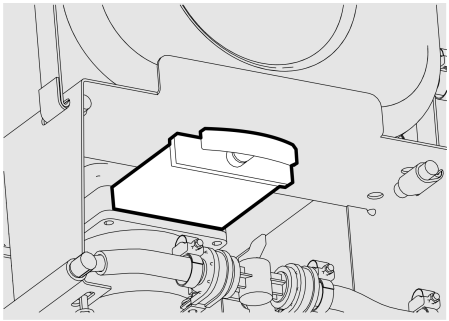
Water tank draining valve.

Septic tank draining

To drain the septic tank, firmly pull-on the draining valve handle located underneath the tank.
Pull-in the draining valve by it handle to close.

CAUTION

After draining, make sure that the septic tank draining valve is closed to avoid spill the waste liquids over the road during the trip.



Septic tank draining valve.

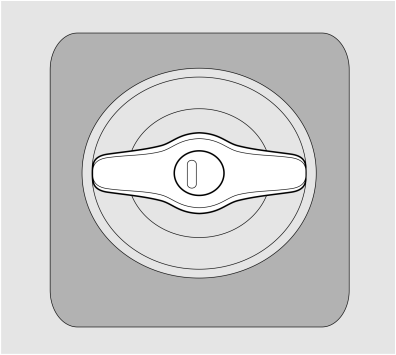
8 Toilet operation

Cubicle door lock operation

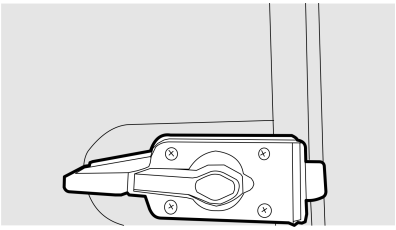
On the exterior door lock, turn the handle (*in any sense*) to open (**A**).

On the interior door lock, turn downwards the door lock knob to open.
Turn upwards the door lock knob to block the cubicle door to avoid someone can open from the exterior (**B**).
The door lock knob in this last position, active the toilet occupied signal (*refer to following section:* “Signals of toilet occupied/vacant”, page 9).
The door lock knob in middle position keep unlock the cubicle door.

The cubicle door can be locked with a key, refer to following section: “Toilet cubicle keys”, page 4, in this present operating instructions.



(**A**) Exterior cubicle door lock handle.

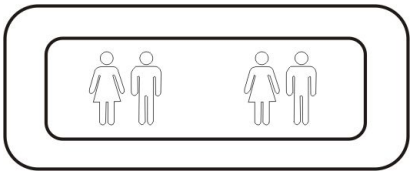


(**B**) Interior cubicle door lock knob.

Signals of toilet occupied/vacant

Signals outside the toilet

The indicator lamp outside the toilet indicates whether the toilet is occupied (*red*) or vacant (*green*).

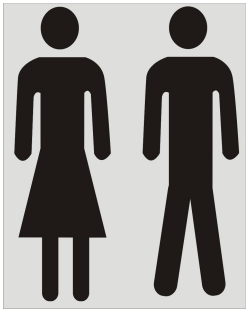


T0015272

Toilet cubicle indicator lamp.

Signals in the dashboard

There is also an occupied symbol in the driver display on the dashboard.
When the toilet is vacant, there is no signal.



T8061456

Occupied symbol shown in the driver display.

Signals in the passenger information display

In this display, the occupied signal is "**WCX**", while the vacant signal is WC with a man and a woman.

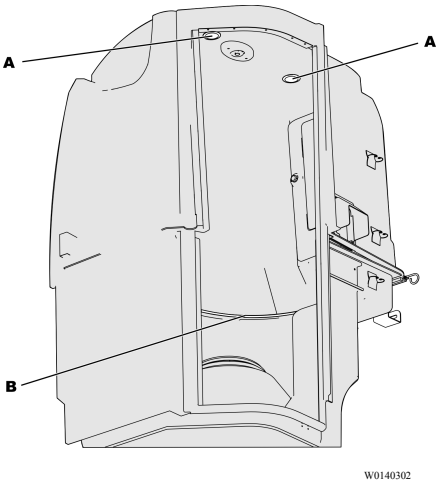
W0120414

Passenger information display message showed.

10 Toilet operation

Interior light

The spot lamps (**A**) and the ambient light (**B**) will turn ON when the cubicle is occupied and turn OFF when it is vacated.



Toilet cubicle interior lights.

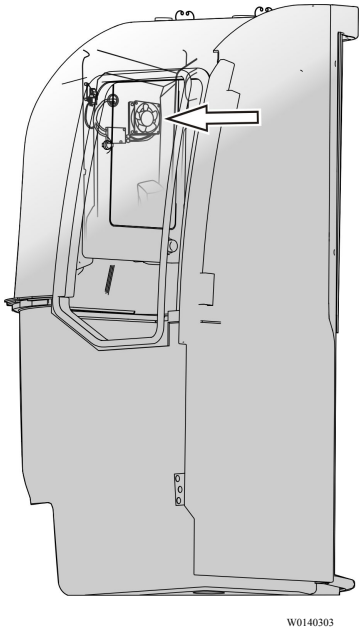
(**A**) Spot lamps.

(**B**) Ambient light.

Extractor fan

The extractor fan runs at half speed when the cubicle is vacant and switches to full speed when it is occupied.

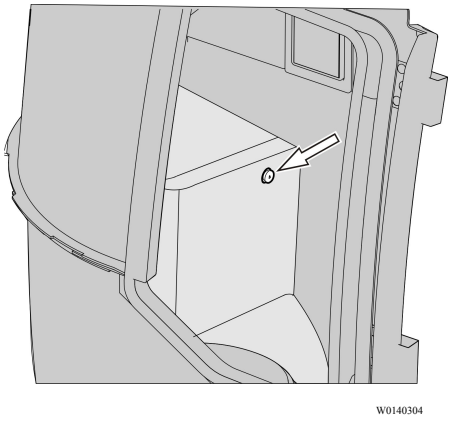
Note: The extractor fan is installed behind the mirror door.



Toilet cubicle extractor fan.

Emergency alarm

When the alarm button is pressed, the toilet user will hear a buzzer.
In the dashboard, it can be seen the toilet occupied signal blinking.



Toilet cubicle emergency alarm button.

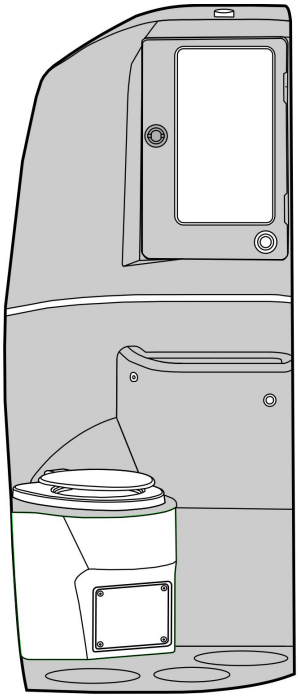
12 Cleaning and hygiene

Cubicle and toilet bowl

To clean the cubicle, use a mild detergent. For the toilet bowl, use a mild anti-bacterial detergent and a soft brush.

CAUTION

Do not use abrasives of any kind to clean the cubicle or the toilet bowl, since they will damage the surfaces.



Toilet cubicle and bowl.

Gel dispenser

The gel dispenser is located behind the mirror door (**A**).
To fill the dispenser do the following steps:

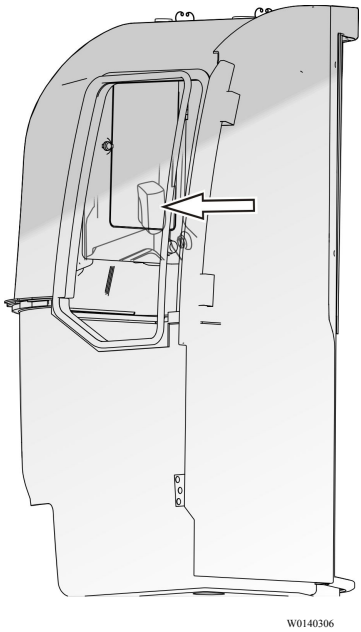
1 Open the mirror door.

2 Open the dispenser, using the special dispenser key (*refer to following section:* "Toilet cubicle keys", page 4).

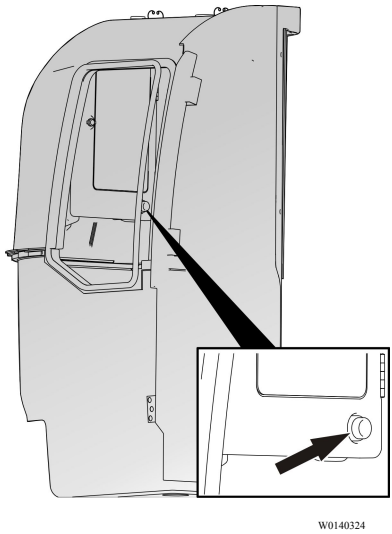
3 Fill it with antibacterial gel.

4 Close the dispenser and the mirror door.

To gel stock up, just press the button located on the mirror door (**B**).



(**A**) Toilet gel dispenser.



(**B**) Gel dispenser dossier button.

14 Cleaning and hygiene

Trash bin

It is recommended to cover the trash bin with a plastic bag in order to facilitate its emptying and keep it clean and free of odor.

Note: Do not throw the toilet paper used into the trash bin.
The trash bin is not designed for this purpose.

To replace the plastic bag from the trash bin, do the following steps:

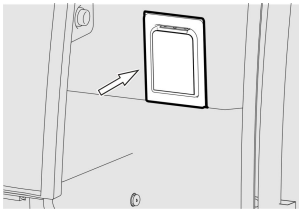
1 Remove the trash bin cover fixing screws (**A**).

Note: The cover is located at the rear of passengers aisle (*beside the toilet*).

2 Remove the cover (**B**).

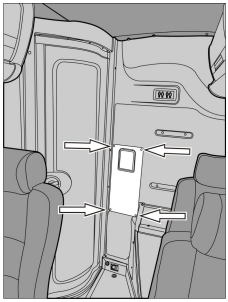
3 Replace the bag.

4 Install the trash bin cover, tightening firmly it´s fixing screws.



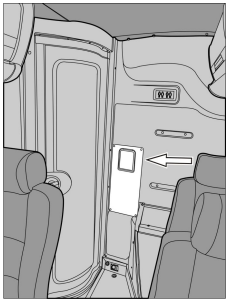
W0140307

Toilet trash bin lid at the cubicle interior.



W0140326

(**A**) Trash bin cover fixations.
At the end of the passengers aisle.



W0140327

(**B**) Trash bin cover.

Toilet paper dispenser

The toilet paper used must be placed in the toilet bowl, so it is recommended to use only highly biodegradable toilet paper.

CAUTION

Do not use domestic grade toilet paper, since it could block the system.

To replace the toilet paper roll , do the following steps:

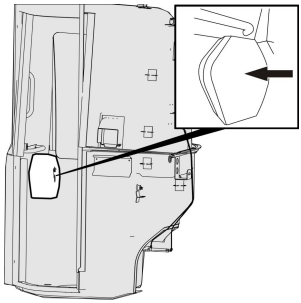
1 Open the paper dispenser using the special dispenser key (*refer to following section:* “Toilet cubicle keys”, page 4)..

2 Swivel down the paper dispenser lid (**A**).

3 Replace the paper roll.

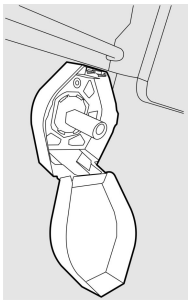
4 Close the paper dispenser by swivel up and pressing the lid.

Note: The toilet paper dispenser has a paper roll turner of **40 mm** of diameter (**B**). Please, use a paper rolls that accomplish this specification.



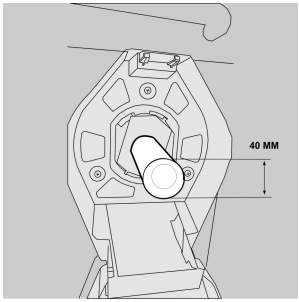
W0140308

Toilet paper dispenser.



W0140328

(**A**) Toilet paper dispenser, lid open.



W0140309

(**B**) Paper dispenser roll turner dimensions.

16 Maintenance

Daily routine maintenance

Daily routine
Prior to the vehicle entering service, the septic tank should be charged with an additive to sanitize it. To apply the additive: 1 Ensure that the septic tank is empty. 2 Check that the draining valve is closed. 3 Check that the water tank is full. 4 Turn ON the toilet switch (see “Activation of the cubicle”, page 5). 5 Drop the additive into the bowl and press the flush button.

Note:
(1) Use the quantity of additive recommended by the supplier.
(2) It is recommended that the tanks are empty at the end of each day.

Weekly routine maintenance

Weekly routine
Check the operation and/or appearance of the following: • Extractor fan. • Doors hinges. • Toilet seat. • Doors locks. • Gel dispenser. • Toilet paper dispenser. • Lights. • Alarm button. • Electrical and plumbing connections behind the mirror door.

Winterization

If the vehicle is to be parked in zero or sub-zero temperatures, it is imperative that the tanks are completely drained.

During winter months (*temperatures below 0 °C or 32 °F*), you should place non-toxic propylene glycol in both the water and the septic tanks, in order to prevent freezing.

Note:
(1) Use the proportion of propylene glycol recommended by the supplier. The capacity of the tanks are **110 liters** for the water tank and **100 liters** for the septic tank.
(2) No warranty claims will be accepted on any winter damaged parts.

CAUTION

Do not use ethylene glycol instead of propylene glycol.
Ethylene glycol can damage some rubber components.

WARNING

Do not use automotive antifreeze instead of propylene glycol.
The automotive antifreeze uses to be toxic, and can cause health problems.

A

Activation. 5
Additive..... 16
Aid. 1
Alarm..... 2–3, 11, 17
Appearance..... 17

B

Bag. 14
Bin. 3, 14
Biodegradable. 15
Block. 15
Booklet. 1
Bowl. 2–3, 12, 15–16
Brush..... 12
Button.....11, 16–17
Buzzer..... 11

C

Cleaning and hygiene 12
Compartment.....6
Components. 1
Condition..... 1
Connections. 17
Cover..... 14
Cubicle. 3–5, 8, 11–12
Cycle. 5

D

Daily. 16
Dashboard. 5, 9
Decals. 3
Detergent..... 12
Dispensaries..... 4
Dispenser..... 2–3, 13, 15, 17
Display..... 5, 9
Door. 8
Doors. 17
Drain. 7
Drained..... 5
Draining. 6–7, 16
Driver´s..... 1

E

Emergency. 1, 11
Ensure..... 1
Equipment..... 1
Exhaust. 1
Extinguishers..... 1
Extractor. 11, 17

F

Fan. 11, 17
Filling..... 6
Flush. 3, 5, 16
Flushing..... 5
Freezing..... 18
Fuel..... 1

G

Gel. 13
General..... 2
Glycol. 18

H

Handle..... 7
Hinges. 17

I

Indicator..... 9
Information. 7
Intended..... 1
Introduction 1

K

Key..... 13, 15
Keys..... 4

L

Lamp..... 2
Leak. 6

Leaks. 1
Lid..... 4, 15
Light. 10
Lock. 3, 8
Locks..... 17

M

Maintenance..... 16
Maintenance..... 1, 16–17
Mirror..... 2, 13

O

Occupied..... 5, 9–10
Operate. 1

P

Paper..... 15, 17
Passengers. 1
Plumbing..... 17
Properly. 1
Propylene..... 18

R

Refilled. 5
Replace. 15
Responsibility..... 1
Roll. 15
Routine..... 16–17

S

Safety. 7, 1
Sanitize..... 16
Seat. 2, 17
Septic. 5–7, 16, 18
Service. 1, 16
Signals. 9
Smoking..... 3
Special. 4, 13, 15
Spot. 2, 10
Switch..... 5
Symbol. 5
Symbols..... 5

T

Tank. 5–7, 16
Tanks..... 6
Temperatures..... 18
Toilet operation 5
Toilet. 1–2, 5, 9
Trash..... 14

U

Unexpected..... 1

V

Vacant. 9
Vacated. 5, 10
Valve. 7, 16
Vent..... 6
View. 2

W

Warnings..... 1
Water..... 5–7, 16
Weekly..... 17
Winter..... 18
Winterization..... 18

VOLVO

Volvo Bus Corporation

Göteborg, Sweden

89369876 English September, 2018

Printed in Mexico